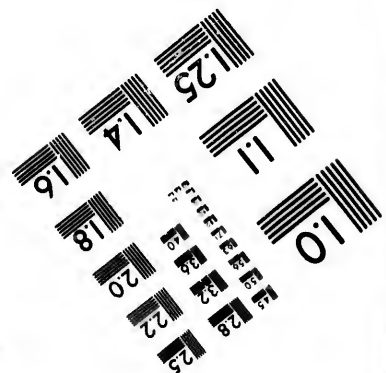
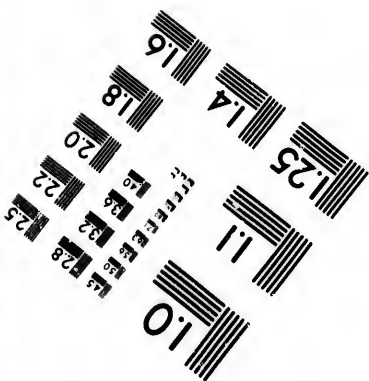
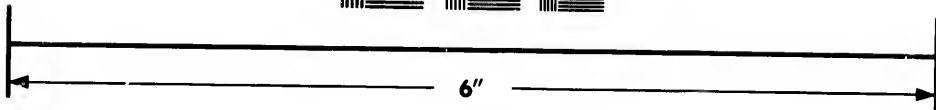
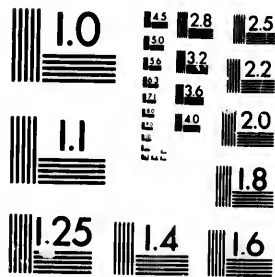


**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

10
12
15
18
20
22
25

**CIHM/ICMH
Microfiche
Series.**

**CIHM/ICMH
Collection de
microfiches.**



Canadian Institute for Historical Microreproductions / Institut canadien de microreproductions historiques

10
11
12

© 1983

Technical and Bibliographic Notes/Notes techniques et bibliographiques

The Institute has attempted to obtain the best original copy available for filming. Features of this copy which may be bibliographically unique, which may alter any of the images in the reproduction, or which may significantly change the usual method of filming, are checked below.

L'Institut a microfilmé le meilleur exemplaire qu'il lui a été possible de se procurer. Les détails de cet exemplaire qui sont peut-être uniques du point de vue bibliographique, qui peuvent modifier une image reproduite, ou qui peuvent exiger une modification dans la méthode normale de filmage sont indiqués ci-dessous.

- Coloured covers/
Couverture de couleur
- Covers damaged/
Couverture endommagée
- Covers restored and/or laminated/
Couverture restaurée et/ou pelliculée
- Cover title missing/
Le titre de couverture manque
- Coloured maps/
Cartes géographiques en couleur
- Coloured ink (i.e. other than blue or black)/
Encre de couleur (i.e. autre que bleue ou noire)
- Coloured plates and/or illustrations/
Planches et/ou illustrations en couleur
- Bound with other material/
Relié avec d'autres documents
- Tight binding may cause shadows or distortion along interior margin/
La reliure serrée peut causer de l'ombre ou de la distorsion le long de la marge intérieure
- Blank leaves added during restoration may appear within the text. Whenever possible, these have been omitted from filming/
Il se peut que certaines pages blanches ajoutées lors d'une restauration apparaissent dans le texte, mais, lorsque cela était possible, ces pages n'ont pas été filmées.
- Additional comments:/
Commentaires supplémentaires:

- Coloured pages/
Pages de couleur
- Pages damaged/
Pages endommagées
- Pages restored and/or laminated/
Pages restaurées et/ou pelliculées
- Pages discoloured, stained or foxed/
Pages décolorées, tachetées ou piquées
- Pages detached/
Pages détachées
- Showthrough/
Transparence
- Quality of print varies/
Qualité inégale de l'impression
- Includes supplementary material/
Comprend du matériel supplémentaire
- Only edition available/
Seule édition disponible
- Pages wholly or partially obscured by errata slips, tissues, etc., have been refilmed to ensure the best possible image/
Les pages totalement ou partiellement obscurcies par un feuillet d'errata, une pelure, etc., ont été filmées à nouveau de façon à obtenir la meilleure image possible.

This item is filmed at the reduction ratio checked below/
Ce document est filmé au taux de réduction indiqué ci-dessous.

10X	14X	18X	22X	26X	30X
<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
12X	16X	20X	24X	28X	32X

The co
to the

The im
possib
of the
filming

Origin
beginn
the las
sion, o
other
first p
sion, a
or illu

The la
shall c
TINUE
which

Maps,
differe
entirel
beginn
right a
require
metho

The copy filmed here has been reproduced thanks to the generosity of:

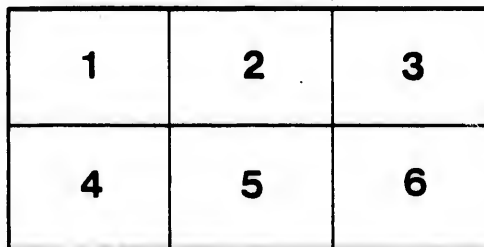
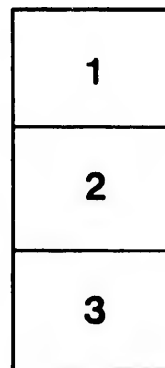
Glenbow-Alberta Institute
Calgary

The images appearing here are the best quality possible considering the condition and legibility of the original copy and in keeping with the filming contract specifications.

Original copies in printed paper covers are filmed beginning with the front cover and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression, or the back cover when appropriate. All other original copies are filmed beginning on the first page with a printed or illustrated impression, and ending on the last page with a printed or illustrated impression.

The last recorded frame on each microfiche shall contain the symbol \rightarrow (meaning "CONTINUED"), or the symbol ∇ (meaning "END"), whichever applies.

Maps, plates, charts, etc., may be filmed at different reduction ratios. Those too large to be entirely included in one exposure are filmed beginning in the upper left hand corner, left to right and top to bottom, as many frames as required. The following diagrams illustrate the method:



L'exemplaire filmé fut reproduit grâce à la générosité de:

Glenbow-Alberta Institute
Calgary

Les images suivantes ont été reproduites avec le plus grand soin, compte tenu de la condition et de la netteté de l'exemplaire filmé, et en conformité avec les conditions du contrat de filmage.

Les exemplaires originaux dont la couverture en papier est imprimée sont filmés en commençant par le premier plat et en terminant soit par la dernière page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration, soit par le second plat, selon le cas. Tous les autres exemplaires originaux sont filmés en commençant par la première page qui comporte une empreinte d'impression ou d'illustration et en terminant par la dernière page qui comporte une telle empreinte.

Un des symboles suivants apparaîtra sur la dernière image de chaque microfiche, selon le cas: le symbole \rightarrow signifie "A SUIVRE", le symbole ∇ signifie "FIN".

Les cartes, planches, tableaux, etc., peuvent être filmés à des taux de réduction différents. Lorsque le document est trop grand pour être reproduit en un seul cliché, il est filmé à partir de l'angle supérieur gauche, de gauche à droite, et de haut en bas, en prenant le nombre d'images nécessaire. Les diagrammes suivants illustrent la méthode.

12

SC

BE

Author
Gen

"Histo
le - chim

PRI

TO

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

A

SCHOOL HISTORY OF CANADA,

AND OF THE OTHER

BRITISH NORTH AMERICAN PROVINCES.

By J. GEORGE HODGINS, LL.B., F.R.G.S.,

Author of "Geography and History of the British Colonies," "Lovell's
General Geography," and "Easy Lessons in General Geography."

Illustrated by Sixty-Six Engravings.



"History maketh a young man to be old, without either wrinkles or grey hairs, priv-
ing him with the experience of age without . . . its infirmities."—FULLER.

Montreal :

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY JOHN LOVELL ;

AND SOLD BY ROBERT MILLER.

TORONTO: ADAM MILLER, 63 KING STREET EAST.

1865.

Entered, according to the Act of the Provincial Parliament, in the year
one thousand eight hundred and sixty-five, by JOHN LOVELL, in the
Office of the Registrar of the Province of Canada.

8791

r
l
p
d
s
in
st
g
g
S
in
bu
pa
ex
ca

m
th
ch

PREFATORY NOTE.

To have at least a general acquaintance with the geography and history of the country in which we reside, is essential to our intelligent appreciation of its physical resources and civil institutions. This is not only true in regard to those who are native born in the provinces, but it is especially the case with the newer residents in it,—many of whom have come hither long after the period of their school education had closed, when they had, doubtless, neither the inclination nor the opportunity of learning much of interest in regard to the history or condition of British America.

As colonists, we are politically in a transition state. The recent important conferences which have been held at Charlottetown, Halifax, and Quebec, show that our status as a people has yet to be determined. From the simple condition of Crown Colonies, we have gradually assumed responsibilities in government, trade, and commerce, which indicate a position of more stability. We would now seek still further to concentrate our power and strength, and give a greater permanence to our institutions and form of government, by promoting the confederation into one great State of all the Provinces of British North America. How important to us, then, are not only the teachings of history, but especially an acquaintance with the history of our own past condition, and with the various stages of colonial existence through which we and the other British American colonies have passed.

To furnish this information in a connected and summary form, has been the object of the author in preparing this School History, at Mr. Lovell's request. Some of the chapters in the book—giving an account of the govern-

ment, judiciary, municipal institutions, education, trade, and commerce of each province—have been written, not so much for the pupil as for the teacher, or for the general reader who might like to have the information which they contain, in an accessible shape for reference.

To say that the preparation of this and the author's preceding books has been an agreeable duty, is but to express the general feeling of those who have had the pleasure and opportunity of aiding Mr. Lovell in his patriotic purpose of providing a colonial series of text-books within the provinces, especially adapted for use in the Schools in every part of the proposed Confederation. In the preparation and publication of these books, Mr. Lovell (one of the most enterprising of colonial publishers) is not only enabled, directly and indirectly, to give constant employment to numbers of persons, but he is enabled to effect a more patriotic purpose,—of keeping within the country large sums of money to promote its own industry, which were formerly sent, year after year, to the United States and England, to pay the artisan and publisher in those countries for books which were in use among us, and which were either ill adapted to our peculiar circumstances or inimical to our institutions.

In the preparation of this History, the Author is indebted to several gentlemen for a number of suggestions, and for access to various sources of information. For the excellent engravings with which the work is illustrated, the thanks of the Author are due to Messrs. Mason Brothers of New York, who kindly furnished him with Mr. Benson J. Lossing's illustrations of the "Pictorial History of the United States;" and also to Messrs. Harper Brothers of New York, for copies of Mr. Lossing's splendid illustrations of a forthcoming "History of the War of 1812."

A Biographical, Geographical, and General Index has been added at the end of the book; as also a Table giving the approximate pronunciation of some of the more difficult names, &c., in the History.

SCHOOL HISTORY OF CANADA,

AND THE OTHER

BRITISH NORTH AMERICAN PROVINCES.

Preliminary.

RIGHTLY to understand the past and present history of the Provinces of British North America, it is necessary that we should include in it a brief reference to the earlier annals of those European nations whose discoveries and enterprise form the background of our own historical times. Especially should we take a rapid glance at the history of those two great nations which first brought the civilization of Europe to these shores. We should know something of the ancient Britons when they were first visited by the ubiquitous Roman; when, from a rude and helpless infancy, they struggled and rose to a more than tribal manhood, even in those days of brief and lawless chieftainship; we should study their after-history, when invasion, disaster, and defeat, like the flames of a fiery furnace, had gradually fused their fitful nationality into that of their successive invaders; and when, in after-times, the commercial tastes and regal instincts, which led them to plant colonies and establish good government, had slowly developed the institutions and moulded the national character of the people of that freedom-loving land which we proudly call our Mother Country.

Nor should we omit to take an equally rapid glance at the contemporaneous history of that other great and chivalrous people who first discovered and colonized Canada;—a people who, by many national *souvenirs*, have left upon the broad and noble features of the whole of the North American continent, the deep impress of their undaunted courage and enterprise in both exploration and discovery.

After these rapid surveys should follow the main subject of the book,—a brief yet comprehensive summary of British American History during the last three hundred years.

In this manner, therefore, we purpose briefly to treat of the subjects mentioned in the following chapters, viz. :—

PART I.

Introductory Sketches of European History.

CHAPTER I.—Summary Sketch of English History until the discovery of Newfoundland by Cabot, A.D. 1496, page 9.

CHAPTER II.—Summary Sketch of French History until the discovery of Canada by Cartier, A.D. 1534, page 12.

CHAPTER III.—Brief references to other European history connected with the discovery of America, A.D. 1492, page 14.

PART II.

Era of Voyage and Discovery.

CHAPTER IV.—Voyages and Discoveries of Columbus, page 18.

CHAPTER V.—Voyages of the Cabots, Cortereal, Verazzani, Cartier, Roberval, and others, 1496–1600, page 23.

PART III.

Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

CHAPTER VI.—Introductory and Geographical Sketch, with Statistical Summaries, of the British North American Provinces, page 32.

CHAPTER VII.—First settlement of Canada, 1604–1608, page 36.

CHAPTER VIII.—Sketch of French Rule, First Period: Champlain to Frontenac, 1608–1672, page 38.

- CHAPTER IX.—Sketch of French Rule, Second Period: Frontenac to the Conquest, 1672-1759, page 57.
- CHAPTER X.—The Principal Indian Tribes of British America, page 99.
- CHAPTER XI.—Sketch of British Rule, First Period: from the Conquest until the Division of the Province of Quebec,—1760-1792,—page 108.
- CHAPTER XII.—The United Empire Loyalists of America, page 118.
- CHAPTER XIII.—Geographical Introduction to Lower and Upper Canada page 121.
- CHAPTER XIV.—Sketch of British Rule, Second Period: from the separation of the Provinces until the close of the war of 1812,—1792-1814, page 124.
- CHAPTER XV.—Famous Canadian battle-grounds and fortified places, page 140.
- CHAPTER XVI.—Sketch of British Rule, Second Period (continued): from the close of the war in 1814 until the union of the Provinces, in 1840, page 147.
- CHAPTER XVII.—Sketch of British Rule, Third Period: from the union of the Provinces until 1864, page 160.

PART IV.

Sketch of the Civil, Social, and Physical Progress of Canada.

- CHAPTER XVIII.—Sketch of the Political Constitution of Canada, p. 170.
- CHAPTER XIX.—Summary Sketch of the Social, Civil, and Commercial Progress of Lower and Upper Canada, page 177.
- CHAPTER XX.—Sketch of the Municipal System of Canada, page 179.
- CHAPTER XXI.—Sketch of the Educational Progress of Canada, p. 181.
- CHAPTER XXII.—Sketch of the Climate and Natural Products of Canada, page 184.
- CHAPTER XXIII.—Sketch of the Trade and Commerce of Canada, p. 186
- CHAPTER XXIV.—Sketch of the Public Improvements in Canada, p. 189.

PART V.

Sketches of the History of the Other B. N. A. Provinces.

- CHAPTER XXV.—General Introductory Sketch of the Eastern British Provinces, page 192.

PART VI.

Summary Sketch of the History of Nova Scotia.

- CHAPTER XXVI.—Geographical Introduction relating to Acadie, or Acadia, and Cape Breton, page 195.
- CHAPTER XXVII.—History of Acadie, from its discovery until its cession to England in 1748, page 197.
- CHAPTER XXVIII.—Summary History of Nova Scotia, from its cession in 1748, until the final union with it of Cape Breton in 1820, page 207.
- CHAPTER XXIX.—History of Nova Scotia and Cape Breton, from their union until the present time,—1820-1864,—page 212.
- CHAPTER XXX.—Sketch of the Civil Institutions of Nova Scotia, p. 214.
- CHAPTER XXXI.—Sketch of the Educational Progress of N. Scotia, p. 215.
- CHAPTER XXXII.—Sketch of the Climate, Natural Products, and Commerce of Nova Scotia, page 219.

PART VII.

Summary Sketch of the History of New Brunswick.

- CHAPTER XXXIII.—Geographical Introduction, and Early History of New Brunswick, until its separation from Nova Scotia, in 1784, page 220.
- CHAPTER XXXIV.—History of New Brunswick, from its separation from Nova Scotia until the present time,—1784-1764, page 225.
- CHAPTER XXXV.—Sketch of the Civil Institutions of N. B., page 229.
- CHAPTER XXXVI.—Educational Progress of New Brunswick, page 231.
- CHAPTER XXXVII.—Sketch of the Climate, Natural Products, and Commerce of New Brunswick, page 233.

PART VIII.

Summary Sketch of the History of Prince Edward Island.

- CHAPTER XXXVIII.—Geographical Introduction, and History of St. Jean, or Prince Edward, Island, from its discovery until its separation from Nova Scotia, in 1720,—1497-1770, page 234.
- CHAPTER XXXIX.—History of Prince Edward Island, from its separation from Nova Scotia until the present time,—1770-1864,—page 236.
- CHAPTER XL.—Sketch of the Civil Institutions and Educational Progress of Prince Edward Island, page 240.
- CHAPTER XLI.—Sketch of the Climate, Natural Productions, and Commerce of Prince Edward Island, page 242.

PART IX.

Summary Sketch of the History of the Island of Newfoundland.

- CHAPTER XLII.—Geographical Introduction, and History of the Island of Newfoundland, from its discovery until the appointment of its first governor, in 1728, page 243.
- CHAPTER XLIII.—History of the Isl. of Newfoundland from the appointment of its first governor until the present time,—1728-1864, p. 251.
- CHAPTER XLIV.—Sketch of the Civil Institutions and Educational Progress of the Island of Newfoundland, page 257.
- CHAPTER XLV.—Sketch of the Climate, Natural Products, and Commerce of the Island of Newfoundland, page 258.

PART X.

Summary Sketch of the History of the Hudson Bay Territory, Vancouver Island, and British Columbia.

- CHAPTER XLVI.—Geographical Introduction of the Hudson Bay Territory, page 259.
- CHAPTER XLVII.—Sketch of the History of the Hudson Bay Ter., p. 261.
- CHAPTER XLVIII.—Geographical Introduction relating to Vancouver Island, page 266.
- CHAPTER XLIX.—Geographical Introduction relating to British Columbia, page 267.
- CHAPTER L.—History of Vancouver Island and British Columbia, p. 268.

PART I.

Introductory Sketches of European History.

CHAPTER I.

BRIEF SUMMARY SKETCH OF ENGLISH HISTORY UNTIL THE DISCOVERY OF NEWFOUNDLAND BY CABOT, A.D. 1496.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Conquests of Britain—Rule of the Plantagenets and Tudors.

1. The Ancient Britons.—2. Saxons.—3. Danes.—4. The Norman Conquest.
- 5. The Plantagenets.—6. The Wars of the Roses.—7. The Tudors.

1. *The Ancient Britons.*—England, when first visited by the Romans, under Julius Cæsar, 54 B.C., was peopled by rude, warlike tribes, who lived in huts, and supported themselves by hunting and fishing. They could ill resist, at that time, the bravery and skill of the Roman host. Nevertheless, the neighbouring tribes rallied round their chiefs, and advanced even into the sea to give battle to the invaders; but they were overborne by the superior force and prowess of their more practised foe. Thus the Roman power first obtained a footing in Britain. For nearly five hundred years the Romans maintained but a feeble sovereignty over Britain, harassed as they were by the Picts and Scots. At length, A.D. 410, threatened by invasion from the Goths and Vandals at home, they silently withdrew, and left Britain to her fate.

2. *The Saxons.*—Soon after the Romans left England, the Britons sought aid from the Saxons (a German tribe) against their old enemies, the Picts and Scots. The Saxons consented to aid them; but, in turn, became their conquerors. At the

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was England first visited? How were they received? Describe the condition of the inhabitants. What was the character of the Roman rule in Britain? Who next visited England?

end of two hundred years they were masters of the whole country, and divided it into seven kingdoms, called the Saxon Heptarchy. About this time Christianity was introduced into Britain, and the mysterious worship of the Druids gradually ceased. The Heptarchy continued for about two hundred years, when the seven kingdoms were united into one, under Egbert, a Saxon king, A.D. 823.

3. *The Danes.*—Near this time, A.D. 787, a warlike people from Denmark and Norway made a descent upon the coasts of England.* They harassed the country for many years, until the celebrated King Alfred the Great, A.D. 896, drove them from the kingdom. With great sagacity he constructed a fleet of small ships, with which he attacked and defeated the Danes before they could land upon the coast. In this way he laid the foundation of England's naval supremacy, which from that day to the present has been nobly maintained. For 160 years after Alfred's death, the Danes and Anglo-Saxon inhabitants fiercely contended, with more or less success, for the mastery of England. At length, in 1066, a third combatant appeared upon the field, who ultimately decided the contest.

4. *The Norman Conquest.*—William, a duke, or leader, of the Normans, or Northmen, a branch of the Danes, which had settled in France, claimed the throne of England, which had been unjustly left to him, instead of to Edgar, by King Edward the Confessor. On the death of King Edward, William invaded England and defeated Harold II, Edward's unlawful successor, who thus became the last of the Saxon kings. William the First, now called the Conqueror, divided the country among his principal adherents, and made them barons, or feudal

* Being from the north of Europe, they were called Northmen; and, from their warlike supremacy at sea, they were also known as the sea-kings. During some of their expeditions, these Northmen are said to have reached America, by way of Iceland.

QUESTIONS.—What religious change took place about this time? Describe the next invaders, and what they did. For what are we indebted to King Alfred? What other invasion took place? What was its effects?

CE
lon
ces
pe
suc
net
the
5
Th
Ist
ing
libe
asse
of V
Ban
and
6.
men
Crow
fruit
brou
Field
Tud
the V
time
sprea
lish,
* TH
a Fre
Land.
which
from I
ended
in the
† So
badges
QUE
the N
1455-85

lords of the soil. For about 100 years, William and his successors ruled England with great severity. During this period the Crusades commenced.* The Norman kings were succeeded, A.D. 1154, by a branch-line called the Plantagenets, so named from Henry II (Plantagenet), son of Matilda, the heiress to the throne.

5. *The Plantagenets* ruled England for about 250 years. Their united reign is celebrated for several memorable events: 1st. The Conquest of Ireland by Henry II. 2nd. The granting, by King John, of Magna Charta, or the great charter of liberties, which we enjoy to this very day. 3rd. The first assembling of Parliament by Henry III. 4th. The Conquest of Wales by Edward I. And 5th. The then decisive battle of Bannockburn in Scotland, and the heroic battles of Crécy and Poitiers in France.

6. *The Wars of the Roses.*†—This celebrated civil war commenced in 1455, between two rival claimants for the English Crown, and their adherents, and lasted for nearly thirty years, fruitlessly deluging the land with blood. It was finally brought to a close in 1485, by the decisive battle of Bosworth Field, and the subsequent marriage of the victorious Henry Tudor of York to Elizabeth of Lancaster,—representatives of the White and Red roses. The most celebrated events of these times were, the Religious Reformation in Germany, which spread to England; the first translation of the Bible into English, by John Wycliffe; the discovery of the art of printing

* The Crusades (from *crux*, a cross) were projected by Peter the Hermit, a French officer of Amiens, who turned pilgrim, and travelled in the Holy Land. On his return he induced Pope Urban to convene the Council which, in 1094, authorized him to rouse Europe to expel the Saracens from Palestine. The first Crusade began in 1096, and the seventh and last ended in 1291. It is estimated that about 2,000,000 people lost their lives in these Crusades.

† So called from the white and red roses, adopted as the distinctive badges of the Houses of York and Lancaster, the combatants in the wars.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the celebrated religious war. Who succeeded the Norman kings? Sketch their reign. What civil war occurred in 1455-85, and explain its name? Mention the noted events of these times.

in Germany, and its introduction into England; the battle of Agincourt in France, and the subsequent loss of nearly all the English possessions in that country.

7. *The Tudors.*—With the elevation of the Tudor family to the throne of England in 1485, culminating in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, commenced one of the most memorable periods in English history. With it also commences the history of America. For it was to Henry VII, when other sovereigns refused, that Columbus applied for aid in his notable attempt to discover a new world. Being mortified to find that he had lost this golden opportunity of linking his name with the most famous event of his times, Henry, in 1496, commissioned John Cabot to visit the New World, and make discoveries therein. In Queen Elizabeth's time, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, half-brother to Sir Walter Raleigh, sailed to Newfoundland, and in the queen's name first planted the red-cross flag in the New World, and took formal possession of the island in her majesty's name. Afterwards, a place further south, known by the Indians as *Moscosa*, was discovered by Sir Walter Raleigh, and by him named *Virginia*, after the queen.

CHAPTER II.

SUMMARY SKETCH OF FRENCH HISTORY UNTIL THE DISCOVERY OF CANADA BY CARTIER, A. D. 1534.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Conquest of Ancient Gaul—Its Inhabitants—Early Dynasties—Wars with England—French Discovery.

1. Ancient Gaul.—2. The Franks.—3. The Merovingian Dynasty.—4. The Carolingian.—5. The Capetian.—6. Struggle with England.—7. Period of French Discovery.

1. *Ancient Gaul.*—Although the Greeks and Romans early colonized *Massalia* (Marseilles) and *Provincia* (Provence) in Ancient Gaul, it was not until its entire conquest by Julius

QUESTIONS.—Describe the relations which existed between France and England. What family next ruled England? Mention the chief events of their united reign. How did Henry VII aid in the discovery of America?

Cæsar that France assumed historical prominence. Like England, it suffered from the incursions of various neighbouring tribes. These tribes gradually became incorporated with the inhabitants, and all were ultimately blended into one people.

2. *The Franks*.—Some of the German tribes, which had spread themselves all over Ancient Gaul, united as Franks, or freemen, to rid themselves of the Roman yoke. Being successful, this name was adopted by the people; and as Franks, or French, they are known at the present day. Pharamond and Merovens are supposed to have been the first kings of the Franks.

3. *The Merovingian*.—This weak and cruel dynasty was founded by Clovis, the grandson of Merovens, who was nominally the first Christian king of France. It lasted for nearly two hundred and fifty years, and was succeeded by—

4. *The Carolingian* dynasty, so called from the celebrated Charles (or Carlos) Martel, its founder. It lasted for upwards of two hundred years; and its kings were among the most famous in early French history. The illustrious Charlemagne, the most powerful monarch of his times and of his dynasty, laid the foundation of much of the subsequent greatness of France. The succeeding dynasty was called—

5. *The Capetian*, from Hugh Capet, duke of France, Count of Paris and Orleans. It commenced in 987, and ended with Louis Philippe, in 1848. It was under the earlier Capetian kings that chivalry and the Crusades took their rise. Philip Augustus, the most noted of these kings, wrested nearly the whole of France from King John of England, and greatly consolidated his kingdom. Under the celebrated King Louis IX (called for his many virtues St. Louis), the Crusades were ended; and during the reign of Philip the Fair (1302), a representative parliament, or states-general, was first assembled, in place of the annual assembly of the Champ de Mars. Judicial Parliaments, or Courts, were also established.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Ancient Gaul? In what respect was ancient France like England? What was the origin of the Franks? Give an account of the Merovingian dynasty: of the Carolingian; of the Capetia

6. *Struggle with England.*—The following one hundred and fifty years were remarkable for an heroic struggle between the French and the English. Although finally defeated, and restricted to their possession of Calais, the memorable battles of Crécy, Poitiers, and Agincourt fully maintained the character of the French and English nations for bravery and valour.

7. *Period of French Discovery.*—During the reign of Francis I, the enlightened monarch of France, the French commenced their remarkable career of exploration in the New World. French fishermen from Brittany had indeed visited Cape Breton in 1506; and in that year Denys, a Frenchman, drew a map of the Gulf of St. Lawrence; but the first voyage of discovery under royal authority was made by John Verazani in 1523. In consequence of that discovery, the French laid formal claim to all the lands and coasts visited by him.

CHAPTER III.

BRIEF REFERENCES TO OTHER EUROPEAN HISTORY CONNECTED WITH THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA, A.D. 1492.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Early European Discovery and Commerce—Crusades—Marco Polo—First Modern Colonies—Slave Trade.

1. Other European Efforts.—2. Causes leading to Early Discovery.—3. Earliest Commercial Nation.—4. Rise of Commercial Enterprise.—5. Commerce and the Crusades.—6. Marco Polo and his Career.—7. Other Exciting Causes of Discovery.—8. First Portuguese Colonies.—9. Origin of the Slave-Trade.

1. *Other European Efforts.*—Although the discovery of the northern part of America, including that which is now called British America and the United States, is due to the English and French alone, it is proper briefly to refer to the efforts of

QUESTIONS.—How did the struggle with England end? How did the period of French discovery commence? Who made the first voyage under royal authority? What is said of the other European efforts at discovery?

other European nations whose earlier discoveries in America stimulated both the French and English to maritime adventure and commercial enterprise in the new world.

2. *Causes leading to Early Discoveries.*—Maritime tastes, created by a proximity to and a familiarity with the sea, invariably lead to adventurous research and to deeds of daring. It was so with the Phœnicians* and Northmen in early times; with the Venetians and Genoese in the middle ages; and with Spain, Portugal, France, and England in later times. It is so with every commercial people at the present day.

3. *Earliest Commercial Nation.*—The Phœnicians coasted along the Mediterranean until they were familiar with its principal outlines and headlands, and with the configuration of the neighbouring coasts. They then ventured out beyond the "Pillars of Hercules,"† to the tin-islands of Britain. The Northmen, from forays along their own coast, made a descent upon those of their neighbours; and, having fearlessly launched out into the ocean as far as Iceland, are supposed to have reached Greenland, and even to have gone as far south on the American coast as Massachusetts, in 986 and 1004.

4. *Rise of Commercial Enterprise.*—The invasion and conquests by Greece and Rome in Asia, no less than the inroads of northern tribes into southern and western Europe, spread abroad some knowledge of the existence of other lands and of their reputed riches. The knowledge was soon turned to account by the more sagacious and enlightened nations; and thus commercial enterprise took its rise. In such a pursuit, some nations would naturally take the lead. This was especially the case with the celebrated republic of Venice, whose

* The Phœnicians of history were the Canaanites of Scripture. They occupied the northern coast of Palestine.

† Lofly headlands on the coasts of Spain and Africa, near the Straits of Gibraltar.

QUESTIONS.—What led to the early discoveries? Who were the first navigators? What is said of the earliest commercial nation, and of its ancient names? What led to the rise of commercial enterprise in Europe?

chief glory was its pre-eminence in the commercial rivalry of the times. It soon distanced all competitors, and for a long time monopolized the trade between Europe and the East.

5. *Commerce and the Crusades.*—The interruption of this commerce by the irruptions into Europe of the Arabs, or Saracens, was more than counterbalanced by the increased commercial activity which followed in the prosecution of the crusades. The conveyance of troops and war-material alone, greatly developed the maritime skill and ability, not only of those nations engaged in the contest, but also of other surrounding maritime nations.

6. *Marco Polo and his Career.*—The successful efforts, about this time, of the Tartars, under the celebrated Genghis Khan, to extend their conquest from Asia into Europe, brought them and the Christian nations into contact; and propositions were made that they should unite against the Saracens and drive them out of Palestine. Ambassadors were sent to the Great Khan by the Pope, and by St. Louis of France. Their coming overland opened a new channel of communication with the East, and induced two brothers, by the name of Polo, to explore it. They took with them, on their return into China, Marco, a son of one of the brothers, who entered into the active service of the Khan. Nearly thirty years afterwards he was taken prisoner by the Genoese. While in prison, he wrote such accounts of his travels and adventures in the Western Pacific as greatly stimulated that spirit of enterprise and discovery which led afterwards to the discovery of the New World.

7. *Other exciting Causes of Discovery.*—The glowing accounts of Eastern riches, brought back from Asia by various travellers, induced Europeans from all parts of the west and south to visit it. The splendour and luxury which were introduced by the Arabs or Saracens (785), and afterwards by the Moors on their conquest of Spain (1238), attracted many persons

QUESTIONS.—Which nation took the lead? How did the Crusades affect commerce? What brought the Tartars and Europeans into contact? Sketch the career of the Polo family. What led to further discoveries?

thither. These persons brought with them a variety of knowledge of other countries, and stimulated a desire for more. The introduction of the mariner's compass into Europe, in the thirteenth century, greatly aided the adventurous trader to extend his voyage, and to seek out new and distant places of trade.

8. *First Portuguese Colonies.*—The conquests in the Spanish peninsula by the Moors, led to reprisals. The Portuguese took and held the Moorish port of Cueta, in Africa, and from thence extended their discoveries along the coast and to the islands of W. Africa. Some of these islands were known to the Normans, and even to the ancients; for the first meridian was mentioned by Hipparchus, 140 B.C., as being Ferro, the most westerly of the "Fortunate" (now known as the Canary) Isles. These islands were afterwards re-discovered by Bethencourt, a Norman, about A.D. 1400. His descendants sold them to the Spaniards, who took possession of them in 1483; but it was the Portuguese who colonized both the Madeira and Cape de Verd islands. They shared in the belief that Asia might be reached by coasting along the continent of Africa, and formally applied to the Pope for a grant "of ail lands or islands, peopled by Mahometans and Pagans, lying between Cape Bojador and the East Indies." In their after-efforts to carry out this project, Bartholomew Diaz, a Portuguese, discovered the Cape of Good Hope,—five years after the discovery of America.

9. *Origin of the Slave-Trade.*—In 1441, the Portuguese, sailing along the coast of Africa, reached Cape Blanco; and, having taken some Moorish prisoners, they exchanged, or ransomed, them the next year for gold-dust and negroes. In this way commenced, on the coast of Africa, the baneful traffic in negroes, which was afterwards extended to North and South America, including Canada, Acadie (or Acadia), and the West India Islands, but which is now happily abolished throughout the entire British and French dominions.

QUESTIONS.—What led to the planting of Portuguese colonies in Africa? What is said of the islands of the African coast? When was the Cape of Good Hope discovered? State the origin of the slave-trade.

PART II.

Era of Voyages and Discoveries.

CHAPTER IV.

VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES OF CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Early Discoveries—Career of Columbus.

1. Christopher Columbus.—2. Progress of Geographical Knowledge.—
3. Early Efforts of Columbus.—4. Religious Objects of the Expedition.
5. Voyage of Columbus.—6. Further Discoveries of Columbus.

1. *Christopher Columbus.*—About this time (1441), Christopher Columbus, the future discoverer of America, was born in Genoa, a seaport in Northern Italy. In Lisbon, whither he went, he devoted his time to the making of maps and globes,



Christopher Columbus.

and thus greatly contributed to the information and success of the Portuguese navigators. He framed rules for the calculation of latitude and longitude by sailors, when at sea out of sight of land. He also sailed on voyages down the coast of Africa, and otherwise became familiar with the sea to the westward.

2. *The Progress of Geographical Knowledge* up to this time was slow; but it had at length reached a point which excited great curiosity in the minds of all scholarly and intelligent men. From Marco Polo's statements, it was known that an ocean lay to the east of Asia. The reputed discoveries of countries far to the westward, which had been made by the

QUESTIONS.—What notable birth occurred about the year 1441? Give a sketch of the early career of Christopher Columbus. Trace the progress in geographical knowledge in Europe up to the time of Columbus.

Northmen, by way of Iceland, together with the statements of one of these Northmen who was taken as a prisoner to the south amongst civilized people, fully impressed the navigators of the period with the belief that these countries were situated in or near Asia. This belief was based upon the descriptions of Southern Asia by Ptolemy, confirmed as they were by the statement of Marco Polo, that Asia extended far eastward into the ocean. On globes constructed at this time, "Cipango" (Japan) was placed within 70 degrees of the Azores, and "India extra Gangem" within 90; instead of more than double that number of degrees, as they really are. From these islands, therefore, lying away in the Atlantic, east of Africa and west of Europe, it was easy to imagine that the distance to Asia was so short, that a navigator, with a little bravery and perseverance, would soon traverse it.

3. *Early Efforts of Columbus.*—It was under a belief of these facts that Columbus first applied to the King of Portugal for means to prosecute his voyage of discovery to India. Having failed to induce either him or Henry VII of England to do so, he sought the aid of the court of Spain. After seven years of disappointment, he at length succeeded in inducing Isabella, the noble-minded Queen of Spain, to devote a portion of her own Castilian patrimony to the success of his scheme of discovery.

4. *Religious Objects of the Expedition.*—So strongly impressed was Columbus with the Christian character and objects of his mission, that he proposed to consecrate the treasure which he expected to obtain in the progress of his discoveries, to the pious purpose of rescu-

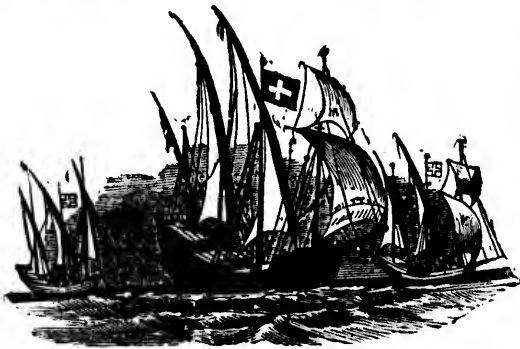


Queen Isabella of Spain.

QUESTIONS.—What was supposed to be the position of Southern Asia? Give the ancient name of Japan. What were the early efforts of Columbus? Describe the views of Columbus as to the religious objects of the expedition.

ing the Holy Sepulchre at Jerusalem from the hands of the infidel Saracens. His own immediate design in undertaking this voyage to Asia—or India, as it was then called—was to convert the Great Khan of Tartary and his subjects to Christianity; and for this purpose Columbus actually took out letters with him to that monarch. He even regarded the signification of his own name, Christo-ferens, and Columbo, as an indication of the Divine will in raising him up for this great mission to Christianize the heathen.

5. *Voyage of Columbus.*—The port of Palos in Spain was selected as the place of embarkation. For some misdemean-



The Fleet of Columbus.

our, this port was required, as a penalty, to furnish for royal use two small vessels for a year. After repeated delays and discouragements, a little fleet of three vessels was, by the aid of the brothers Pin-

zon,—two courageous navigators,—got ready for sea; and on the 3rd of August, 1492, Columbus set sail on his memorable voyage. On leaving the harbour he steered directly for the Canary Islands, where he arrived on the 9th. Here he remained until the 6th of September, making repairs. On the 9th of that month he passed Ferro, the last of the Canary Isles, and, with a feeling of sadness and awe, struck out into the unknown Atlantic. For several days the ships glided rapidly along in their course, and, with the aid of the steady trade-winds, quickly increased their distance from Europe. Apprehension and alarm arose on every side at the unvarying

QUESTIONS.—Mention the port of embarkation. Why was it selected? Who accompanied Columbus? Mention the number of ships, and date of sailing. Where did Columbus stop for repairs? When did he set out?

ls of the
ertaking
—was to
to Chris-
took out
rded the
Columbo,
p for this

pain was
scemean-
port was
as a pen-
rnish for
two small
r a year.
eated de-
discour-
, a little
ee vessels
he aid of
ers Pin-
ea; and
his me-
directly
n. Here
irs. On
e Canary
ruck out
ps glided
e steady
Europe.
nvarying

t selected?
nd date of
set out?

course of the wind,—at the increasing length of the voyage,—at the variation of the needle of the compass, and at other occurrences, which the superstitious sailors regarded as ominous of evil. Columbus was daily beset by the mutinous murmurs and discontent of his crew. His courageous spirit, and religious belief in a special providence in his favour, kept him calm and firm in the midst of the painful uncertainty and treacherous fears of his comrades. Time after time, the morning haze and the evening cloud-bank, revealing a fancied coast or island, beguiled the mutinous sailors from their fatal purpose, and raised the hopes of all, to be again dashed down in bitter disappointment and chagrin. Thus the weary days and nights wore on, until Columbus himself almost faltered in his purpose. At length a day, long memorable in the annals of great nations, dawned upon the little fleet; and at the sight of the twigs and branches of some drifting timber,—like the olive-branch to Noah in the ark,—the spirits of the dispirited and mutinous seamen revived. As night drew on, the keen eyes of the commander—made doubly sensitive by long and weary watching—detected the glimmer of a beacon-light, as it glanced in the uncertain gloom of midnight. Oh, how long and painful were those hours of suspense to the almost fainting heart of Columbus! At length, as the twilight advanced, hope dawned upon the expectant mariners; and, ere the sun appeared above the horizon, the impassioned voices of the crews shouted, in tumultuous joy, the thrilling words “Land! land!” And so it was: there lay before them a beautiful island of the New World, revealed in all the loveliness of a tropical clime. On that memorable day, the 11th of October, 1492, Columbus left his ship, and, with great religious fervour, kissed the soil on his landing, and planted the flag of Spain on the Island of San Salvador, in the Bahama group. With enthusiastic joy the crews chanted the *Te Deum*, in a spirit of devout

QUESTIONS.—Describe the state of feeling on board the little fleet. How did Columbus control his companions? Mention the circumstances under which Columbus first saw land. How did he express his gratitude?

thankfulness for the accomplishment of so great an event, and spent days in unrestrained admiration and enjoyment.—Such were the circumstances under which the discovery of the New World was made; and such were the difficulties which Columbus encountered in its accomplishment.

6. *Further Discoveries of Columbus.*—Columbus was delighted with the appearance of the island and with its inhabitants. He firmly believed that he had reached an island at the extremity of India; and, with that belief, he gave the name of Indians to the mild and gentle natives which he found there. He treated them most kindly, and sought to ascertain from them where they had procured their gold ornaments. They pointed to the south, and tried to convey to him an idea of the great wealth of the king, and the inexhaustible riches of that distant country. After exchanging with the natives glass beads and other trinkets, for gold and cotton, he weighed anchor and proceeded southward in search of Marco Polo's famous island of Cipango, or Japan. On his way he visited several other of the Bahama islands, and at length reached

an island called by the natives Cuba. This he thought was either Cipango itself, or the main land of India, in the dominions of the Great Khan. After consulting his maps and listening to the pantomimic descriptions of the natives, he despatched an embassy into the interior in search of the city of the sovereign to whom he had letters. The embassy soon returned disappointed; and Columbus, after again consulting the natives,



Americus Vesputius.

QUESTIONS.—Under what impressions did Columbus act on landing? How was he received by the inhabitants? What did he name them, and why? How did he then seek for information? What did he next do?

stood to the eastward. Here he discovered Hispaniola, or Hayti, and was kindly received by Gu-a-ca-na-ga-ri, a native cacique, or chieftain. While on the coast his ship was wrecked; but out of the pieces of the wreck he constructed a small fort to protect his crew, and also the generous natives, against the fierce Caribs, a neighbouring tribe of which he had heard. He manned the little fort with the guns of the ship, and left half the crew, who wished to remain, on the island. Shortly afterwards he set sail for Palos, where, after many adventures, he arrived, by way of the Azores and Portugal, on the 15th of March, 1493,—having been absent from Spain seven months and twelve days.

7. *Americus Vesputius*, a distinguished Florentine navigator and scholar, made four voyages to the New World. Having, in the year after the death of Columbus, when his statements could not be refuted, written an eloquent account of his voyages, in which he falsely claimed the honour of having made a separate voyage himself, and thus to have first reached the main land, the continent was, by common usage, named after him. He died in 1514.

CHAPTER V.

VOYAGES OF THE CABOTS, CORTEREAL, VERAZZANI, CARTIER, ROBERVAL, AND OTHERS.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Discovery of Newfoundland, Canada, and other parts of New France.

1. Cabot's Discovery of Newfoundland.—2. Cortereal's Voyages.—3. Verazzani's Voyage.—4. Cartier's Discovery of Canada.—5. Cartier's Further Discoveries.—6. Cartier and Donnacona.—7. Cartier at Hochelaga.—8. Returns to France.—9. Expedition of Roberval.—10. Other Futile Expeditions.

1. *Cabot's Discovery of Newfoundland.*—The news of the notable discovery of Columbus soon reached England, then a

QUESTIONS.—On leaving the island, in what direction did Columbus steer? Mention his next discoveries. At what places did Columbus touch on his way home? How and why was the name "America" first given?



Sebastian Cabot.

maritime power of inferior importance. John Cabot, a Venetian merchant, resident at Bristol, fired with a spirit of emulation, sought for and obtained a commission in 1496, from Henry VII, to make a voyage to the New World. Henry, mortified to find that, by having refused to aid Columbus in his great undertaking, he had lost a notable opportunity of linking his name with a memorable discovery, the more readily entered into Cabot's scheme. In June, 1497, Cabot left Bristol with his son Sebastian. On the 24th of June, he reached a coast which he named *Prima Vista*, and which is supposed to have been some part of Nova Scotia, or the northern part of Trinity Bay coast, Newfoundland. On St. John's day, he came to an island, which he named St. Jean, or St. John, (afterwards Prince Edward). By virtue of Cabot's discoveries, the English first laid claim to these islands. In 1498, Sebastian Cabot* made a second voyage, and sailed as far north as Hudson Bay, on his way to China. Unable to proceed farther, he turned southward as far as Florida, and, on his way thither, touched at Newfoundland, which he named *Ba-ca-lé-os*,—the native, as well as the Breton,

* Sebastian Cabot, son of the foregoing, Sir John Cabot, and a more celebrated navigator than his father, was born in England in 1477. He sailed with his father from Bristol, in 1497, and passed down the coast of America from latitude 56° to latitude 36°. Under the patronage of Spain, he made a voyage in 1525, as far south as the Brazils. Having entered the River La Plata, he erected a fort at St. Salvador, which he had discovered and named. He was a very distinguished navigator; and to him we are indebted for having first detected the variation of the mariner's compass. Having published a volume, containing an account of his voyages and discoveries, he died in 1557, aged 80.

QUESTIONS.—What led to the expedition of the Cabots? Describe the course of their voyage. What places did Sebastian Cabot discover? Sketch his life. What was peculiar about the name given Newfoundland?

or Basque, name for codfish, which abounds on the coast. From this circumstance it is supposed that the Breton fishermen had frequented these shores before they were visited by Sebastian Cabot.

2. *Cortereal's Voyages*.—In 1500, Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese,* made a voyage to Labrador, Newfoundland, and New England. Slavery being an important traffic with the Portuguese, Cortereal captured fifty Indians, whom he sold as slaves on his return to Europe. He made a second voyage in 1501, and having reached Hudson Strait, was never afterwards heard of. His brother Michael also perished in 1502, while endeavouring to seek him out and rescue him.

3. *Verazzani's Voyage*.†—About this time the value of the cod-fisheries attracted the notice of the French; and in 1506 and 1508 they visited the Banks of Newfoundland. In 1524, John Verazzani, a Florentine navigator, in command of four French vessels, made a voyage to America. Under the patronage of Francis I., in 1525 he made a second voyage, and explored more than 2,000 miles of coast, from 34° down to 50°, and returned to France during that year. In consequence of these discoveries by Verazzani, the French king claimed possession of all places visited by him.



John Verazzani.

* Gaspard Cortereal, a Portuguese, was despatched from Lisbon by the king of Portugal, in 1500. He discovered Labrador and Greenland. (His father is said to have discovered Newfoundland in 1463.) He again left Lisbon in 1501, but was never heard of afterwards.

† John Verazzani was a Florentine navigator in the service of France. In 1524, he took possession of the coast from Carolina to Nova Scotia, and called it New France. Having given spirituous liquors to the natives at one place, they called it Man-na-ha-tan, or place of drunkenness,—afterwards contracted to Manhattan Island, now the site of the city of New York. He made another voyage in 1525, but never returned.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the chief incidents of Cortereal's voyages. How did he treat the Indians? What afterwards became of him? Describe Verazzani's voyage. Give a sketch of Cortereal and Verazzani's lives.

He made a third voyage in the same year, but never again returned to France. What became of him has never been fully known.

4. *Cartier's Discovery of Canada.*—The supposed ill fate of Verazzani deterred the French for many years from any further attempt to explore the New World. Nine years afterwards, however, in 1534, Philip Chabot, admiral of France, urged the king, Francis I, not to fall behind Spain in enterprise, but to establish a colony in the New World. He recommended to the king Jacques Cartier, a noted navigator of St. Malo, to command an



Jacques Cartier.

expedition of discovery to the New World.* The Emperor Charles V of Spain, and Joam III of Portugal, having already occupied the field, protested, however, against the projected expedition of Francis I, who sarcastically replied, "I should like to see the clause in our Father Adam's will and testament which bequeaths to my royal brothers alone so vast a heritage." At length on the 20th of April, 1534, Cartier left St. Malo, a port on the coast of Brittany, with two ships.

* Jacques Cartier, the discoverer of Canada, was born at St. Malo, in France, in 1500. He was despatched to the west by Francis I, in 1534. On the 20th April, he sailed from St. Malo, reached Newfoundland on the 10th May, the Bay des Chaleurs on the 9th July, and the coast of Gaspé on the 24th. He returned to France in August. He made his second voyage in 1535; and on the festival of St. Laurent, in August, he reached a bay of the gulf and river, which, in honour of the day, he called the St. Lawrence. In September he reached Stadacona, the present site of Quebec, where Donnacona, an Algonquin chief, welcomed him; and in October he visited Hochelaga, two or three miles below the site of Montreal, where a chief of the Huron Indians welcomed him. He very soon afterwards returned to France, forcibly taking with him the chief, Donnacona. In 1541, as second in command to M. de Roberval, he again visited Canada; but having met with many disasters, he returned to France, and died soon after.

QUESTIONS.—What finally led to the despatch of another expedition to America from France? Was it opposed? What did Francis I say? When, and from what place, did Cartier sail from Europe? Sketch his life.

Twenty days after, he reached a cape on the Newfoundland coast, which he named Bona Vista. He turned southwards for a short distance, and then northwards to the Strait of Belle Isle. Passing through this strait, he turned southwards until he reached a coast, now known as that of New Brunswick. Here, on the 9th of July, he entered a Bay, in proceeding up which, he and his companions experienced such intense heat that he called it the "Baie des Chaleurs." Passing northwards out of this bay, he rounded the peninsula, and, on the 24th of July, landed on the coast since known as "Gaspé,"—an Indian name for Land's end. There he erected a cross thirty feet high, on which he placed a shield bearing the fleur-de-lis and an inscription, as emblematical of the new sovereignty of France in America. Thus was accomplished a most memorable event; and thus was Canada silently and unconsciously incorporated into a mighty empire. Thus too was completed that three-fold act of discovery in America, which, as a natural consequence, placed side by side on a vast unknown continent, the symbols of the sovereignty of three of the greatest nations of Europe. Thus, without hindrance, Spain in the West Indies, England in Newfoundland, and France in Canada, planted each their foot upon the virgin soil of a new world, eager to develop upon a broad and open field the industry and enterprise of their separate nationalities.

5. *Cartier's Further Discoveries.*—Cartier did not long remain on the Gaspé coast. He, however, made a little further exploration, and then, taking with him two natives, turned his face homewards. These two natives having told him of the existence of a great river leading so far up into the coun-



Cartier's Ship.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the course of Cartier's voyage. At what place in Canada did he land? How did he there assert the sovereignty of France? What is said of other nations? What did Cartier further do?

try, that "no man had (so far as they knew) ever yet traced it to its source," Cartier felt the more anxious to explore it, and the Indian countries through which it flowed. On his return to France, the news of his discovery, and the account given by the two Indians of the great river yet unexplored, were received with so much interest, that on the 19th May, 1535, Cartier again left St. Malo in command of three ships. After a tempestuous voyage, he arrived at Newfoundland on the 7th of July. Here he waited for two of his ships, which had been separated from him; and on the 7th of August he proceeded to explore the Gulf which he had visited the year before. On the 10th, he anchored in a bay at the mouth of a river, now called St. John. To this bay he gave the name of St. Lawrence,—having entered it on the festival of that saint. The name thus given to the little bay has since been applied to the vast gulf and noble river which Cartier was the first European to discover and explore. On the 15th he reached a large island, called by the native Indians Naticotee, but to which he gave the name of L'Assomption. The Indian name of this island has since been changed to Anticosti by the French. On the 1st of September, Cartier reached the mouth of a deep and gloomy river, still known by the Indian name of the Saguenay.

6. *Cartier and Donnacona.*—Having passed an island, which, from the abundance of hazel-nuts found on it, he called Isle aux Coudres, Cartier, on the 7th of September, came to a large and fertile island, which was covered with wild grapes. To this island he gave the name of Bacchus: it is now known as the Isle of Orleans. Here he sent his two Gaspé Indians ashore to make enquiries, and to propitiate the natives in favour of the new-comers. Next day he was received with friendly courtesy by the Algonquin chief, Donnacona. Pushing a short distance up the stream, he moored his vessels for the winter

QUESTIONS.—Did the news of Cartier's discoveries lead to anything? Describe the course of his second voyage. Mention his farther discoveries. Explain why he gave certain names to islands in the river St. Lawrence.

in a basin where the river St. Charles (which he named St. Croix) mingles its waters with the St. Lawrence. In the angle formed by the confluence of these two rivers stood the Indian village of Stadacona, to which Cartier was welcomed by his new friend, the Algonquin chief. Cartier was much struck with the beauty of the surrounding scenery, and with the appearance of the bold cape or headland which rose almost perpendicularly along the left, or northern, bank of the noble river, to which, at its narrowest part, the Indians had given a name since memorable as that of Kêpec, or Quebec, which, in the Indian tongue, signifies a "strait."

7. *Cartier at Hochelaga.*—Cartier did not long remain at Stadacona. Having heard of a larger village, or *kan-na-ta*,* a native encampment, up the river, he left two of his vessels behind, and, on the 2nd of October, reached Hochelaga, situated on a large and fertile island, near the site of the present city of Montreal. Here he was well received by upwards of 1,000 Huron Indians, and treated with much kindness. The feeble old *agohanna*, or chief of the Hurons, regarded him as a superior being, who was able to renew his youth, and to heal the sick. Many of the sick were brought to him to be cured, and he, to please the chief, touched them. He found the encampment, or village, well planned and admirably defended. Three miles beyond it stood a lofty hill,—to which he gave the name of Mount Royal; and from the top of which a panorama of great beauty and extent spread out before him.

8. *Return to France.*—Cartier did not long remain at Hochelaga, but returned to Quebec early in October. Fearing

* The Algonquin Indians at Stadacona (Quebec) having thus intimated to Cartier that *Kannata*, a collection of wigwams, or native Huron village, was farther up the river, he probably understood them to apply that word to the whole country lying beyond him. Hence, in this way, it is likely that the name *Kannata*, or *Canada*, was given to the entire country which Cartier was then engaged in exploring.

QUESTIONS.—Describe Cartier's visit to Donnacona and his village. Explain the Indian name of Quebec. Give particulars of the supposed derivation of the name of Canada. Describe Cartier's visit to Hochelaga.

hostilities, he made a strong enclosure near his ships, and placed cannon in position to defend it. During the following winter his men suffered much from cold and disease; he was therefore anxious to return to France. On the 3rd of May he erected a cross, with the arms of France upon it, in token of having taken possession of the country on behalf of his sovereign. He then suddenly seized Donnacona and four other Indians, and on the 6th of May proceeded down the river, but did not reach St. Malo until the 8th July, 1536. These Indians with their chief never returned to Canada, as they died soon after reaching France. Before he died, Donnacona was baptized with great ceremony at the cathedral of Rouen. Well would it have been for the honour of the white man and for the peace and safety of the early settlers, had Cartier consecrated his act of discovery and possession by an honourable treaty of purchase and friendship with the rightful owners of the soil. But he adopted a different course, the bitter fruits of which were reaped by himself, and, long afterwards, by the French colonists.

9. *Expedition of Roberval.*—Owing to religious dissensions in France, and to a war with Spain, five years elapsed after Cartier's return, before another expedition was projected. To the command of this expedition, the king appointed Jean François de la Roque, Lord of Roberval in Picardy.* Cartier was named second in command. M. de Roberval also received a commission as viceroy of the new colony. A delay having occurred, Cartier was, in May, 1541, despatched in advance.

* Jean François de la Roque, Sieur de Roberval, a native of Picardy, France, was appointed Viceroy of Canada in 1540, and sailed thence, from Rochelle, in 1542. He met Cartier (returning to France) at St. Johns, Newfoundland, in June. Having wintered at Cape Rouge, above Quebec, he, in June, 1543, explored the river Saguenay. In making another voyage to Canada, in 1549, he, with his brave brother Achille and their fleet, were lost.

QUESTIONS.—Under what circumstances did Cartier pass the winter? Describe his act of treachery to the Indians. What was its effect? What steps were taken in sending out Roberval's expedition? Sketch his life.

Roberval followed him, in April of the next year. In the meantime, Cartier reached the scene of his first visit; but fearing the hostility of the Indians, on account of his treachery to Donnacona, he removed a little farther up the river, to Cape Rouge. He afterwards tried to pass the Sault St. Louis (now also called the Lachine Rapids); but being unsuccessful, he returned to Cape Rouge. Here he erected two forts, and prepared to winter. He also sent two of his vessels to France to make a report to the king. Next spring he was treated with such hostility by the Indians that he set out at once for France. At Newfoundland he was met by Roberval, who endeavoured to induce him to return to Canada. He refused to do so; and in the night weighed anchor and sailed for France. He died there soon after. For his eminent services he was ennobled by the king; and license to trade in Canada was granted to his heirs for twelve years after his death. Roberval continued his voyage to the place where Cartier wintered, at Cape Rouge. Here he remained, and in the spring proceeded to explore the Saguenay River. After suffering various hardships, he returned to France in 1543. Six years afterwards, with his brave brother Achille and an adventurous crew, Roberval again sailed for Canada; but the expedition was never heard of again.

10. *Other Futile Expeditions—Feudal System introduced.*—During the next fifty years little was accomplished. Colonies in Brazil and Florida were projected; but after a trial they failed, and were abandoned. In 1598, the Marquis de la Roche was constituted the first lieutenant-general of the king, and was invested by him with power “to grant leases of lands in New France, in form of fiefs, to men of gentle blood.” Thus was the feudal system introduced into Canada. It was modified by Richelieu into a seigniorial tenure, and was not finally abolished until 1854. The marquis sailed for Nova Scotia, and reached Sable Island, where he landed forty French convicts until he could select the site of a settlement. This he never did, but returned

QUESTIONS.—Trace Cartier's further career. How did the Roberval expedition end? What other steps were taken to promote colonization, and what was the result? What is said of feudal and seigniorial tenures?

to France, leaving the convicts to their fate. In 1605 the king sent them relief, but only twelve were found alive. These were brought back to France, and pardoned by the king, on account of their sufferings. The marquis died unhappily soon after.

PART III.

CHAPTER VI.

I. INTRODUCTORY SKETCH OF BRITISH NORTH AMERICA.

Size, about the same as the United States, or equal to a square of 1,770 m.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

General Growth and Extent of British North America.

- 1.—Growth of British North America.—2. Confederation.—3. What British North America is noted for.—4. Its Political Divisions—5. Its Discovery, Acquisition, &c.—6. Its General Area.

1. *Growth of British North America.*—For a long time after the discovery of America, Great Britain had no permanent foothold in any part of her present North American possessions. For many years she maintained but a nominal claim, for fishing purposes, upon the outlying island of Newfoundland,—her sovereignty over which was chiefly based upon Cabot's discovery in 1497, and Sir Humphrey Gilbert's act of possession in 1583. It therefore forms an interesting study to mark the slow and steady steps by which Great Britain gradually advanced her power and increased her influence in this hemisphere, until at length she absorbed under the dominion of her flag nearly the whole of the North American continent, from the Gulf of Mexico to Hudson Bay. It is further interesting, after tracing the striking series of events which led to the absorption of this vast territory, to note the growth of that restless and ambitious spirit among her own children, which finally rose up defiantly in rebellion against her authority, and in the end bereft her of more than half of her possessions,

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of the Marquis de la Roche's expedition, and of the fate of the convicts and of himself. What is said of the growth of British North America and of the early spirit of rebellion?

CHAP

as we
And
acqui
colon
and
own
moth
that
Amer
ished
Franc
the co
couve
loyal

2.

distin
as suc
inter
sical
these
cultic
electr
dering
union
cial i
lying
in Eu
every

* Th
courtic
a fine
made,
his cha

QUE
North
in 1759

the king
ese were
account
after.

ERICA.

of 1,770 m.

merica.

at British
Its Disco-

me after
nent foot-
sessions.
for fish-
nd,—her
ot's dis-
ssession
mark the
ually ad-
is hemi-
inion of
ontinent,
er inter-
n led to
of that
, which
thority,
sessions,

e's expe-
s said of
ebellion?

as well as the chief part of her strength on this vast continent. And it is no less instructive to see, how that, in her newly acquired province on the St. Lawrence, and in the youthful colonies on the seaboard, the singular devotion of a then alien and mixed population (in resisting the tempting offers of her own rebellious sons), prevented them from wresting from the mother country the whole of her remaining patrimony;—how that out of the “few arpents of snow” * left to her after the American revolution, there has gradually grown up and flourished, around that very contemned and inhospitable New France, a prosperous cluster of colonies, which stretch across the continent from the island of Newfoundland to that of Vancouver, and which, with heart-felt sincerity, now rejoice in their loyal attachment to the same beloved sovereign.

2. *Confederation.*—These colonies, although separated into distinct governments, upon a common monarchical basis, have, as such, and as fragmentary portions of the same empire, many interests in common. As yet, however, owing chiefly to physical causes, little or no opportunity has been given to develop these common interests. But now that most of these difficulties have been, to a great extent, overcome by steam and electricity, these provinces are wisely and seriously considering the great advantages to be derived from a closer union, if not of territory, yet of civil, social, and commercial interests. Up to the present, these provinces and outlying territory, separately, have attracted very little attention in Europe, or even in the United States. Formed, however, into a single great state, they would at once rise to a

* This striking remark in regard to New France was made by a French courtier to the king, Louis XV, to palliate the disgrace of having given up a fine colony; and it is in singular harmony with the sneering remarks made, but with a different object, by the noted Voltaire, at a dinner at his chateau at Ferney, in honour of the surrender of Canada to England.

QUESTIONS.—How was Great Britain enabled to retain her present North American provinces? What was the French estimate of their loss in 1759? What is said of confederation? What has hitherto prevented it?

proper rank in America, and exert an important political and commercial influence on the entire continent. In order to show what their united area and extent would be if confederated, we give the following tables (see also page 195).

GEOGRAPHICAL AND STATISTICAL INTRODUCTION.

3. *Noted For.*—British North America is noted for its great extent; its numerous lakes and rivers; its natural facilities for communication between Europe and Asia; its mineral deposits; its fisheries; its great timber-areas; its fertile soil for settlement; and its free monarchical institutions.

4. *The Present Political Divisions* of British North America, with the extent, population, and capitals of these divisions, are as follows:

NAME.	Area in Eng. Sq. Miles.*	Population.	CAPITAL.	Where Situated.	Population.
Lower Canada... }	210,000	1,111,566	Quebec } Otta	{ St. Lawr'ce	62,000
Upper Canada... }	180,000	1,396,091	Tor'nto } wa.	{ Lk. Ontario	45,000
Nova Scotia & C. B.	19,650	380,857	Halifax	S. E. coast,	26,000
New Brunswick ...	27,710	252,047	Fredericton..	Riv. St. John,	6,000
Pr. Edward Island.	2,134	80,857	Charlot'town,	Centre of isl.	7,000
Newfoundland	57,000	122,638	St. Johns	S. E. Penins.	30,500
Hudson Bay Ter. }	1,800,000	{ 175,000	{ York Fac'y,	Hayes River.	
Red River..... }		{ 10,000	{ Fort Garry,	Assiniboine	& Red
British Columbia. }	213,500	8,000	New West-	minster....	Rivers.
Vancouver Island }	16,000	11,463	Victoria	Fraser River,	1,000
				S. of island,	3,000

5. *The Revenue, &c.,* of the five Provinces are as follows:

Name.	Revenue.	Debt.	Imports.	Exports.	Tonnage.
Canada....	\$11,250,000	\$68,000,000	\$46,000,000	\$42,000,000	9,000,000
Nov. Scotia	1,300,000	5,000,000	10,250,000	8,500,000	1,500,000
NewBrun.	1,000,000	6,000,000	8,500,000	9,000,000	1,500,000
Newfound.	500,000	1,000,000	5,250,000	6,000,000	250,000
Pr. Ed. Isl.	200,000	250,000	1,500,000	1,600,000	150,000
Total....	\$14,250,000	\$80,250,000	\$71,500,000	\$67,100,000	12,400,000

* A square tract of country of an equal number of miles each way, may be obtained by extracting the square root of the square miles here given.

QUESTIONS.—What would be the effect of confederation? For what is B. N. America noted? Give its present political divisions, with their extent and population. Give the name and population of each of the capitals.

6. *Discovery, Acquisition, &c.*—The name of the discoverer, mode of acquisition, and time when government was first established in the divisions of British North America, are, as nearly as possible, as follows :

NAME.	DISCOVERER AND DATE.	MODE OF ACQUISITION & DATE.	GOVERNMENT ESTABLISHED.
Lower Canada . . .	Jac. Cartier, 1535.	Capitulation 1760.	French, 1608; Eng- lish, 1763; separ. govt. 1792; united 1840.
Upper Canada . . .	Champlain, 1615.	Cession, 1763.	
Nova Scotia . . .	Seb. Cabot, 1498.	Cabot's visit and treaty of 1713.	Separ. govt. 1748; sep. govt. 1784; united 1819.
Cape Breton . . .	Seb. Cabot, 1498.	Capitulation 1758.	
New Brunswick . .	Jac. Cartier, 1535.	Treaty, 1713.	Separate govt. 1784.
Pr. Edward Island	Seb. Cabot, 1498.	Treaty, 1763.	Separate govern- ment, 1771.
Newfoundland . . .	Sir J. Cabot, 1497.	Sir H. Gilbert 1583. Utrecht tr. 1713.	By Charles I, 1663; separ. govt. 1728.
Hudson-Bay . . .	H. Hudson, 1619 and 1794.	Treaty, 1713 and 1763.	Charter 1670, and license 1821 & 1842
Red River	Canad. explorers.	Lord Selkirk's settlement 1811.	Proposed Crown Colony. [1858.
British Columbia,	Sir A. Mackenzie, 1793.	Treaty, 1793.	Act of Parliament
Vancouver Island	Sir F. Drake, 1759.	Vancouver's visit, 1792; setld. 1848.	Charter to Hudson Bay Co., 1849.

7. *The General Area* of these divisions of British North America is, as near as we can determine, as follows :

NAME.	Aver. length in m.	Aver. width in m.	Miles of sea-coast lines.	Area in acres.	Acres sold.	Acres in cultivation.
Lower Canada . . .	1,300	300	1,000	160,500,000	13,680,000	4,804,235
Upper Canada . . .						
Nova Scotia . . .	350	100	1,150	13,534,200	5,748,900	1,028,032
Cape Breton . . .						
New Brunswick . .	190	150	500	17,600,000	6,636,320	835,108
Prince Edward Island						
Newfoundland Id.	130	30	350	1,370,000	1,365,000	368,127
Hudson Bay Territory	409	300	1,100	23,040,000	100,000	41,108
Red River Sett.	1,500
British Columbia.	450	250	900	136,640,000	60,000	6,500
Vancouver Island	278	55	850	8,320,000	65,000	7,000

QUESTIONS.—Give particulars of the date of discovery, mode of acquisition, and government of the several provinces of British North America, with the names of each. Give as near as you can their area, coast-line, &c.

For what is their extent capitals.

Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

CHAPTER VII.

FIRST SETTLEMENT OF CANADA, 1604-1608.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Causes leading to the Settlement of New France.

1. Commercial Efforts.—2. Champlain's First Voyage.—3. His Second Voyage.—4. His Third Voyage.

1. *Commercial Efforts.*—Not only did the French fishermen continue to frequent the coast of Newfoundland, but, under the patronage of Henri IV, Dupont Gravé, a merchant of St. Malo, and Chauvin, a master-mariner of Rouen, made several voyages to Tadoussac, and brought home cargoes of the rich furs which had been collected from the north at that place. A stone building was erected there (the first ever put up in Canada), and for a time the fur-trade was prosperous. Subsequent voyages, however, having proved unsuccessful, De Chattes, the governor of Dieppe, formed a company of Rouen and other merchants to prosecute the traffic more vigorously.

2. *Champlain's First Voyage.*—The first expedition to Canada projected by this company, consisted of three small ships. It was placed under the command of Samuel de Champlain, a distinguished captain in the French navy.* In company with

* Samuel de Champlain, a native of Brouage, in France, explored the St. Lawrence, with Dupont Gravé, from Tadoussac to Three Rivers, in 1603-7. On the 3rd July, 1608, he founded the city of Quebec. In 1609, he ascended the river Richelieu, and discovered Lake Champlain. In 1615, he ascended the Ottawa to Lake Nipissing; descended French River to Georgian Bay; and from Lake Simcoe he passed, by a long portage, to the head-waters of the river Trent, and thence to Lake Ontario. He then crossed to Oswego. He had many unnecessary conflicts with the Iroquois Indians. In 1629, his capital was captured by the English, under Sir David Kertk, but, in 1632, restored. In 1633, he was appointed the first governor of Canada. He died in 1635, deeply regretted.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the causes which led to the first formation of a French company of merchants to promote trade with the new French colony. Describe Champlain's first voyage, and give a sketch of his life.

Dupont Gravé he reached the St. Lawrence in 1603, and lost no time in pushing his way up the river as far as the Sault St. Louis (Lachine). He carefully noted all he saw; and having prepared a chart, illustrating his explorations, for the information of the king, Henri IV, he returned to France.

3. *Champlain's Second Voyage.*—The French monarch (Henri IV) regarded Champlain's explorations with favour. Upon De Chattes' death, he conferred upon Sieur de Monts (a distinguished Huguenot) greatly enlarged trading privileges. In company with Champlain, Dupont Gravé and De Poutrincourt, De Monts sailed with three vessels for Acadie (Nova Scotia), which he preferred for his proposed colony. A fourth vessel was despatched to Tadoussac. Two of them having reached Nova Scotia, soon made their way round the peninsula into a large bay which De Monts named La Baie Française (now called Fundy). Champlain, being in advance, here discovered and named Port Royal (Annapolis), and the rivers St. John and St. Croix. Poutrincourt selected Port Royal as a place of settlement, and De Monts made him a grant of it. This grant—the first ever made in America since its discovery—was afterwards confirmed by letters patent from the king. De Monts returned to France; but the enemies of his trading monopoly were so powerful that he was deprived of his commission. He regained it again in 1607, for one year, on condition that he would colonize Canada, with a view to open up through it a route to India and China. (See NOVA SCOTIA, Part vi, Chapter xxvii, page 198.)

4. *Champlain's Third Voyage—Quebec Founded.*—De Monts lost no time in fitting out an expedition under Champlain to explore the St. Lawrence. Two vessels sailed on the 13th April, 1608, and reached Tadoussac on the 3rd June. One of these proceeding up the river with Champlain, reached, on 3rd July, the spot which, seventy-three years before, was first visited

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of his second voyage. Mention the discoveries made in Nova Scotia by this expedition. What is said of Poutrincourt's settlement and the grant made of it? Sketch De Monts' career.

by Cartier. No trace of Stadacona remained. On the site of the former village Champlain erected a fort,—in this way foreshadowing the future destiny of a spot which has since become so famous in the military annals of two great nations. Thus, after long years of retribution, misfortune, and doubt, a footing was obtained, and the infant capital of New France in America was founded in Canada. From that centre of civilization radiated, in later years, a series of French settlements, which to the east embraced the islands of Newfoundland, Cape Breton, and Prince Edward, as well as Acadie, or Nova Scotia, and stretched away to the west from Montreal to Frontenac, Niagara, Penetanguishene, and Detroit, and thence across the continent to Florida and Louisiana.

CHAPTER VIII.

SKETCH OF FRENCH RULE—FIRST PERIOD, 1608—1672.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Champlain's Career—Early Trading Efforts—Indian Wars—Political Progress—Development of the Fur-Trade—Colonial Trading Contests.

1. Champlain's First Discovery.—2. Fatal Effects of Champlain's Indian League.—3. Champlain's Further Discoveries.—4. Trading Disputes—New Explorations.—5. Reverses—Further Explorations.—6. Champlain's Discouragements and Zeal.—7. The Company of One Hundred Associates—Seigniorial Tenure introduced.—8. First Capture of Quebec.—9. Death and Career of Champlain.—10. Montreal Founded.—11. Several Institutions Founded.—12. Concerted Indian Attacks.—13. Destruction of the Hurons.—14. Projected Alliance with New England.—15. A Lull in the Indian Contest.—16. Royal Government Established.—17. Ameliorations in the System of Government.—18. Vigorous Administration and Reform.—19. Expeditions against the Iroquois.—20. Rest, Prosperity, and Development.—21. Attempted Diversion of the Fur-Trade.—22. Treaties with the Indians.

1. *Champlain's First Discovery.*—Anxious to explore the country near his new settlement, Champlain entered into friendly

QUESTIONS.—When did Champlain make his third voyage, and what was its object? What is said of his having founded the capital of New France, and of the after-extent of the French settlements in America?

relations with the neighbouring tribes. The Algonquins, being oppressed by a superior race unknown to Champlain, gladly accepted his offer. In July, 1609, a war-party accompanied him from Quebec. On reaching the river of the Iroquois, a tributary of the St. Lawrence,* he turned southwards and continued his canoe-voyage up the stream, with his Algonquin allies, until he came to that beautiful lake which, as a memorial of his discoveries, still bears his name.

2. *Fatal Effects of Champlain's Indian League.*—Champlain proceeded up this lake to its further extremity. Here he and his Indian allies encountered a band of 200 Iroquois, who gave battle, but they were utterly defeated by the superior arms of the new friends of the Algonquins. Thus, in an unprovoked contest, was the first Indian blood unwarrantably shed by the white man in Canada. Bitterly and fiercely, and for many years, was this fatal error again and again avenged, until hundreds of French colonists had atoned for the life of every Iroquois who fell in this first memorable battle with the European.

3. *Champlain's Further Discoveries.*—Champlain soon afterwards returned to Quebec, and thence to France. He was received with great favour by Henri IV, who felt deeply interested in the state of New France, as he called his American

*This river, so noted in the early history of Canada and in the desolating wars between the French colonists and the Iroquois, was first known as the *River of the Iroquois*, (as it led up to the eastern portion of the Iroquois territory, which was inhabited by the Mohawks). It was afterwards named the *Richelieu*, (after the distinguished French Cardinal of that name,) when M. de Montmagny erected Fort Richelieu at the mouth of the river, as a barrier against the Iroquois, in 1641. Subsequently the river was called *Sorel*, (after a captain of the Carignan regiment, who rebuilt Fort Richelieu). The river was also called *Chambly*, after De Chambly, a captain of the same regiment, who also erected Fort St. Louis, which was afterwards called *Chambly*. M. de Salières, another Carignan captain, erected Fort St. Thérèse, nine miles above Chambly, on the same river. M. de Mothe, a fourth Carignan captain, erected Fort St. Anne on Mothe island, at the foot of Lake Champlain.

QUESTIONS.—What notable discovery did Champlain make? What is said of the Iroquois River? Give the particulars of Champlain's fatal Indian league against the Iroquois. What further expedition set out?

possessions. Although De Monts' privileges had expired, he nevertheless, with the aid of the Merchants' Company, fitted out a fourth expedition, under the command of Champlain and Dupont Gravé. This expedition reached Tadoussac after a pleasant passage of eighteen days. The colony being prosperous, Champlain determined to make further explorations. He joined the neighbouring Indians in another attack on an entrenched camp of the Iroquois, at the mouth of the river of the Iroquois. The contest was a severe one; but the arms of the French quickly decided it in favour of their Indian allies. Champlain, however, was severely wounded, and soon afterwards returned to Quebec.

4. *Trading Disputes—New Explorations.*—At Quebec, Champlain heard with profound regret of the assassination of king Henri IV. De Monts' influence at court having now entirely ceased, Champlain again returned to France, and prevailed on the Count de Soissons to become the patron of Canada. De Soissons died almost immediately, but the Prince de Condé* took his place. Champlain had great difficulty in reconciling the disputes which arose out of the new trading-privileges which had been conferred upon the Merchants' Company; but at length he partially succeeded, and in 1613 again embarked for Canada. Stopping a short time at Quebec, he proceeded on to Hochelaga (Montreal). Here he erected a fort, and entered into a treaty with the Huron Indians. He then turned his attention to exploration. Delighted with what they saw, Champlain and his comrades entered the Ottawa and proceeded up the river. Surprised at its uniform breadth and volume, they still advanced in hope, as Champlain had been led to believe, of reaching the Hudson Bay, which had been discovered by

* This prince should not be confounded with his son, "the great Condé," who was born in 1621, and who became so famous in the war against Spain, under the celebrated Marshal Turenne.

QUESTIONS.—At what time did the expedition reach Tadoussac? What explorations did Champlain now undertake? What trading disputes did he experience, and what did he do? What is said of the river Ottawa?

Henry I
learned
languag
source
northwe
it, and
thence

5. *Rec*

—The
be an in
A new
incorpo
duce Cl
plain b
Recolle
of them
the Ott
river, s
Lake H

* Henr
is unknow
a north-
latitude,
bla. In
India Co
beautiful
a fourth
Greenla
Britann
vast bay
went so
return;
at night
infirm
afterwa
after ha

QUES
How w
sionari

Henry Hudson in 1610 ; but having learned, from the significant sign-language of the Indians, that the source of the Ottawa lay far to the northwest, they despaired to reach it, and returned to Quebec, and thence to St. Malo, in August, 1613.

5. *Reverses—Further Explorations.*

—The Prince de Condé proved to be an influential patron and viceroy. A new and enlarged company was



Henry Hudson.*

incorporated under his auspices ; and an effort was made to introduce Christianity among the Indians. For this purpose, Champlain brought the first missionaries to Canada. These were four Recollet fathers, who accompanied him in 1615. He took one of them with him in his explorations up the Ottawa. From the Ottawa he proceeded to Lake Nippissing, thence down a river, since known as French River, into the Georgian Bay and Lake Huron, called Mer Douce by the French. Retracing his

* Henry Hudson was an eminent English navigator, but his early history is unknown. He was sent, in 1607, by some London merchants, to discover a north-west passago to China and Japan, but reached only 80° north latitude, and returned. In a second voyage he went as far as Nova Zembla. In 1609, he was despatched on a third voyage, by the Dutch East India Company (who called him Hendrick Hudson), and discovered the beautiful river Hudson, in the State of New York. In 1610, he undertook a fourth voyage, in a bark named the "Discovery," and in June reached Greenland. Proceeding along the Labrador coast, which he named Nova Britannia, he discovered, in 60° north latitude, a strait leading into the vast bay (both of which are now called after him). He entered it, and went southwards. Unable to bear the severe climate, he prepared to return ; but having threatened his mutinous crew, they entered his cabin at night, pinioned his arms, and put him, with his son John, and seven infirm men, on shore in a boat. Hudson and these men were never afterwards heard of. A few of the mutineers reached England, in 1611, after having justly suffered great hardships.

QUESTIONS.—Sketch Hudson's life. Who became patron of Canada? How was Christianity introduced into Canada? Who were the first missionaries? Mention the explorations which Champlain made in 1615-16.

steps eastwards, he visited a Huron settlement near lake Simcoe, named Chiragué, which was afterwards known as the French mission of St. Jean Baptiste. He then turned further eastwards, to a lake now called Balsam, and at length passed by a long portage to the head-waters of the Trent, and thence, by the Bay of Quinté, to Lake Ontario, where he arrived in July, 1615. At the Sault St. Louis (Lachine) he was again induced to join an expedition of the Huron and Ottawa Indians against the Iroquois. The expedition failed; Champlain was wounded, and was virtually held a prisoner by his faithless Huron allies. His energetic nature brooked no restraint, however; and he induced the Hurons to allow him to renew his explorations for a short time. At length, by the aid of friendly Indians, he returned secretly to Sault St. Louis, and thence to Quebec, where he found the little colony, which had mourned him as dead, menaced by the hostile Iroquois.

6. *Champlain's Discouragements and Zeal.*—Owing to the continued contest between the friends and enemies of the Company's monopoly in Canada, Champlain returned to France in 1616, and sought to reconcile differences and to secure the favour of the government. The Prince de Condé, being involved in political troubles, sold his vice-royalty in Canada to the Duke de Montmorency, a friend of Champlain.* The company of merchants suffered much embarrassment, and were involved in litigation in endeavouring to maintain their exclusive privileges in the peltry-traffic. They strongly censured Champlain for his greater devotion to exploration than to their trade-interests, and therefore sought to supersede him by Dupont Gravé, whose thoughts were more engrossed in the

* Henry, Duke de Montmorency, and Admiral of France, was born in 1595. He was successful against the Huguenots—1628; but being an enemy of Cardinal Richelieu, he raised the standard of rebellion in Languedoc. He was wounded, taken prisoner and executed in 1632.

QUESTIONS.—How did Champlain's next contest with the Iroquois end? How did he escape? What farther discouragements did he meet with? What did he then do? Who aided him? Give a sketch of his life.

extensio
the mat
royal d
plain, a
at Tadd
from Ro
tered fir
much t
plain la
which o
it was a
laws fo
he was
owing t
incursio
1621 to
quois a
aided b
suffered
to urg
trading
were th
Sieur o
on his
and so
plain.
Champ
large r
sion, s
Quebe
The b
was, h
crisis.

QUES
of the
Sketch

extension of the fur-trade. Warm discussions ensued, and the matter was finally brought before the king's council. A royal decree was, however, passed in 1619, sustaining Champlain, and he again left for Canada in 1620. On his arrival at Tadoussac, he found that some inexperienced rival traders from Rochelle had, contrary to regulations, imprudently bartered fire-arms with the Indians for furs. This indiscretion caused much trouble with the Indians. In the same year Champlain laid the foundation of the Castle of St. Louis, Quebec, which continued to be a vice-royal residence until 1834, when it was accidentally burned. He also framed a brief code of laws for the internal government of the little colony; but he was greatly impeded in his efforts to promote its prosperity, owing to religious dissensions, commercial disputes, and the incursions of the Iroquois. These incursions threatened in 1621 to lead to serious results. Three hostile bands of Iroquois attacked as many of the settlements; but the French, aided by the Hurons, repulsed them. The Hurons, however, suffered severely. Champlain sent a Jesuit father to the king, to urge a more vigorous defensive policy on the part of the trading company of merchants. The powers of the company were therefore conferred by Montmorency, the Viceroy, upon Sieur de Caen, who was sent out as superintendent. De Caen, on his arrival at Tadoussac, assumed almost royal authority, and sought even to exercise a strict surveillance over Champlain. His arbitrary conduct was energetically resisted by Champlain, and by the colonists, who retired to France in large numbers. De Caen, disappointed at the result of his mission, soon after left for France also, and Champlain returned to Quebec, disheartened at the distracted state of the colony. The birth of a French child in 1621—the first in the colony—was, however, an event of much interest to Champlain at this crisis. In 1622, Champlain had the satisfaction of seeing a

QUESTIONS.—What occurred at Tadoussac? How were the incursions of the Iroquois met? What change was made by the trading company? Sketch de Caen's career. What events of interest are next mentioned?

solemn treaty of peace entered into between the hostile tribes of Indians, and to learn that by a royal edict the disputes between the rival trading-companies had been settled.

7. *The Company of One Hundred Associates--Seigniorial Tenure introduced.*—The Duke of Ventadour (who had succeeded his uncle as viceroy in 1625), having entered one of the orders of monks, devoted most of his attention to the conversion of the Indians. This well-meant, but exclusive policy did not please Champlain. His objections were shared in by the Cardinal Richelieu, who revoked the charter of the old Company in 1627, and instituted a new one upon a broader basis. This association was invested with extensive powers, and named "The Company of One Hundred Partners." It was invested by Richelieu with the Vice-Royalty of New France and Florida, and with the "attributes of seigniorship and justice-ship," "with power to assume for its infeoffed lands such titles, deeds, honours, rights, powers, and faculties as should be judged fitting." Thus, in Canada the seigniorial tenure, or feudal system, was extended and consolidated. The French monarch also raised twelve of the principal seigneurs to the rank of the French *noblesse*. Shortly afterwards King Charles I established the order of Baronets of Nova Scotia in that country.

8. *First Capture of Quebec.*—Scarcely had the new Company been organized, ere war was declared between France and England. The first ships which the Company sent to Canada were captured; and shortly afterwards Tadoussac fell into the hands of the English, under Sir David Kertk, a French Huguenot refugee from Dieppe, who had been commissioned, by Charles I, in 1628. Kertk sent messengers to Quebec, which was not very strongly fortified, and summoned it to surrender; but Champlain treated the messengers so well, while at the same time he sent back so haughty a reply, that Kertk withdrew his ships without attacking him. Next year,

QUESTIONS.—State what further changes were made, and what led to them. What is said of creation of the seigniorial tenure, of the *noblesse* of Canada, and of Nova Scotia Baronets? What new troubles now arose?

however, l
offered hor
great strai
July, 1629
nor of Que
released a
oppress th
en-Laye, i
Cape Bret

9. *Death*
again retu
to restore
to promot
tlement w
tion of the
the midst
colony wa
her below
heroic ene
years. E
his early
three vol
of his voy
France, a
was trans

10. *Mo*
Champla
magny, v
colony.*

* Le Che
tion, Mont
against th
to this go
Nontio, th

QUESTIO
cumstanc
career. V

however, he again appeared before Quebec, and, after having offered honourable terms to Champlain, who was reduced to great straits, the city and its heroic governor capitulated in July, 1629. Kertk, having installed his brother, Lewis, as governor of Quebec, took Champlain to England, but he was soon released and sent to France. These disasters did not long oppress the infant colony; for, by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, in 1632, England restored not only Canada, but also Cape Breton and Nova Scotia, to France.

9. *Death and Career of Champlain.*—In 1633, Champlain again returned to Canada as governor. He at once set himself to restore prosperity, and, by the aid of the Jesuit missionaries, to promote civilization among the Indians. In 1634, a new settlement was formed at Three Rivers; and, in 1635, the foundation of the Jesuit College for the Hurons was laid at Quebec. In the midst of these signs of returning life and vigour, the young colony was called upon to suffer a signal loss,—the death of her beloved Champlain, after a checkered yet noble career of heroic endurance, in the service of France in Canada, of thirty years. He was a man of unusual energy and decision; but his early zeal against the Iroquois was ill-judged. He wrote three volumes, at intervals, containing an interesting account of his voyages to Canada. He also wrote a history of New France, and a summary of Christian doctrines, which latter was translated into both the Huron and Iroquois languages.

10. *Montreal Founded.*—In 1636, De Chateaufort succeeded Champlain; but in six months he was replaced by De Montmagny, who sought to emulate Champlain in his zeal for the colony.* In 1637, M. de Sillery, a benevolent French priest,

* Le Chevalier Charles Huault de Montmagny. During his administration, Montreal was founded, and the long threatened war of extermination against the Huron Indians was commenced by the Iroquois. It was to this governor that the Indians first applied the term *Onontio*, or *Nontio*, the *great mountain*,—a literal translation of M. de Montmagny's

QUESTIONS.—Describe the first capture of Quebec. Under what circumstances was it restored to the French? Sketch Champlain's further career. Who succeeded him? What is said of M. de Montmagny?

founded an institution four miles above Quebec, for the Indian converts. Three years afterwards, the island of Montreal was, for the purposes of settlement, ceded by M. de Lauzon (who, in 1635, had obtained it from the Company of One Hundred Partners) to an association of thirty-five persons. M. de Maisonneuve was selected to found the settlement, which he did under many discouragements in 1642. He first erected a few buildings, and enclosed the whole of them within a wooden palisade for protection against the Indians.* On the 18th of May, 1642, the humble settlement was with religious ceremonies solemnly named Villa Maria, or Marianopolis, by the superior of the Jesuits. Thus, on a site selected with great sagacity, was laid the foundation of Montreal, the present commercial metropolis of Canada.

11. *Several Institutions Founded.*—Between the year 1635 and 1644, five important institutions were founded. The first was the Seminary of the Hurons (Jesuit College), erected at Quebec, in 1635; the second was the "Habitation" for Indian converts, at Sillery, near Quebec, in 1637; the third was the Ursulines' Convent at Quebec, in 1639; the fourth was the Hotel-Dieu at Sillery, in 1639, removed to Quebec in 1644; and the fifth was the Hotel-Dieu at Montreal, in 1642. In 1644 the Island of Montreal was ceded to the religious order of the Sulpicians at Paris. Abbé Toller, the founder of the order, exerted himself to found a seminary on the island, but was not successful, for it was not established until 1677.

12. *Concerted Indian Attacks.*—The year 1644 is memorable for a bold scheme on the part of the Iroquois to destroy the name. The term was afterwards applied indifferently to each of the French governors of Canada. *Onontio goa* (Ontiogoia) was the Indian name of the king of France.

* Paul Chomedey de Maisonneuve was appointed the first governor of Montreal. Through the intrigues of M. de Mézy, he was, at his own request, replaced in the government of Montreal by M. d'Ailleboust

QUESTIONS.—Mention the circumstances connected with the foundation of Montreal. What institutions were founded in L. C. during the years 1635 to 1644? What is said of M. de Maisonneuve; and of the year 1644?

French lin
was again
posts, on
year (164
who were
allies (the
they hope
nists in C
bands, an
ensuing s
neously t
bushed p
sagacity
riors desi
by the ga
prematur
the proje
the Iroqu
very exis
Fort Ric
magny v
(Richelie
cipal po
was sma
of the f
sent to
Algonqu
Iroquois
to it. It
that an

* In 17
of the Fr
of the E
Michigan

QUEST
French l
it. How

French line of posts,—a scheme which, with singular exactness, was again repeated, by other Indian tribes, against the English posts, one hundred and twenty years afterwards.* In that year (1644), the Iroquois, who were friendly to the English, but who were bitterly hostile to the French, and their Indian allies (the Algonquins and Hurons), formed a plan by which they hoped to exterminate in a single day all the French colonists in Canada. They divided their warriors into two great bands, and these two bands into ten separate war-parties. In the ensuing spring these war-parties were, on a given day, simultaneously to attack the French settlements, from several ambushed points, selected with more than the usual skill and sagacity of the keen-eyed Iroquois. The band of eighty warriors designed to surprise Montreal was fortunately discovered by the garrison and defeated; while other bands, having acted prematurely, were foiled in their attempts. Thus, although the project failed for want of unity of action on the part of the Iroquois bands, yet many valuable lives were lost; and the very existence of the colony itself was for a time imperilled. Fort Richelieu, which had been erected by the Governor Montmagny with great difficulty, at the mouth of the Iroquois (Richelieu) river to keep these Indians in check, was a principal point of attack, but, although the force within the fort was small, it was successfully defended; and the governor of the fort, with much skill, induced the Iroquois to consent to a peace. A truce followed, to which the Hurons, Algonquins, and French were parties; but only one of the Iroquois cantons, then at war with the French, would consent to it. It was broken by them in 1646, on the frivolous pretext that an epidemic and a failure in the crops, which occurred

* In 1763, Pontiac, a celebrated chief of the Ottawa Indians and an ally of the French, matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the destruction of the English by the simultaneous capture of all their forts from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. The plot failed. See No. 49, Chapter ix, page 96.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the Iroquois scheme for destroying the French line of trading-posts in 1644. Had it any after parallel? Mention it. How was a truce brought about? Upon what pretexts was it broken?

at the same time, were caused by the machinations of M. Jogues, a Jesuit father. This Jesuit father was barbarously murdered. Ferocious attacks were also made on other missionaries, and several of the settlements; and war and rapine again desolated the country. Taking advantage, however, of the partial cessation from strife, the Company of One Hundred Partners, which had suffered such terrible losses during the struggle, made an important change in their relations to the colony. The Company conceded to the inhabitants the right, under certain restrictions, to trade in peltries, and on the yearly payment to it of one million of beaver-skins. This arrangement was confirmed by royal edict; and the Company consequently renounced all further right to interfere in the interna' trading concerns of New France.

13. *Destruction of the Hurons.*—M. d'Ailleboust succeeded M. de Montmagny, as governor, in 1647. The latter had remained in Canada for three years, and had proved himself to be an able man. During his brief administration, the Jesuit missionaries had greatly extended their explorations into the interior among the Indians, especially to the north-west, and thus the religious interest in the colony was greatly increased in France. Irritated at the continued alliance of the Hurons with the French, the Iroquois formed a scheme for their utter extinction. The 4th of July, 1648, was selected as the commencement of this terrible episode in Indian warfare. On that day they fell upon the Huron settlement of St. Joseph, and destroyed the whole population, numbering 700. Every wigwam was burned; and as if to give a more malignant vent to their hatred to the religion of the pale faces, they set fire to the church; and then threw the mangled and bleeding body of its pastor, Père Daniel, the Jesuit missionary, into the midst of the flames. They then suddenly withdrew, leaving the rest of the mission settlements in a state of terror during the remain-

QUESTIONS.—What followed the breaking of the truce? Mention the steps taken by the Company to place trade on a firm basis. What is said of M. de Montmagny? Why were the Iroquois so hostile to the Hurons?

der of the
Iroquois
near the
habitants
ner, and
Hurons
defeat fo
them ter
very exi
hunting-
Utterly r
their mis
a resting
from the
Here, du
as the c
followed
Hearing
to the s
tection o
spot, wh
or "Pla
Hurons
Ottawa
disperse
by the c
for year
were el
storm y
thence

14. J
was not
between

QUEST
led to th
of the t

der of the year. Early in the following March a band of Iroquois swooped down like an eagle upon a Huron settlement near the great lakes, and put to death four hundred of its inhabitants. Each successive settlement was visited in like manner, and with a like result. Soon, in self-defence, the hunted Hurons stood at bay; and for a time alternate success and defeat followed each other with fatal rapidity, imlicting on them terrible losses. At length, in a final struggle for their very existence and for the possession of their homes and hunting-grounds, they were defeated by the unsparing Iroquois. Utterly routed, the unhappy Hurons, accompanied by some of their missionaries, fled to the upper lakes, and at length found a resting-place on the island of St. Joseph, in the lake which, from the circumstance of their flight, now bears their name. Here, during the winter, from want of game, disease, as well as the dread of the tomahawk of the fierce Iroquois, which followed them, rapidly reduced their already thinned ranks. Hearing of the further ravages of the Iroquois, they again fled to the shores of Lake Superior, and sought the powerful protection of the Ojibwas. Here a decisive battle took place on a spot, which, from this circumstance, was named Point Iroquois, or "Place of the Iroquois bones;" and for a short time the Hurons were sheltered. They also sought the protection of the Ottawa Indians, but were, even with them, again pursued and dispersed. Many of the survivors fled to Montreal and Quebec by the circuitous route of Lake Nipissing and the Ottawa, and for years remained encamped within the walls of Quebec, or were elsewhere placed under French protection. After the storm passed over, they were transferred to Ste. Foye; and thence to Lorette, where their descendants now remain.

14. *Projected Alliance with New England.*—The year 1648 was noted for the proffered alliance of commerce and friendship between New England and Canada. To promote this object,

QUESTIONS.—Mention the successive attacks of the Iroquois which finally led to the destruction of the Huron Indians. Where was the remainder of the tribe placed? What notable event took place in the year 1648?

an envoy was sent from the English colonists at Boston to the French colonists at Quebec. A deputation of two persons was in return sent from Quebec to Boston in 1650-1. The English colonists stipulated that both colonies should remain neutral in any European contest between England and France; while the French, having suffered so severely from the Iroquois in their peltry-traffic, declined to enter into any treaty unless the English would consent to turn their arms against the Iroquois. This hostile stipulation on the part of the French, against the Indian allies of the English, although skilfully presented as a righteous league in defence of Christianity against scoffing Pagans, broke off the negotiations, and the scheme unhappily failed. When this stipulation became known to the Iroquois, it exasperated them still more; and they redoubled their efforts to destroy the French colonists; so that for several years the French, like the ancient rebuilders of Jerusalem, laboured with arms in their hands, and were virtually kept within their enclosures and behind their entrenchments. Trade entirely languished; and the beavers were allowed to build their dams in peace, none of the colonists being able or willing to molest them.*

15. *A lull in the Indian Contest.*—M. de Lauzon, a chief member of the Company of One Hundred Associates, succeeded d'Alleboust as governor in 1651; but he was not successful as an administrator. The Iroquois, having succeeded in extirpating the Huron allies of the French, continued to attack the French settlements; and it was not until 1653 that they ceased their warlike inroads upon the colony. In that year reinforcements arrived from France; and the Iroquois, not wishing to encounter their now formidable enemies, intimated a strong desire for peace. A treaty was accordingly entered into, in 1654, with the five Iroquois tribes,

* Relations des Jesuits, 1653.

QUESTIONS.—What was done to bring about a commercial alliance between New England and Canada? What was the condition of the French settlements? After Lauzon's appointment, how did the Iroquois act?

or cantons, through the intervention of Père Lemoine, and for a time war ceased to alarm the colonists. Trade revived, and the peltry-traffic was vigorously prosecuted by the French with such of the Iroquois cantons as were near the boundaries of Canada. The others, however, preferred to traffic with the English. During the intervals of war, explorations were made among the Sioux Indians, beyond Lake Superior, and also among the Esquimaux, near Hudson Bay. The year 1656 was noted for an overland expedition sent from Canada, by way of Labrador, under Sieur Jean Bourdon, attorney-general of New France, to take possession of the Hudson Bay territory on behalf of the French King.—Owing to the efforts of the missionaries to establish a French settlement among the Onondagas (an Iroquois tribe), dissensions again arose. This tribe professed friendship in order to obtain firearms; but not getting them, they behaved treacherously; and in 1656-7 a fierce and desolating Indian war once more ravaged the country. D'Argenson, the new governor, who arrived in 1658, implored the French Government to send immediate succor, else Canada would be for ever lost to France. His requests, however, were unheeded; but the Iroquois, having unexpectedly met with a determined resistance from a few French colonists, under Daulac, in a palisaded post at the foot of the Long Sault, soon afterwards desisted from their concerted attacks upon Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal. Thus relieved from their fears, religious services were held by the colonists in all the churches of Quebec; and a solemn *Te Deum* was chanted for so happy a deliverance.

16. *Royal Government established.*—In 1659 a royal edict regulating the civil government of the colony was issued. In the same year, Mgr. de Laval arrived in Quebec as Vicar-Apostolic of the see of Rome.* M. d'Argenson having solicited his

* The Right Reverend François de Montmorency Laval was born at

QUESTIONS.—What led to peace? Give a sketch of the explorations which were then made. What led to war again? Why were the Iroquois induced to desist in their fierce attacks? What event took place in 1659?

recall, M. d'Avaugour arrived as governor in 1661. Through the efforts of Père Lemoine, he effected, in 1662, another treaty with three cantons of the Iroquois. Fearing its short duration, as two cantons had not concurred in it, he sent the governor of Three Rivers to the king of France with another appeal for aid. The king immediately sent out 400 men. M. de Monts was also sent to report upon the state of the colony. In the meantime D'Avaugour was recalled, at the instance of Mgr. de Laval; and M. de Mésy, who had been nominated by that prelate, was sent out as the first royal governor under the new constitution,—D'Avaugour having induced king Louis XIV to dissolve the Company of One Hundred Associates, in whom, as successors to the Company of Merchants, the government of the colony had been vested since 1603–1628. Owing to various dissensions which had arisen in New France, Colbert,* the chief minister of Marine, sent out M. Dupont further to examine and report upon the state of the colony. His visit had a salutary effect, for it led to several important changes in the administration of public affairs. In 1663 a trifling earthquake occurred in New France.

17. *Ameliorations in the System of Government—Custom of Paris.*—The resumption of royal authority in Canada was

Laval, in France, in 1623. In his youth he was known as Abbé de Montigny; and, in 1659, he came to Canada as Vicar Apostolic, with the title of Bishop of Pétrée; in 1674, he was named first Roman Catholic Bishop of Quebec. He founded and endowed the Quebec Seminary, in 1663, (which, in 1852, became, by Royal charter, the Laval University). He also established an industrial school and model farm, at St. Joachim, below Quebec. He made great efforts to prevent drunkenness among the Indians; and, by his influence at Court, had the administration of government transferred from a viceroy to a superior council, under certain wise restrictions, which he had submitted to Louis XIV. He effected great good in the colony, and died amid many regrets at Quebec 6th May, 1708, at the venerable age of 85 years.

* Jean Baptiste Colbert, born in 1619, was a celebrated minister of finance under Louis XIV.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Bishop Laval. What steps were taken to prevent war? Mention the changes made in the government of Canada in 1663? How did Colbert endeavour to reconcile differences? Who was he?

made the occasion of introducing various reforms, based upon the report of M. Dupont. A "Sovereign Council," invested with administrative and judicial functions, somewhat like the "Parlement de Paris," was instituted at Quebec; legal tribunals were established at various places, and municipal government in a modified form introduced. The right of taxation was, however, reserved to the king. The administration of government devolved upon a viceroy (who generally resided in France, as colonial minister), a governor, and an intendant or chief of justice, police, and public works. With these modifications, the king, in 1664, transferred the trading interests of Canada to the West India Company, by whom an ordinance was passed introducing into the colony the "law and custom of Paris" (*la coutume de Paris*). With a view to ensure harmony in this matter throughout Canada, all other French *coutumes* were declared illegal there. In the meantime further disputes arose between the governor and the bishop, which ended in De Mésy being recalled from Canada to answer for the arbitrary suspension of his councillors. He died, however, before the sentence of recall and arrest could be executed.

18. *Vigorous Administration and Reform.*—The new rulers sent out from France in 1665, were men of ability, as subsequent events proved. M. de Tracy was selected by the King as lieutenant-general,* M. de Courcelles as governor,† and

* Alexandre de Bonville, Marquis de Tracy, before coming to Canada had already distinguished himself in the taking of Cayenno from the Dutch, and in the capture of several islands in the West Indies. By his military prowess and skill in dealing with the Indians, he compelled the haughty Iroquois to make a satisfactory peace with New France, which lasted for eighteen years.

† Daniel de Rémi, Seigneur de Courcelles, was an able governor; but he did not at all times display the same energy in the public service. He showed much sagacity and zeal in his efforts to prevent the peltry traffic of New France from being diverted into the hands of the English traders.

QUESTIONS.—What was the result of M. Dupont's mission? Mention the steps taken to restore royal authority in Canada. Describe the Intendant's duties. Who were the new rulers sent out? What is said of them?

M. Talon as intendant.* On their arrival, with new emigrants and farming materials, the colony revived; and vigour was at once infused into the government. With the Carignan regiment,† which De Tracy had brought out with him, steps were taken to put a stop to the inroads of the Iroquois. The forts were increased and strengthened, especially on the Richelieu river. Talon, by authority of the king, busied himself with various useful reforms in the system of government, especially in regard to the administration of the finances, the punishment of speculators, and the supervision of the clergy's tithes, so as to reduce their amount. He further sought to encourage both agriculture and manufactures in the colony. He also prepared a minute report for Colbert on the state of affairs in the colony, with a view still further to redress grievances. The suggestions of M. Talon, endorsed as they were by the Sovereign Council, were favourably entertained by Louis XIV; and the restrictions on trade, imposed by the West India Company, were greatly relaxed in Canada.

19. *Expeditions against the Iroquois.*—The reinforcements sent to Canada, and the preparations for war, awed the Iroquois. Three of the weaker cantons, or tribes, demanded peace; but the fierce and powerful Mohawks and Oneidas disdained it. Against these two a formidable expedition, under command of De Tracy, was led by the governor in person 700 miles into the interior of the Iroquois country. The effect of this expedition was most salutary. The whole of the cantons sued

* M. Talon's career in Canada was distinguished by many of the highest qualities of a successful governor. He promoted to the best of his ability every enterprise which had for its object the advancement of Canada. Louis XIV conferred upon him the successive titles of Baron d'Orsainville, Baron des Islets, and Baron d'Ormale.

† So named from the Prince of Carignano, a Savoyard in the French service. This regiment gained much distinction as a French military auxiliary to the Germans in their wars in Hungary against the Turks.

QUESTIONS.—What did these rulers bring? How did Talon seek to improve the system of government? How were the Iroquois dealt with? Give a sketch of Talon's career. What is said of the Carignan regiment?

for peace
with the

20. *R*
ceased,
developi
ditions
mineral
was bro
age of
and tra
more do
vation,
manufa
the col
ences o
to retir
by De
having
he was

21. *J*
having
New Y
the age
profit b
for the
being t
their c
caused
ernor,
the tr
tribes,
in the
and th

QUES
the Iro
affect t

for peace; and in 1666 a satisfactory treaty was entered into with them, which lasted for eighteen years.

20. *Rest, Prosperity, and Development.*—War having happily ceased, the whole attention of the government was turned to developing the industry and resources of the country. Expeditions were sent out by Talon in various directions; the mineral wealth of St. Paul's Bay, Three Rivers, and Gaspé was brought to light by geological explorers, under the patronage of Colbert; fisheries and seal-hunting were prosecuted, and trade in timber and seal-oil commenced. Nor were the more domestic features of industry overlooked. Hemp cultivation, tanning, stave-making, and other branches of domestic manufacture were fostered. Horses were also introduced into the colony in 1665. Ill health, however, no less than differences of opinion with the governor and clergy, induced Talon to retire from the Intendancy in 1668. He was succeeded by De Bouteroue, who sought to conciliate all parties; but having failed to realize the hopes and expectations of Colbert, he was replaced by Talon again, in 1670.

21. *Attempted Diversion of the Fur-Trade.*—The English, having superseded the Dutch in New Amsterdam (afterwards New York), in 1663, pushed their trade northward through the agency of the Iroquois Indians. These allies, anxious to profit by the traffic, sought in 1670 to obtain furs and skins for them from the various tribes up the Ottawa. This region being the hunting-ground from which the French now obtained their chief supply of furs, the cutting off this source of supply caused much rivalry and ill-feeling. De Courcelles, the governor, set out himself to the Indian country to put a stop to the traffic. His mission had a good effect upon the rival tribes, but ill health obliged him to return. The small-pox in the meantime attacked the Indians with great severity, and that, with fire-water, carried off great numbers of them.

QUESTIONS.—What was the effect of the expedition undertaken against the Iroquois? How long did the peace last? How did the fur-traffic affect the relations of the French and English colonists with the Iroquois?

22. *Treaties with the Indians.*—While the rival fur-trade was yet in its infancy, Talon, the Intendant, with great sagacity, sought to induce the various Indian tribes at the North and West to acknowledge the sovereignty of Louis XIV, and thus, by anticipation and with the sanction of the Indians, to settle the question of priority of right to trade with them. With this view, Talon, in 1670, despatched Nicholas Perrot,* an enterprising merchant, and well acquainted with Indian life and character, to visit the Indians at the head of the great lakes. Perrot went as far as Lake Michigan, and induced the tribes to meet a French envoy at the Sault Ste. Marie in the spring of 1671, where a cross and *fleur de lis* were erected in



Arms of France.

token of French sovereignty. Talon, moreover, anxious to extend French influence over the whole north-western part of the continent, induced Louis XIV to offer a reward to any one who would reach the Pacific coast through New France. In order to secure the trade of the Hudson Bay Indians, Talon also sent an expedition northwards with that object. De Courcelles, too, with a view to establish a *dépôt* for French trade on the upper lakes, obtained permission, in 1672, from the Iroquois, to erect a trading-fort at Cataragui (Kingston). This was one of his last official acts; and he soon afterwards left for France,—having been recalled at his own request. In the meantime, the English, anxious to keep pace with France, obtained a footing in the Hudson Bay territories, under

* Nicholas Perrot, a French traveller, was sent by M. Talon (Intendant of Canada), in 1670, to induce the north-western Indians to acknowledge the sovereignty of France. An island situated at the western junction of the Ottawa and St. Lawrence, is called after him. He left a most interesting manuscript on the customs of the Indians.

QUESTIONS.—What steps did Talon take to secure the trade and allegiance of the north-western Indians? How did he seek to promote the extension of French influence over the continent? Give a sketch of Perrot.

the gui
another
Compa
Rupert
of Eng
virtue
this Co
French
sent an
to the s

SKETCH

Career

M

of

an

1. Arriv
tive
and
Mis
See
sion
Cor
got
tur
dit
19.
Ca
169
Lo

QUE
efforts
ance in

the guidance of Des Groselliers, a French pilot, aided by another Franco-Canadian, named Radisson. An English Company was soon formed, under the patronage of Prince Rupert, to trade for furs in the territories. Charles I, king of England, having claimed the Hudson Bay territories, by virtue of Hudson's discoveries in 1610, granted a charter to this Company in 1670, to traffic for furs in that region. The French colonists were jealous of this intrusion, and in 1671 sent another expedition overland to reconnoitre, with a view to the subsequent expulsion of the English from the Bay.

CHAPTER IX.

SKETCH OF FRENCH RULE, SECOND PERIOD: FRONTENAC TO THE CONQUEST, 1672-1759.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Career of Frontenac—Discovery of the Mississippi and Rocky Mountains—Trade Contests—Indian Wars—Settlement of Louisiana and Detroit—Pepperell—Seven Years' War—Washington—Braddock—Dieskau—Wolfe—Montcalm—Conquest of Canada—Conspiracy of Pontiac—English and French Colonial Systems.

1. Arrival of the Count de Frontenac.—2. Frontenac's First Administrative Acts.—3. Guarantees for Civil Liberty.—4. Spirit of Discovery and Adventure.—5. Summary of Discoveries.—6. Discovery of the Mississippi.—7. La Salle's First Expedition to the Mississippi.—8. His Second Expedition.—9. His Third Expedition.—10. Internal Dissensions in Canada.—11. De la Barre's Arrival and Failure.—12. Early Commercial Contests.—13. Campaign against the Iroquois.—14. Negotiations and Renewed Wars.—15. Year of the Massacre.—16. Return of Frontenac—his Energetic War-Measures.—17. Second Expedition against Quebec, 1690.—18. Expedition against Montreal, 1691.—19. Defences—Partial Cessation of War.—20. Invasion of the Iroquois Cantons.—21. Cause of these Incessant Wars.—22. Treaty of Ryswick, 1697.—23. Death and Character of Frontenac.—24. Settlement of Louisiana, 1699.—25. Settlement of Detroit, 1701.—26. Peace after

QUESTIONS.—What steps did the English take to counteract Talon's efforts? What did they do in the Hudson Bay territory? What assistance in the matter was given to the English by two of the French colonists?

Further Intercolonial Contests.—27. Peace and Prosperity in Canada.—28. Further Trading Disputes.—29. Discovery of the Rocky Mountains.—30. Pepperell's Expedition from New England—Treaty of Aix la Chapelle, 1748.—31. Disputes arising out of the Treaty.—32. Commencement of the Seven Years' War.—33. First Memorable Blow Struck.—34. Defeat of Washington.—35. Project for a Federal Union of the Colonies, 1753-4.—36. General Braddock's Defeat and Death.—37. General Dieskau's Career in Canada.—38. Cause of the Double Defeat of Braddock and Dieskau.—39. Results of the First Campaign, 1755.—40. Progress of the Second Campaign, 1756.—41. The Third Campaign, of 1757.—42. The Fourth Campaign, of 1758.—43. The Final Campaign, of 1759.—44. Capture of Quebec—Wolfe and Montcalm.—45. Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.—46. Events leading to the Close of the Campaign.—47. Final Efforts to Regain Canada.—48. Close of French Rule in Canada.—49. The Conspiracy of Pontiac.—50. The Treaty of Paris, 1763.—51. The French and English Colonial Systems contrasted.

1. *Arrival of the Count de Frontenac.*—In the year 1672, De Courcelles, an eminent man and a successful governor, retired, and Count de Frontenac, a man of great energy and ability, arrived.* The count's after-career was still more distinguished than that of any of his predecessors in everything that concerned the progress and prosperity of Canada.

2. *Frontenac's first Administrative Acts.*—On his arrival, Frontenac, who was much struck with the appearance of Quebec and the surrounding country, formed a high opinion of the capabilities of New France. He entered with spirit into the duties of his office. He first assembled the Sovereign Council, and afterwards the principal residents of Quebec, and made

* Louis de Buade, Count de Frontenac, a native of France, and governor of Canada in 1672, was recalled in 1682. In 1672, he built Fort Frontenac (Kingston). It was rebuilt of stone by La Salle, in 1678. Frontenac was re-appointed governor in 1689, and carried on a vigorous war against the English settlements in New York, and against their Indian allies, the Iroquois. The English retaliated, and the Iroquois made various successful inroads into Canada. In 1690, Frontenac defeated Sir William Phipps and the English fleet, before Quebec. He died in 1698, aged 78 years. Though haughty, he was an able and enterprising man.

QUESTIONS.—What are the principal subjects of Chapter IX? Who succeeded De Courcelles? Give a sketch of his career. Mention some of Count de Frontenac's first administrative acts? How did he like Canada?

a fervid s
police, an
meet twic
colony.
infringem

3. *Gu*
the chart
any of th
Frontena
imperial
the admin
regarding
ing that
imprison
trary rule
of the civ

4. *Spi*
markable
of advent
for the c
Jesuit cle
ploration
for laym
tering pe
Trade wi
the who
first sett
years,—
fostered
from th
to shado

* Jasper
jected a

QUEST
What im
of discov

a fervid speech to each. He improved the system of municipal police, and directed that the chief citizens of Quebec should meet twice a year to confer upon the general interests of the colony. This local assembly of the citizens was deemed an infringement of the king's prerogative, and was not sanctioned.

3. *Guarantees for Civil Liberty.*—In 1674 the king revoked the charter of the West India Company, as it had not fulfilled any of the obligations which it had assumed, and invested Frontenac with full authority as royal governor. In 1677, an imperial ordinance of great importance was passed, regulating the administration of justice in Canada. It was followed by one regarding tithes, and another, a still more valuable one, declaring that none but the highest civil authority should hereafter imprison any of the inhabitants. Thus, at a time when arbitrary rule was in the ascendant, was laid the foundation of some of the civil rights of the people of Lower Canada.

4. *Spirit of Discovery and Adventure.*—Nothing was so remarkable, during the early settlement of Canada, as the spirit of adventure and discovery which was then developed. Zeal for the conversion of the Indians seems to have inspired the Jesuit clergy with an unconquerable devotion in the work of exploration and discovery. Nor were they alone in this feeling; for laymen exhibited the same adventurous spirit in encountering peril and hardship; but they did so from different motives. Trade with the Indians and the extension of French power over the whole continent was with them a ruling principle. From the first settlement of Quebec, in 1608, until its fall in 1759,—150 years,—this spirit of discovery and dominion was actively fostered by each succeeding governor, until there radiated from that city a series of French settlements which seemed to shadow forth a dim realization of Coligni's* gigantic scheme

* Jaspard de Colligni, admiral of France, was born in 1516. He projected a comprehensive scheme of French colonization, which, however,

QUESTIONS.—Mention the events which took place in 1674 and 1677. What important ordinances were passed about 1677? Describe the spirit of discovery which was characteristic of the early settlement of Canada.

of French colonization from the St. Lawrence to the far west, and from the sources of the Mississippi to the Gulf of Mexico, and even to the shores of South America.

5. *Summary of Discoveries.*—After Champlain, other explorers extended their researches westward during 1639. In 1640, the southern shores of Lake Erie were visited by Pères Chaulmont and Bréboëuf. In 1647, Père de Quesne went up the Saguenay and discovered Lake St. John. In 1651, 1661, and 1671, expeditions were sent northwards towards the Hudson Bay, with more or less success. In 1646, Père Druillettes ascended the Chaudière, and descended the Kennebec to the Atlantic. In 1659, the Sioux were visited by adventurous traders; and in 1660 Père Mesnard reached Lake Superior. In 1665 Père Allouez coasted the same lake; and in 1670 and 1672 he penetrated with Père Dablon to the Illinois region, where they first heard of the mysterious Mississippi.

6. *Discovery of the Mississippi.*—In 1671, the famous Père Marquette formed a settlement of the Hurons at Michilimackinac;* and, in 1673, Talon, ever anxious to promote comprehensive schemes of exploration and discovery, despatched Marquette with M. Joliettes† to obtain a further clue to the great

was never realized. He fell a victim to the fury of the populace of Paris against the Calvinists, or Huguenots, on St. Bartholomew's Day, 1572.

* Père James Marquette, a Jesuit missionary, was born at Picardy, in France. While a missionary at Lapoint, on Lake Superior, he expressed a desire to preach the Gospel to the southern Indians, and was chosen by Joliettes to accompany him on his expedition to the Mississippi. He remained in the north-west, with the Illinois Indians, and died soon after his return from the exploration, at the early age of 38 years. His narrative of the discovery was afterwards published.

† Louis Joliettes was born at Quebec in 1645; pursued his classical studies at the Jesuits' College there, and, while preparing for the priesthood in the seminary, he determined to explore the western parts of New France. He gave up the study of divinity for that of the Indian languages. In 1673, he was chosen by Frontenac and Talon, the intendant, to explore the Mississippi to its source. He chose Father Marquette to accompany him.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Coligni, and of his scheme of colonization? Give a summary of the explorations and discoveries made by the French from 1639 to 1693. Sketch the career of Père Marquette, and of Joliettes.

unknown
discourag
called Gr
Indians o
they proc
river in
innumera
their toil
object of
the moun
by the Sp
behind a
then at w
he died o
was burie
the mean
what is n
covery.

other exp
Anticosti

7. La
the news
knight, S
in the ho

and proce
tributary.
chine rapi
he receive
grapher to
county in

* Rober
sought to
for that p
since call
source to

QUEST
River?
Salle's fi

unknown river, and if possible to explore its waters. After many discouragements, they reached Bay des Puants, afterwards called Green Bay, on Lake Michigan. Here a party of Miami Indians directed their steps to the Fox River; and thence they proceeded to the Wisconsin River. Sailing down this river in a frail canoe, they were at length, after suffering innumerable discouragements and delays, rewarded for all their toil by a sight of the "great father of waters,"—the object of their search. They proceeded down it as far as the mouth of the Arkansas River; and then, fearing capture by the Spaniards, they slowly returned. Marquette remained behind as a missionary with the Illinois Indians, who were then at war with the Miamis. Returning shortly afterwards, he died on the shores of Lake Michigan, deeply regretted; and was buried near a river there which now bears his name. In the meantime, Joliette had hastened to Quebec, by way of what is now the city of Chicago, to announce their great discovery. As a reward for his share in the discovery, and for other explorations, Joliette received a grant of the island of Anticosti in the St. Lawrence, and a seigniory near Montreal.

7. *La Salle's first Expedition to the Mississippi.*—Fired with the news of this notable discovery, Sieur de la Salle, a French knight, then at Quebec, determined to complete the discovery, in the hopes of finding a new route to China.* After visiting

and proceeded down the great river as far as the mouth of the Arkansas tributary. When near Montreal, on his return, his canoe upset in the Lachine rapids, and his manuscripts were lost. As a reward for his services, he received a grant of the Island of Anticosti, and was named hydrographer to the king. He died about 1701, on the Island of Anticosti. A county in Lower Canada is named after him.

* Robert Cavellier, Sieur de la Salle, was ennobled by Louis XIV. He sought to reach China by way of Canada, and set out on an expedition for that purpose. His design was frustrated by an accident at a place since called Lachine, or China. He explored the Mississippi from its source to its mouth, in 1678-80; spent two years between Frontenac

QUESTIONS.—What circumstances led to the discovery of the Mississippi River? Give an account of this memorable discovery. What led to La Salle's first expedition to the Mississippi? Give a sketch of his career.

France, he obtained a royal commission to proceed with his exploration. The seigniorship of Cataraqui, including Fort Frontenac, was conferred upon him on condition that he would rebuild the fort with stone. The Chevalier de Tonti and Père Hennepin* accompanied him; and together they constructed three vessels. Proceeding up Lake Ontario, they reached Niagara, where La Salle erected a palisade. Here they visited the great Falls, of which Father Hennepin wrote an elaborate description. Above the Falls, La Salle constructed another vessel, named the *Griffon*. In her the party traversed Lake Erie; and on their way to Lake Huron, La Salle named the intermediate lake "Ste. Claire." Having reached the southern part of Lake Michigan, he sent the *Griffon* back to Niagara with a cargo of furs. The vessel, however, was lost on her way down the lake; and La Salle, having waited in vain for her return, turned his steps inland. In December, he reached the head-waters of the Illinois. Proceeding down this river to Lake Peoria, he built a fort; and, having placed De Tonti in charge of it, he determined to return and learn some news of his vessel. He dispatched Father Hennepin down the Illinois to the Mississippi, up which he directed him to proceed and explore the head-waters of that great river. During La Salle's absence, De Tonti and his Illinois allies were attacked by the Iroquois and compelled to abandon the fort and retreat.

8. *La Salle's Second Expedition to the Mississippi.*—Having in part retrieved his losses, La Salle again set out for the Mis-

(Kingston) and Lake Erie; and constructed the first vessel on Lake Erie (near Cayuga Creek). He sought to reach the Mississippi by sea, but having failed, he sought to reach it overland. In doing so, he was murdered by his followers.

* Louis Hennepin, a French missionary, was born in 1640, and emigrated to Canada in 1675. He accompanied La Salle in his exploration of the Mississippi, in 1678, and visited the Falls of Niagara,—of which he wrote an interesting account.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of La Salle's first expedition to the Mississippi. What did he do at Cataraqui and near Niagara Falls? Who accompanied him, and what did they do? What is said of each of them?

Mississippi. He at length reached it in February, 1682, and proceeded slowly down the river, stopping at the mouth of each great tributary, and making excursions here and there in the vicinity. At length, on the 5th of April, he reached one of the mouths of the great river; and in honour of the event he named the surrounding country Louisiana, after Louis XIV, and then took formal possession of it in the name of his sovereign. Thus, after sundry discouragements and many privations, this great and notable event was accomplished by a French colonist from Quebec.

9. *La Salle's Third Expedition to the Mississippi.*—La Salle soon afterwards retraced his steps; and having numerous envious enemies in France, he was compelled to return to Quebec, and thence to France to meet his detractors face to face. This he did most successfully; and as a proof of the king's confidence in him, he was intrusted with the command of a colonizing expedition to the Mississippi by sea. This expedition was fated never to reach its destination. Differences with Beaujeu, the commander, led to one disaster after another. The mouths of the Mississippi were passed, and the ships reached the coast of Texas. Beaujeu ran one of the ships on the rocks, and then deserted with another. La Salle and his companions were left to their fate. Having erected Fort St. Louis, and left some of his companions in charge, he set out in search of the Mississippi. On his way thither his companions mutinied, put him to death, and afterwards quarrelled among themselves. Most of the survivors, in their efforts to return home, perished miserably, as a just retribution for their cruelty and crimes. Thus perished, in 1685, the noble La Salle.

10. *Internal Dissensions in Canada.*—One of the chief difficulties which Frontenac encountered in his administration of the government of Canada arose from a divided authority. The sovereign council, the governor, and the intendant, had each

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of La Salle's second expedition to the Mississippi—of his third expedition. How did this last expedition end? What difficulties in his government had Frontenac to encounter?

separate functions, which were sometimes difficult to define, and which often clashed, or were contradictory. Add to this, the governor of Montreal claimed a certain jurisdiction which conflicted with the supreme authority of the Royal Governor. Dissensions between Bishop Laval, the governor, and the sovereign council, had long existed in regard to the spirit traffic with the Indians. The bishop protested against its continuance, and sought to have it declared illegal. Interested parties, aided by the governor, opposed his benevolent purpose. Owing to the influence of the bishop and clergy, two governors had already been recalled, and Frontenac was threatened with a similar fate. The attempted arrest of Perrot, who was governor of Montreal, for alleged rapacity and disobedience to the ordinances, brought things to a crisis. Fearful of the consequences of his opposition, Perrot came to Quebec to explain, but was imprisoned by Frontenac, who for this act was in turn denounced by Abbé Fenelon, of the Seminary of Montreal. Frontenac sent both Perrot and the abbé to France for trial. Perrot was pardoned, on condition of his making an apology to Frontenac; but the abbé was forbidden to return to Canada. Disputes, however, between the bishop, Frontenac, and Duchesneau (who had succeeded Talon as intendant in 1675), in regard to the liquor traffic, continued; and Colbert, in order to have the matter finally settled, directed Frontenac to obtain for the king the opinion of twenty of the principal colonists on the subject. These opinions were obtained and sent to France; but nothing definite was done in the matter. At length the contentions on this and various other subjects went so far, that Frontenac and Duchesneau were, in 1682, both recalled.

11. *De la Barre's Arrival—His Failure.*—De la Barre succeeded Frontenac as governor, and De Meulles replaced Duchesneau as intendant. On their arrival, a war with the Iroquois

QUESTIONS.—Mention the disputes which arose between the Royal Governor and various other persons? What brought these disputes to a crisis? How did they end? Who succeeded Frontenac and Duchesneau?

seemed i
quest for
governor.
avert. H
after an i
consented
fate, he
to a crisi
De la Bar
12. *Ed*
at a critic
English c
prise so l
in many
territory.
ing mono
ference o
with Sir
and subs

* Jacques
man, failed
desultory a
hatred to t

† Sir Ed
New Engla
disputes in
Virginia.
the Iroquo
English go
Edmond
of a man
us, (to wit
name for
‡ Thoma
minded Ro
his admin
bly was fir

QUESTIO
ceeded hi
lish colon

seemed imminent; and an intimation to that effect, with a request for troops, was sent to the king. The indecision of the governor, however, hastened the very thing which he wished to avert. He set out on a dilatory expedition to Oswego; and after an inglorious treaty with the wily Iroquois, in which he consented to leave the Illinois allies of the French to their fate, he returned to Quebec. Before things, however, came to a crisis, the treaty was disallowed by the French king, and De la Barre was replaced by M. de Denonville* as governor.

12. *Early Commercial Contests.*—The new Governor arrived at a critical juncture. The unfettered trade enjoyed by the English colonists at New York had fostered individual enterprise so largely, that, aided by their Iroquois allies, they had in many places carried on the fur-trade far into the French territory. De Denonville took active steps to protect the trading monopoly of his people, and to check the proposed transference of trade from the St. Lawrence. He remonstrated with Sir Edmond Andros,† the governor of New England, and subsequently with Colonel Thomas Dongan,‡ the gov-

* Jacques René de Brisay, Marquis de Denonville, although an excellent man, failed in his appreciation of the gravity of important events. His desultory and ineffective efforts to subdue the Iroquois only increased their hatred to the colony, and ultimately led to the fatal massacre of Lachine.

† Sir Edmond Andros was successively governor of New York (1674), New England (1686), and Virginia (1692). He involved himself in various disputes in New England, but was more judicious and moderate in Virginia. Corlear, or Corlier, a noted Dutch governor, was so loved by the Iroquois, that in memory of him they called all their subsequent or English governors by that name. The name was first applied to Sir Edmond Andros, in 1687; "for yow was pleased to accept the name of a man that was of good dispositions, and esteemed deare amongst us, (to witte) the old Corlear."—*Address of 2,000 Maquaes (the Dutch name for Mohawk Sachems) to Sir Edmond Andros.*

‡ Thomas Dongan, who was afterwards Earl of Limerick, a liberal-minded Roman Catholic, became governor of New York in 1683. During his administration, the right of electing members of the House of Assembly was first conferred upon the colonists.

QUESTIONS.—How did De la Barre deal with the Iroquois? Who succeeded him? What was the then state of trade in the French and English colonies? Give a sketch of Denonville, of Andros, and of Dongan

ernor of New York, who maintained the inviolability of the Iroquois territory, as being within English colonial jurisdiction; but it was all in vain. In order, therefore, at once to overawe the Iroquois, and to resist the encroachments of the English traders, he determined to strengthen the line of French forts, and to make active reprisals both upon the English and the Iroquois. In the meantime, De Troyes and D'Iberville* were despatched to Hudson Bay to drive the English traders out of that territory. The French succeeded in taking from them three trading-forts, leaving only Fort Bourbon (Nelson River) in their possession. Notwithstanding all the efforts, however, which were made by the French, to restrict the traffic in beaver-skins and peltry within their own territories and to the St. Lawrence route, they were, in the end, powerless to accomplish it. They at one time interdicted trade with the Anglo-Iroquois;—then they made them presents;—again they threatened them—made war upon them—invaded and desolated their villages;—they made treaties with them, and urged and entreated the Dutch and the English to restrain them, and even sought to make the latter responsible for their acts;—but all in vain. As the tide slowly rolled in upon them, and the English, who were always heralded by the Iroquois, advanced northwards and westwards towards the St. Lawrence and the great lakes, the French, still gallantly holding their old trading-forts in possession, also pressed forward before them and occupied

* Pierre le Moyne d'Iberville was born at Montreal, and was one of the best naval officers of France, under Louis XIV. He was successful in several encounters with the English in Hudson Bay and in Newfoundland; in 1699, he laid the foundation of a colony in Biloxi, near New Orleans; and having discovered the entrance to the Mississippi, which La Salle had missed, he sailed up that river to a considerable distance. He is considered as the founder of the colony of Louisiana. He died in 1706. His brother, Le Moyne de Bienville, was governor of Louisiana, and founded the city of New Orleans. The county of Iberville, in Lower Canada, is named after him.

QUESTIONS.—What differences arose between the English and French governors? How did the French succeed in Hudson Bay? What trading difficulties did they experience? Give a sketch of Pierre d'Iberville.

new grou
in additi
enclosure
and the F
and at Th
sequently
English,
Sault St
Nor were
river, the
various p
they thro
between t

13. *The*
Treachery
against th
to meet h
France to
and sent
intendant
who had
to ship of
but the o
haughty
ward wit
defeated
following
Niagara;
sooner h
reappear
at Cataw
lawless a

14. *Neg*
were at l

QUESTIO
French an
war again

new ground. With sagacious foresight, the French had, in addition to their regular fort at Quebec, erected palisaded enclosures round their trading forts at Tadoussac; at Sorel, and the Falls of Chambly, on the Iroquois (or Richelieu) River; and at Three Rivers, Montreal, and Cataraqui (Kingston). Subsequently, and as a counterpoise to the encroachments of the English, they erected palisaded forts at Niagara, Detroit, Sault Ste. Marie, Michilimackinac, and even at Toronto. Nor were the English idle. Creeping gradually up the Hudson river, they erected armed trading-posts at Albany, and at various points up the Mohawk valley; until at length, in 1727, they threw up a fort at Oswego, midway across Lake Ontario, between the French trading posts at Frontenac and Niagara.

13. *The Campaign against the Iroquois opened by an act of Treachery.*—In order to give force to his aggressive policy against the Iroquois, the governor invited some of their chiefs to meet him at Cataraqui, and then seized and sent them to France to work at the galleys. The king disallowed the act, and sent back the chiefs to Canada. De Champigny, the intendant, who, in 1684, had succeeded De Meulles, and who had performed a similar act of treachery, was waiting to ship off his victims to Marseilles. They were all released; but the offensive and treacherous act was not forgotten by the haughty Iroquois. Meanwhile, the governor advanced westward with a superior force. Having met the Iroquois, he defeated them and burned their village; but instead of following up his victory, he withdrew with part of his force to Niagara; the remainder he sent back to head-quarters. No sooner had the French governor retired, than the Iroquois reappeared on every side. They suddenly menaced the forts at Cataraqui, Chambly, and Montreal, and committed many lawless acts of aggression in their fierce and stealthy warfare.

14. *Negotiations and Renewed Wars.*—Negotiations for a peace were at length opened with the Iroquois; but owing to their

QUESTIONS.—Mention the successive steps which were taken by the French and English to protect and extend the peltry traffic. How was the war against the Iroquois commenced and conducted? How did it end?

dislike to the French, the dispute was prolonged. At this juncture, Adario, or Kondiaronk, (also known as *Le Rat*,) a Huron chief of rare powers, and favourably disposed towards the French, took offence at their exclusion of the Hurons, who were their allies, from the negotiation of the proposed treaty, and, by means of a double treachery to the French and Iroquois, suddenly precipitated a renewal of hostilities between them. War having been declared the next year (1689) between France and England, the contest between the rival colonies, which had become imminent in Canada, at once assumed formidable dimensions. Anxious at once boldly to assume the offensive, a project was submitted first to De Denonville, the royal governor, and then to Louis XIV himself, by De Callières,* the governor of Montreal, boldly to attack the seat of English power at Manhattan (New York), and at Orange (Albany). The project, however, not being deemed feasible, was not entertained by the king.

15. *The Year of the Massacre.*—While this scheme was under consideration, an unexpected calamity befel the French settlements. During the interval which followed the negotiations and the renewal of hostilities, the ever-vigilant Iroquois appeared passive, and were even friendly in their demeanour to the French. Without the slightest premonition, however, and like a clap of thunder on a clear day in summer, the terrible Iroquois suddenly appeared near Montreal, and in one night of August, 1689, utterly desolated the village of Lachine, and massacred its entire population. So panic-stricken were the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, and so paralysed with fear was De Denonville, the governor, that for ten weeks the

* Louis Hector de Callières, a native of Normandy, was a member of the Montreal Trading Company, and also governor of the city. He succeeded Frontenac as governor of the colony in 1698, and emulated him in his zeal to promote the best interests of New France.

QUESTIONS.—Who involved the two colonies again in war? What did De Denonville propose to do? Did the king agree with him in his project? Give a sketch of De Callières. What calamity occurred in 1689?

fiery battle
leaving
length,
sook th

16. A

Scarcely
in the E
turning
lower St
Fronten
period;
Iroquois
declarin
to aid J
Prince o
gency.

to carry
Hudson
denly an
trated ex
of 1689—
inhabita
posts on
up and a
was rein
the Otta
tribes fro
this he v
contest a
a spirit o
that littl
ments.
the guid
and man

QUEST
the state o
which he t

fiery bands of Iroquois passed unrestrained through the land, leaving nothing but death and desolation behind them. At length, satiated with hate and revenge, they as suddenly forsook the war-path and retired to their lurking-places.

16. *Return of Frontenac—His energetic War-Measures.*—Scarcely had the war whoop of the retreating Iroquois died away in the French settlements, ere the shouts of welcome to the returning Frontenac sounded far and near along the banks of the lower St. Lawrence. De Denonville was recalled, and Count de Frontenac again became governor of Canada. It was a critical period; for, added to the fierce inroads of the unsparing Iroquois, Louis XIV had increased the peril of Frontenac by declaring war against Great Britain and her colonies, in order to aid James II in recovering his throne from William III, Prince of Orange. Frontenac, however, was equal to the emergency. Without waiting to be attacked, he at once resolved to carry the war into the adjoining English colonies. The Hudson Bay and outlying New England settlements were suddenly and successfully attacked. The French and Hurons penetrated even to Corlear (Schenectady) in the depth of winter of 1689-90, burned the town and massacred nearly all the inhabitants. Nor was the governor unmindful of the French posts on the lakes. Although Fort Cataraqui had been blown up and abandoned by order of De Denonville, Michilimackinac was reinforced; and Perrot being furnished with presents for the Ottawa and other Indians, was ordered to detach these tribes from the Iroquois, who were allies of the English. In this he was successful; and the Iroquois had to carry on the contest alone. This they did with vigour; but, so determined a spirit of resistance had Frontenac infused into the people, that little harm was done by the Iroquois to the French settlements. In the midst of so much peril, the inhabitants, under the guidance of a master spirit, acquitted themselves nobly, and many were the heroic deeds which they performed.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the sudden attack of the Iroquois. What was the state of Canada on the return of Frontenac? Mention the active steps which he took both against the English and Iroquois, and with what result.

17. *Second Expedition against Quebec, 1690.*—Frontenac's successes aroused the English colonists into great activity. They lost no time in equipping two expeditions, to attack the French settlements by sea and land. Sir William Phipps* took command of the fleet destined to act by sea against Quebec, and the son of Governor Winthrop of Connecticut that of the army destined to co-operate by land against Montreal. Winthrop proceeded as far as Lake George, there to await the success of Phipps against Quebec. Sickness, however, broke out among his troops, and compelled him to return without accomplishing anything. In the meantime, the fleet, having previously captured one or two places in Acadie (Nova Scotia), appeared before Quebec, and demanded the surrender of the place. Frontenac returned a defiant reply, and soon after opened fire upon the fleet. The shot from the ships fell short; while the superior position of Frontenac enabled him to bear upon them with ease. Phipps soon retired with his disabled ships, but the force which he had sent on shore obstinately maintained the contest. Overwhelmed, however, they too withdrew, and the walls of the beleaguered town at length resounded with the shouts of victory. Frontenac ordered a *Te Deum* to be sung, and at once penned a glowing dispatch to his sovereign, who in return caused a medal to be struck, bearing this proud inscription:—"FRANCIA, IN NOVA ORBE, VICTRIX; KEBECCA LIBERATA, A.D. MDCXC."—"France, victress in the new world; Quebec free, A.D. 1690." Further to commemorate the event, a church was erected in Quebec and dedicated to "*Notre Dame de la Victoire!*"

* Sir William Phipps was born of humble parents in Bristol (Pemaquid), in the present State of Maine, in 1651. Being a sailor, he was so fortunate as to find large treasure in a Spanish wreck off the coast of Hispaniola. This gave him wealth and influence. He was knighted by James I, and in 1669 was sent to take Quebec. In 1692, he was appointed governor of Massachusetts, and greatly exerted himself to promote its prosperity. He died in 1695, aged forty-four years.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the expeditions sent from New England against Canada. Describe the second attack on Quebec. Give a sketch of Sir Wm. Phipps. How did the contest end? and how was the victory celebrated?

18. Frontenac
They s
upon th
English
affected
soon to
English
armed
retreat
to keep

19. Frontenac
strength
advanta
he soon
Frontenac
pelled t
the sati
French
more to
Bay th
took fro
post (B

20. put a fi
had be
and vi
Indians
1696, c
at For
Iroquo
the ma

QUEST
provide
Bay? V

18. *Expedition against Montreal, 1691.*—This victory by Frontenac interposed a check on the inroads of the Iroquois. They sent warriors to Montreal to enter into a treaty based upon their neutrality in the contest between the French and English colonies. M. de Callières, the governor of Montreal, affected indifference to their offer, and the Indians withdrew, soon to return and avenge the slight. In the same year, the English colonists of New York sent Major Schuyler with an armed force to attack Montreal. In this he failed, and had to retreat; but the Iroquois, by their stealthy warfare, continued to keep the French settlements in constant alarm.

19. *Defences—Partial Cessation of War.*—The ever-vigilant Frontenac, fearing another attack on Quebec and Montreal, strengthened the defences of both towns in 1693. Taking advantage of successive defeats inflicted upon the Iroquois, he soon afterwards rebuilt Fort Cataraqui, and named it Frontenac (now Kingston). By his skill and courage he compelled the Iroquois to desist from their attacks, and soon had the satisfaction of seeing comparative peace restored to the French settlements. The inhabitants were thus enabled once more to resume the cultivation of their lands. In the Hudson Bay the French were also successful. In 1694, D'Iberville took from the English the fourth and only remaining trading-post (Bourbon, on Nelson River) in their possession.

20. *Invasion of the Iroquois Cantons.*—Frontenac, anxious to put a final stop to the harassing and destructive warfare which had been so constantly waged against him by the unrelenting and vindictive Iroquois, determined to humble these haughty Indians by invading their own territory. He therefore, in 1696, collected a force of 2,300 colonists and friendly Indians at Fort Frontenac. With this force he marched into the Iroquois territory by way of Oswego. The expedition was in the main successful, and the villages in two cantons were deso-

QUESTIONS.—What other attacks were made? How did Frontenac provide for the successful defence of Canada? What occurred at Hudson Bay? What further steps did Frontenac take against the Iroquois Indians?

lated; but before his object was fully accomplished, Frontenac returned to Canada—not wishing to draw upon his force the hostility of the remainder of the Iroquois cantons and of the English colonists.

21. *The Cause of these Incessant Wars* must be looked for in the mutual determination of the French and English colonists to secure an exclusive right to carry on a traffic for furs with the various Indian tribes. These commercial contests were of long standing, and seemed to increase in bitterness every year. Each party invoked the aid of the savages, who were not indisposed themselves to enter into the contest on their own account, in order that they might thereby obtain the more favour in trade from the successful rival. Territorial extension, no less than embittered national resentment, also gave an intensity of feeling to the contest, as carried on by the French and English colonists, and no doubt prolonged its duration. It is a striking fact also, which the government of New France either ignored, or never fully realised, that the chief part of the misunderstandings, difficulties, and contests connected with the peltry traffic, had mainly their origin in the persistence on the part of that government to impose upon that traffic unreasonable restraints, and to force it into unnatural channels. In their efforts to do this, their plans were not only counteracted by the energy of the English traders; but they were even thwarted in them by three separate classes among themselves, or within their own influence—each having different interests to serve, but all united in their opposition to the government. These three classes were: 1, the Indians; 2, the trading officials; and 3, the *coureurs de bois*. As to the first class (the Indians in these vast territories), they were ever proud of their unfettered forest life, and would naturally disdain to be bound by the artificial trammels of the white man in the exchange of skins for blankets, and for the weapons of

QUESTIONS.—How did his expedition against the Iroquois end? Mention the causes of these incessant wars. What was the policy of each colony? What three classes of traders are mentioned? Describe them.

the cha
secretly
wood,
their e
interm
sought
the ki
and da
far fro
peculia
not slo
under t
colonia
whom
there w
to the l
quality
among

22.

William
France
the war
of the l
mentid
sought
govern
and ma

23.

was sig
death o
Quebec
Champ
of Cau

QUEST
France
the Iroq

the chase. The second class (or officials of New France) were secretly in league with the *coureurs de bois* ("runners of the wood," or white trappers) against the farmers of the revenue, their exaction and their exclusive privileges. The third or intermediary class of traders, or factors, the *coureurs de bois*, sought in every way in their power to evade the jurisdiction of the king's revenue agents at Quebec. Their own reckless and daring mode of life in the woods and among the Indians, far from the seat of official influence and power, gave them peculiar facilities for doing so. Of these facilities they were not slow to avail themselves, especially as they were secretly under the protection or patronage of one or other of the French colonial governors or judges. These *coureurs de bois*, through whom the traders obtained furs, were a numerous class, as there was not (says the intendant, Duchesneau, in his Memoir to the king, in 1681) a family in Canada of any condition and quality which had not children, brothers, uncles, or nephews among them.

22. *The Treaty of Ryswick*, in 1697, at length brought King William's war to a close, and restored peace to the rival colonies. France agreed to give up whatever places she had taken during the war; and commissioners were appointed to fix the boundaries of the French and English possessions in the New World. No mention of the Iroquois was made in the treaty; and both parties sought to claim jurisdiction over their territory. The French governor, however, sought to detach them from the English, and made a special treaty with them with that intent.

23. *Death and Character of Frontenac*.—The return of peace was signalled by a sad loss to the French colonists, in the death of the great and good Count de Frontenac. He died at Quebec, in November, 1698, aged seventy-seven years. Like Champlain, he devoted all his energies to promote the prosperity of Canada. By his sagacity and bravery he successfully de-

QUESTIONS.—Describe the *coureurs de bois*. What was agreed to by France and England in the Treaty of Ryswick? How was the case of the Iroquois Indians dealt with? Give a sketch of the career of Frontenac

fended her alike from the inroads of the Iroquois and the hostile designs of his Anglo-American neighbours. Though quick-tempered and haughty in his bearing, he was much beloved by his fellow-colonists, and died amid their heartfelt regrets. He was succeeded by M. de Callières, who was then governor of Montreal.

24. *Settlement of Louisiana by D'Iberville, 1699.*—After the death of La Salle and the dispersion of his followers, no steps were taken until 1698 to colonize the Mississippi valley. In that year, D'Iberville, a native of Montreal, and a successful officer in the contests with the British in the Hudson Bay territory, left France and arrived in Florida early in 1699. Touching at Pensacola, he entered the Mississippi; and having partly explored it, he returned and erected a fort at Biloxi, —about ninety miles north-east from New Orleans. In the following year he brought with him a number of Canadians; and in 1701 he erected another fort at Mobile, whither he removed his colony. During his lifetime his colony prospered.

25. *Settlement of Detroit by De Callières, 1701.*—To promote the extension of French power and influence among the western Indians, and to secure the trade with them, De Callières sent, in 1701, La Motte Cadillac, one of his officers, with a hundred men and a Jesuit missionary to found a colony at Detroit, or the "Strait" between Lakes Erie and Huron. The site was well chosen; and the settlement realized the expectations of its founder, and exercised no inconsiderable influence in after times.

26. *Peace, after Further Intercolonial Contests.*—In 1703, De Callières died. He was succeeded by the Marquis de Vaudreuil as governor.* Successive contests with the Miamis

* Philip de Rigaud, Marquis de Vaudreuil, one of the most successful governors of Canada, first achieved distinction in the army. He was sent to Canada as commander-in-chief, and aided in the relief of Mon-

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Frontenac? Give an account of the first settlement of Louisiana, and of Detroit. Sketch the career of D'Iberville. Who succeeded De Callières? What is said of Marquis de Vaudreuil?

and o
New
attack
ful re
Newf
renew
Montr
rende
issued
waited
exped
howev
the th
took i
rious
Engla
vigou
to Qu
land f
and st
wreck
presen
wards
the tr
war, a
and t
time p
to the
of Ca
and, f
treat, s
of Qu
He wa
of Nev
reform

QUE
point
coloni

and other Indians at Detroit, and against the colonists of New England took place soon after his appointment. The attack on New England by the French led to unsuccessful reprisals against Acadie and the French settlements in Newfoundland. Defeat but roused the British colonists to renewed exertions. They formed a plan to take Quebec and Montreal, and collected a large force at lake Champlain as a rendezvous. To bear the expenses of this expedition, they issued the first paper-money ever used in America. Having waited in vain for promised reinforcements from England, the expedition was for a while abandoned. The British colonists, however, still intent upon their scheme of conquest, changed the theatre of war to Acadie. That part of New France they took in 1710. In 1711, 5,000 troops, detached from the victorious army of the Duke of Marlborough having arrived from England, the expedition against Canada was revived with great vigour. A formidable naval force was despatched from Boston to Quebec, under Admiral Sir Hoveden Walker, while a large land force rendezvoused at Lake St. George. Owing to fogs and storms, the fleet failed to reach Quebec, half of it being wrecked; and the land force remained inactive. For the present the scheme failed, and the forces were shortly afterwards distributed along the frontier, for its defence. At length the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, put an end to Queen Anne's war, and confirmed to Great Britain, Acadie, Newfoundland, and the Hudson Bay territory. To provide for the maritime protection of Canada (which, as yet, had no protection to the seaward), France lost no time in colonising the island of Cape Breton. Louisbourg, its capital, was founded in 1713, and, in 1720, was strongly fortified at great expense.

Montreal, after the massacre of Lachine. He aided Frontenac in the defence of Quebec against Sir William Phipps, and in his wars with the Iroquois. He was appointed governor of Montreal, and, after De Callières, governor of New France. During his administration he accomplished many useful reforms. He died at Quebec in 1725.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the wars which followed De Vaudreuil's appointment. What plan of retaliation was adopted by the New England colonists? How were they aided from England? What did the French do?

27. *Peace and Prosperity in Canada.*—The return of peace to Canada brought with it also a return of prosperity. M. de Vaudreuil set himself to develop the resources of the country, and to foster education among the people. He subdivided the three governments of Quebec, Three Rivers, and Montreal into eighty-two parishes, and took a census of the people. He also extended the fortifications of Quebec, and directed that Montreal should be put in a state of defence. Thus he employed himself until his death, which took place in 1725. In 1720-1, Charlevoix, a distinguished traveller, visited Canada, and afterwards wrote an account of his travels in New France.

28. *Further Trading Disputes.*—Baron de Longueuil administered the government for a year, when the Marquis de Beauharnois succeeded De Vaudreuil as governor, in 1726.* By order of the king, and with a view still further to counteract the efforts of the British traders, Beauharnois strengthened the forts at Frontenac and Niagara. Governor Burnet of New York resolved, in 1727, to neutralize the designs of the Marquis against the colonists of New York, by erecting another fort, midway between Frontenac and Niagara, at Oswego. As an act of retaliation the few English residents at Montreal were peremptorily exiled; and a new French fort of St. Frederic erected at Crown Point on Lake Champlain. With a view to punish the predatory acts of the Western Indians, M. de Beauharnois dispatched, in 1728, a large force to Chicago, by way of the river Ottawa, Lake Nipissing, and the French River. The expedition was highly successful, and penetrated within a comparatively short distance of the upper Mississippi.

29. *Discovery of the Rocky Mountains.*—In 1731, Sieur de la

* Charles, Marquis de Beauharnois, during the twenty years he administered the government of New France, displayed much enterprise and ability. He made the most of the means at his command to protect the colony; and had he been well sustained, he would have inflicted serious loss upon the English colonists.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of De Vaudreuil's administration and career. Mention the further trading contests which arose, and how each party sought to meet them. What is said of the Marquis De Beauharnois?

Vérend
sought
ocean
with h
the cou
the upp
brother

30. A
of war
the pea
Louisb
French
New E
organiz
tion of
ful, an
parlian
dition.

was dis
having
its des
French
frontier
harasse
Aix-la-
tests, a
which

31. J
Cape F
New E

* He t
† Sir V
energeti
colonists

QUEST
What le
did the

Vérendrye, a native of Canada, and a son of M. de Varennes,* sought to give effect to a scheme for reaching the Pacific ocean overland. He set out by way of Lake Superior, and with his brother and sons occupied twelve years in exploring the country lying between that lake and the Saskatchewan, the upper Missouri and the Yellowstone rivers. His son and brother reached the Rocky Mountains in 1743.

30. *Pepperrell's Expedition from New England.*—The notes of war between England and France, which had ceased at the peace of Utrecht, were again sounded in 1745. From Louisbourg, the fortified capital of Cape Breton, a host of French privateers sallied forth to prey upon the commerce of New England. Governor Shirley, of Massachusetts, at once organized an expedition under Wm. Pepperrell for the reduction of this stronghold.† The expedition was highly successful, and Shirley and Pepperrell were knighted. The British parliament also repaid New England for the cost of the expedition. Nothing daunted, a fleet, under the Duke d'Anville, was dispatched from France to recapture Louisbourg. But having been dispersed by successive tempests, it never reached its destination. As a set off to this disaster, however, the French colonists made several successful inroads along the frontier line of Canada, from Boston to Albany, and greatly harassed the English inhabitants. At length the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, in 1748, put an end to these desultory contests, and both countries restored the respective territories which had been taken by them during the war.

31. *Disputes arising out of the Treaty.*—The restoration of Cape Breton, with Louisbourg, to the French, gave offence to New England; and disputes at once arose as to the exact

* He took the name of De la Vérendrye from his maternal grandfather.

† Sir William Pepperrell was a native of New England, and a brave, energetic officer in the later contests between the French and English colonists. For his success and gallantry he was knighted by King George.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the discovery of the Rocky Mountains. What led to Sir Wm. Pepperrell's expedition? How did it succeed? What did the French do? What is said of De la Vérendrye? and of Pepperrell?

boundaries between the colonies of the two nations by which the treaty was sanctioned. The British claimed that the Acadian territory extended to the banks of the St. Lawrence, while the French maintained that it reached no further than the Bay of Fundy and the Isthmus which separates that bay from the Gulf of St. Lawrence. M. Galissonnière,* the acting governor of New France, sought to interpose a living barrier to British pretensions by inducing the Acadians to emigrate, *en masse*, from the south to the north side of the Bay of Fundy. In this he was partially successful; but soon afterwards M. de la Jonquière,† the governor, arrived. Galissonnière also took steps to prevent the British from intruding up the valley of the Ohio River, between Canada and Louisiana. In 1748, he sent M. Célon de Blainville to expel the British traders, and to take formal possession of the country. He further erected or strengthened a chain of forts extending from the Ohio to Montreal, including Detroit, Des Puants (Green Bay), Niagara, Fort Rouillé (after the French colonial minister) (Toronto), and La Présentation (Ogdensburgh). De la Jonquière followed up these schemes of La Galissonnière with spirit. In the meantime a joint commission was appointed in Europe to settle the question of boundaries in New France, and the colonists were requested to remain neutral until this question could be settled.

32. *Commencement of the Seven Years' War.*—While the boundary commissioners in Europe were for five years examining old maps and records, and languidly listening to the

* Roland Michel Barrin, Count de la Galissonnière, was a noted officer in the French naval service. He showed great energy and ability during the two years he administered the government of New France, while M. de la Jonquière, the governor, was a prisoner in England.

† Jacques Pierre de Taffanel, Marquis de la Jonquière, a native of Languedoc, was a distinguished naval officer. He was appointed to the government of New France in 1747, but, being a prisoner in England, did not arrive in Canada until 1749. Though an able governor, his avarice in the peltry trade involved him in a succession of disputes with the colonists.

QUESTIONS.—Why was the treaty unsatisfactory? What aggressive steps were taken in Acadie, in the Ohio valley, and in other places, to carry it out? Give a sketch of De la Galissonnière, and of De la Jonquière.

argune
for the
tively s
unceasi
exceptio
of Penn
territor
taken t
tion, th
Allegh
traders
a war v
mately
33. 2
Jonquie
and wa
Marqui
the mil
dant, w
troops
anticipa
spatche

* Marc
but dur
Not reli
active du
† Fran
He form
removed
for the
official c
his priva
afterwar
in robb
‡ Robe
formerl

QUEST
years' w
said of t

arguments of the contending parties, for and against the claims for the disputed territory, the rival colonists were themselves actively settling the question by the strong hand of force, and by unceasing encroachments on one another. In these disputes, exception was taken to the passes granted by the authorities of Pennsylvania and Maryland to fur-traders in the disputed territory of the Ohio valley, and three British traders were taken there and sent as prisoners to New France. In retaliation, three French traders were seized and sent south of the Alleghany mountains. These acts of personal hostility to the traders of either nation by the colonial authorities precipitated a war which had long been threatened, and which was ultimately destined to be a decisive one.

33. *The First Memorable Blow struck—Washington.*—De la Jonquière, who was about to retire, died at Quebec in 1752, and was succeeded, *ad interim*, by the Baron de Longueuil. Marquis du Quesne,* the new governor, immediately reorganized the militia; but he was opposed by M. Bigot,† the royal intendant, who intrigued against him. Meanwhile, the French troops were sent forward to the Ohio. Their arrival was anticipated by Dinwiddie, the governor of Virginia,‡ who despatched some militia to erect a fort at the junction of the

* Marquis du Quesne de Menneville held office for only three years; but during that time he effected many military reforms in the colony. Not relishing the prospect of the coming colonial contests, he sought active duty in the French marine service.

† François Bigot was a native of the province of Guienne, in France. He formerly held the appointment of intendant of Louisiana, before being removed to fill that office for the last time in Canada. He was remarkable for the rapacity, malversation, and fraud which characterized his whole official career in Canada, as well as for the gambling, riot, and luxury of his private life. On his return to France he was sent to the Bastille, and afterwards exiled to Bourdeaux. His property (and that of his abettors in robbery and crime in Canada) was confiscated.

‡ Robert Dinwiddie was the English governor of Virginia (which was formerly called Mos-co-sa) from 1752 to 1758.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the first hostile acts which led to the seven years' war. How were they met by the governor of Virginia? What is said of the Marquis du Quesne, Intendant Bigot, and Governor Dinwiddie?

Ohio and Monongahela rivers. They had scarcely traced the outline of the fort, however, before the French, under M. de Contrecoeur, suddenly attacked and dispersed them. He at once proceeded to erect the fort just begun, and named it Du Quesne, after the French governor. The Virginia militia was now joined to the British force, the colonel of which had just died. The command of the united forces devolved, therefore, upon the afterwards famous George Washington,* who was the next senior officer.



Fort du Quesno.

34. *Defeat of Washington's Force by the French.*—Washington's first act, after a slight skirmish with a French escort, was the erection of Fort Necessity on the Monongahela River. Here he was attacked, and, after ten hours' fighting, was obliged to capitulate. Thus ended Washington's first military enterprise.

35. *Project for a Federal Union of the Colonies, 1753-4.*—In order that the several British colonies in America might act in concert against the French, they projected an alliance, which in its structure was somewhat like the Iroquois league. This proposed alliance did not then take place; but it subsequently developed itself into the memorable union of the colonies against British authority itself, and was afterwards known as the Federation of the United States of America.

36. *General Braddock's Career.*—In this crisis England lib-

* George Washington was born in Virginia, in 1732. When but sixteen years of age, he was employed in surveying the land assigned to Lord Fairfax, a connexion of his. He was a surveyor for many years and thus gained a knowledge of the topography of the country, which he afterwards turned to military account. Before he was twenty, he was appointed adjutant-general of the militia in a Virginian district, and afterwards rose to a higher rank as a British officer in the seven years' war with the French. His after-career as a successful general of the American insurgents in the revolutionary war of 1775-83, is well known.

QUESTIONS.—Where did the first contest take place? How did it end? What is said of Washington, and of the failure of his first military effort? Mention the project of the federal union of the thirteen colonies in 1753-4.

erall
out
meas
the
Ohio
equa
Fren
In t
was
dren
the l
Fran
Febr
Prov
plan
a res
was
It wa
few
de B
India
and
He h
This

* Ge
regar
and lo
had st
or bac
† Al
South
Gover
Dinwi
and M
fleet, v

QU
and E
dock.

erally aided her colonies with men and money. She also sent out General Braddock to prosecute the campaign. Active measures were at once taken to capture the entire line of French forts from the Ohio river to the St. Lawrence; while equally energetic efforts were made by the French to resist this combined attack. In the meantime, Governor du Quesne was succeeded by the Marquis de Vaudreuil-Cavagnal,—who was destined to be the last of the French Governors of New France. Braddock arrived in Virginia in February, 1755; and, after assembling the Provincial Governors at Alexandria † to



General Braddock.*

plan the campaign, he set out in June with 1,200 men and a reserve of 1,000 more to take Fort du Quesne, in Ohio. He was accompanied by Washington, as colonel of his staff. It was a month before he reached the Ohio. When within a few miles of the fort, he was attacked in ambuscade by M. de Beaujeu, the commandant, with 250 Canadians and 600 Indians. After an heroic struggle, Braddock was defeated and driven back with a loss of 800 out of his 1,200 troops. He himself received a mortal wound, and died in a few days. This victory ended that campaign, and assured to the French

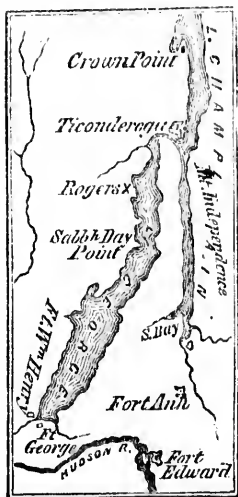
* General Braddock was an Irish officer of distinction. He was too regardless of the advice of the provincial officers in his ill-fated expedition, and lost his life by the hand of one of the militiamen, whose brother he had struck down with his sword for fighting behind a tree, like an Indian or backwoodsman, which Braddock regarded as cowardly.

† Alexandria (since famous in the civil war between the Northern and Southern States), is nearly opposite Washington, on the Potomac. The Governors present at his conference were: Shirley, of *Massachusetts*; Dinwiddie, of *Virginia*; Delancy, of *New York*; Sharp, of *Maryland*; and Morris, of *Pennsylvania*. Admiral Keppel, commander of the British fleet, was also present at the conference.

QUESTIONS.—Who was sent out from England? What did the French and English do? Who succeeded Du Quesne? Give a sketch of Braddock. What is said of Alexandria? Give an account of the battle in Ohio.

the possession of the valley of the Ohio for the time. Gen. Shirley, the new British commander, felt it necessary, under the circumstances, to abandon a projected attack on Niagara.

37. *General Dieskau's Career.*—In the meantime, General Baron Dieskau* had arrived in Canada with a large French force. Hoping to rival the success which had attended the French arms in Ohio, he lost no time in marching from fort



Forts on Lakes George and Champlain.

St. Frederic (Crown Point) to attack the advancing columns of British Provincial militia, which had been collected in the vicinity of Lake George, under Col. Wm. Johnson. Leaving half of his force at Carillon (Ticonderoga), Dieskau came up with a detachment of Col. Johnson's men under Col. Williams. Forming an ambuscade, he attacked and scattered the British force, and at once pushed on to attack Johnson's chief post at Fort Edward (Hudson River). In this he entirely failed, Johnson being too well posted at Fort William Henry (at the head of Lake George), and his own force being too small. Dieskau, in attacking Wil-

liam Henry, was wounded and taken prisoner, and his men forced to retreat. For his success and prowess in this battle, Colonel Johnson was knighted by the king, and afterwards rewarded with a baronetcy, and a grant of £5,000 sterling.

38. *Cause of the Double Defeat of Braddock and Dieskau.*—By a singular coincidence, the two brave generals, Braddock and

* John Harmand, Baron Dieskau, a Lieut. General and Commander of the French forces sent against Fort Edward. He was found severely wounded by the British soldiers, but was kindly treated and sent to New York, and thence to France, where he died in 1767.

QUESTIONS.—How did the battle end? Who was sent out from France? What did he do, and what is said of him? Mention the names of the forts on the map. Give an account of the battle at Fort William Henry.

Dieskau
duct
of the
were
troops
They
colonia
knowl
tory fo
them,
As a na
with a
in the

39. I
succes
He wa
French
(Crow
with st
and F
and N
the Br
In Nov
ton's a
was c

* The
their con
aster, th
nacy of
practical
compani

† Hon.
in the Br
part in th

‡ Sir V

QUEST
feat of Br
tion the

Dieskau, who had been specially sent out from Europe to conduct the opposing campaign in America, failed at the outset of their career. Both failed from a similar cause. They were over-confident of the effect of the discipline of their troops, and vain-glorious of their own European military skill. They looked with indifference, if not with contempt, on the colonial troops, and scorned to be guided by the superior knowledge of the colonial officers, whose experience in desultory forest warfare would have been of the utmost value to them, had they had the good sense to avail themselves of it. As a natural result, defeat and disaster befel them both, together with a loss of prestige to European generalship, when tested in the tangled woods, morasses, and swamps of America.*

39. *Results of the First Campaign, 1755.*—Sir Wm. Johnson's success led to no satisfactory results. He was unable to march against the French stronghold at fort St. Frederic (Crown Point), but contented himself with strengthening Fort William Henry and Fort Edward. Forts Frontenac and Niagara having been reinforced, the British hesitated to attack them. In Nova Scotia, however, Col. Monckton's attack upon the French posts was completely successful.† Mean-



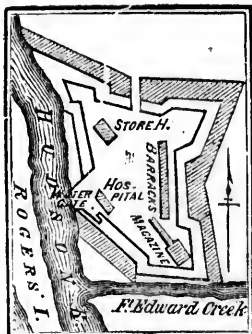
Sir William Johnson.‡

* The sad fate of these two noted Generals, and the brave men under their command, was but too frequently repeated, with more or less disaster, throughout the American Revolutionary War, owing to the obstinacy of many of the royalist officers, who scorned to adopt the more practical strategy and knowledge of Indian warfare of their loyalist companions in arms.

† Hon. Robert Monckton, who afterwards became a Lieutenant-General in the British Army, and Governor of New York and Nova Scotia, took part in the reduction of Nova Scotia and of Canada. He died in 1712.

‡ Sir William Johnson, born in Ireland in 1714, came to America in

QUESTIONS.—How was Col. Johnson rewarded? What led to the defeat of Braddock and Dieskau? What is said of them in the note? Mention the results of the first campaign. What is said of Colonel Monckton?



Fort Edward.

while, the British colonists of New York suffered from the inroads of the French; while later in the year the French colonists had, in their own territory, to endure all the privations of a famine, owing to a scant crop. At length, Louis XV, the French king, determined to despatch M. Montcalm, one of his ablest generals, to Canada early in 1756.* Montcalm was accompanied by Gen. de Lévis, M. de Bourgainville, &c., and 14,000 men, provisions, war materials, and money. George II was equally prompt. He sent out, with Gen. Abercrombie and a large reinforcement, the Earl of Loudon, as generalissimo. The House of Commons also voted £115,000 sterling to raise and equip the colonial militia.

40. *Progress of the Second Campaign, 1756.*—In the second campaign, the French were first in the field. They destroyed a magazine at one of the chain of posts between Schenectady and Oswego. By direction of Governor Vaudreuil, Montcalm attacked Oswego, which was considered as the key to the British position on Lake Ontario. In the meantime, Col.

1734 to manage the lands of his uncle (Sir P. Warren) on the Mohawk, and was agent of the British Government in its transactions with the Six Nation Indians, in the whole of the Seven Years' war. He was the friend of Brant; acquired great influence over, and was greatly beloved by the Indians, who made him one of their chiefs. For his defeat of General Dieskau, at Lake George, in 1755, he was knighted. In 1759, on the death of General Prideaux, he took Fort Niagara; was made a baronet, and died in the Mohawk valley, in 1774, aged 60 years.

* Louis Joseph de Montcalm (Marquis of St. Veran), a distinguished French general, was born at Condiac, in France, in 1712. He distinguished himself at the battle of Placenza; and, in 1756, was made a Field Marshal. Having succeeded General Dieskau in Canada, he took Oswego from the

QUESTIONS. — Give a sketch of Sir Wm. Johnson. What privations were endured by the colonists? Who were sent out from Europe? Give a sketch of Montcalm. Sketch the progress of the second campaign, of 1756.

CIA

Bra
brou
wego
Butcient
advatenac
a brresist
surrequois
jealou

their

to Fr

amon

one fo

raid u

Hudsc

ventin

comm

41. 7

in 175

Fort W

August

—

English

but was

tember,

morning

* Col.

did esse

relieved

always s

} Jam

Pitt (Ea

(Lake G

QUES

him, an

How we

Bradstreet* with great heroism brought reinforcements to the Oswego garrison from Schenectady. But what he brought was not sufficient, for Montcalm had secretly advanced upon the fort from Frontenac with a large force, and, after a brief attack, although gallantly resisted, compelled the garrison to surrender. To conciliate the Iroquois, who looked with a little jealousy upon the British fort in their territory, he destroyed the fort, and returned in triumph to Frontenac with 1,400 prisoners, 134 cannon, and a large amount of military stores. The victory was an important one for the French; and it was followed up by a successful raid upon the settlements in the rich German Flats on the Hudson. The capture of Oswego had also the effect of preventing any hostile movements on the part of the British commander during the remainder of the year.



General Abercrombie.†

41. *The Third Campaign, of 1757.*—The success of the French in 1757 was very marked. Early in the year they crippled Fort William Henry, at the southern end of Lake George. In August they completed its capture, and, having destroyed it,

English in that year, and Fort William Henry (Lake George), in 1757; but was defeated by General Wolfe, on the Plains of Abraham, 13th September, 1759. In the battle he received a mortal wound, and died on the morning of the 14th, greatly regretted, aged 47.

* Col. John Bradstreet, afterwards Major General in the British Army, did essential service in the campaigns of 1756-9. He, with great heroism, relieved Oswego, and afterwards gallantly captured Frontenac. He was always successful in his plans. He died in 1774.

† James Abercrombie, a Major General, was despatched by William Pitt (Earl of Chatham) to capture Louisbourg, and Fort William Henry (Lake George). He failed, and was superseded by Sir Jeffrey Amherst.

QUESTIONS.—What did Col. Bradstreet accomplish? Give a sketch of him, and of General Abercrombie. What did Montcalm do at Oswego? How were the victors regarded? Sketch the third campaign, of 1757.

retired to Crown Point and Ticonderoga. In June, Lord Loudon (having had a conference with the colonial governors) left New York with a large fleet and 6,000 men to take Louisbourg, the key to the French possessions on the seaboard. At Halifax he was joined by more ships and men; but having heard that Louisbourg was largely reinforced, he feared to attack so strong a fortress, and returned to New York with some of his troops, which he sent to Albany. Part of the fleet sailed on a cruise to Louisbourg; but the ships were disabled in a storm, and the commander gave up the enterprise.

42. *The Fourth Campaign, of 1758.*—General Lord Loudon, having failed to act with sufficient skill and energy in prosecuting the war, was superseded by General Abercrombie, who took the chief command. The campaign of the British in 1758 was signalized by the gallant and memorable capture of Louisbourg, the fortified capital of Cape Breton; but no less so by the fatal attack on Ticonderoga and the defeat there of Gen. Abercrombie himself, who hastily retreated to the head



Lord Howe.*

of Lake George. From this place he despatched Col. Bradstreet to take Fort Frontenac. Here he was afterwards joined by Gen. Amherst, who brought five regiments from Nova Scotia, by way of Boston, to reinforce him, and then returned to his army. The youthful Lord Howe (brother to the Admiral, who succeeded to his title) fell at Ticonderoga. The remainder of the campaign was chiefly favourable to the British. Col. Bradstreet with great skill captured fort Fronte-

* So beloved was Lord Howe, that the Legislature of Massachusetts erected a monument to his memory in Westminster Abbey.

QUESTIONS.—How did Lord Loudon succeed? Who superseded him? Give a sketch of the fourth campaign, of 1758. What part did Col. Bradstreet and Lord Amherst take in it? What is said of Lord Howe?

CHA
nac
at F
grea
In 1
Fren
Thu
Briti
hero
43
summ
he w
man
year
of de
the v
or at
John
Amh
while
the f
wrest
ing th
* Sir
In 1758
Breton
compe
ernor
of Hou
died in
† “C
the ou
‡ Ja
1726.
Europe
Major-
Que
part o
Give a

nac; while General Forbes so pressed the French commandant at Fort du Quesne, that he destroyed that fort, and retired in great haste and confusion down the Ohio to the Mississippi. In honour of the British premier, the fort abandoned by the French was repaired and named Fort Pitt (now Pittsburg). Thus, although the tide of battle had turned in favour of the British arms, it was only by the greatest efforts that the heroism of the French troops was overcome.

43. *The Final Campaign, of 1759*, did not open till near mid-summer. In consequence of the failure of Gen. Abercrombie, he was in turn succeeded by Gen. Sir Jeffrey Amherst as commander-in-chief.* The French were busy in the early part of the year in strengthening their forts, and in arranging their plans of defence. They received few reinforcements, but they made the very best disposition of those they had. The British plan of attack was threefold. General Prideaux and Sir Wm. Johnson left Schenectady in May to attack Niagara; General Amherst marched from Albany in June against Ticonderoga; while to General Wolfe was entrusted, about the same time, the formidable task of confronting Montcalm at Quebec, wresting from him the key to the whole country, and destroying the seat of French dominion in America.† When Prideaux

* Sir Jeffrey (subsequently Lord) Amherst, was born in England in 1717. In 1758, he was General in command at the capture of Louisbourg, Cape Breton. He took part with Wolfe in the capture of Quebec, 1759, and compelled the capitulation of Montreal in 1760. He was appointed Governor of Virginia in 1763, and in 1776 received a patent as Baron Amherst of Honesdale in England, and in 1787 as Baron Amherst of Montreal. He died in 1797, aged 81 years.

† “Cheonderoga,” or the “Noisy,” was the Indian name of the falls at the outlet of Lake George into Lake Champlain—hence Ticonderoga.

‡ James Wolfe, an English general, was born at Westerham, Kent, in 1726. He had distinguished himself in the campaigns on the continent of Europe, when, in 1757, he was, at the age of thirty-one years, created a Major-General, and dispatched by Pitt to aid in the conquest of New

QUESTIONS.—How did the Ohio campaign succeed? Sketch the early part of the final campaign, of 1759. What is said of Fort Ticonderoga? Give a sketch of Lord Amherst. Give also a sketch of General Wolfe.



Fort Niagara.

reached Niagara, it was in a weak state of defence. It was, however, nobly defended. During the attack, the British General lost his life. He was succeeded by Sir Wm. Johnson, who captured the fort. The French then retired to Fort Présentation (Ogdensburg). Part of a French force crossed over from Frontenac and sought to surprise Col. Haldimand* at Oswego, but they were compelled to retire. Gen.

Amherst, with a large force, advanced to Fort George, at the head of Lake George. Proceeding cautiously down the lake, he reached Carillon (Ticonderoga), which had proved so fatal a spot to Abercrombie. To the surprise of Amherst, Bourlemaque, the French commander, abandoned the fort and retreated, first to Fort St. Frederic, † which he destroyed, and then to Isle-aux-Noix. Here he remained, without molestation, and strengthened himself within entrenchments which he threw up. Amherst afterwards followed him some distance, but soon afterwards returned to Crown Point for the winter.

44. *The Capture of Quebec—Wolfe and Montcalm.*—Meantime the most memorable contest in the whole war was taking

France. In conjunction with Boscawen and Amherst, he took the strongly fortified post of Louisbourg, Cape Breton, in 1758; and in 1759 he was entrusted with an expedition against Canada, as above.

* Col. Haldimand, though a native of Switzerland, rose to be a lieutenant general in the British army. He took part in the American campaigns which led to the cession of Canada to England, and distinguished himself at Ticonderoga, Oswego, Montreal, and elsewhere. He was lieutenant-governor of Upper Canada from 1773 to 1785.

† This fort stood on *Point à la Chevalier*. Lord Amherst partially rebuilt it on a much larger scale than that of the old fort, and named it *Crown Point*. (See map on page 82, and also note * on page 39.)

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the capture of Niagara. What was attempted at Oswego? Give a sketch of Col. Haldimand. Give an account of the campaign of General Amherst. What is said of Fort St. Frederic?

place
who w
Gener
hend,
isbour
Isle of
men o
Here
noitre
part of
Monck
to Poi
fort w
comm
from t
of July
calm s
camp
while
Beaup

place at Quebec. Wolfe, who was ably supported by Generals Monckton, Townshend, and Murray, left Louisbourg, and reached the Isle of Orleans, with 30,000 men on the 25th of June. Here he remained to reconnoitre until the 30th, when part of his force under Gen. Monckton was transferred to Point Lévis. Every effort was made speedily to commence the attack, and from this point, on the 13th

of July, the batteries first opened on the French citadel. Montcalm sought to dislodge Monckton, but failed. Wolfe's own camp was pitched on the left bank of the Montmorency River, while the French camp lay between the St. Charles and Beauport. On the 31st July, Wolfe attacked Montcalm's

camp near Beauport with a strong naval and military force, but was defeated and compelled to retire. Detachments were sent out in various directions to destroy the French posts, but with little effect. At length, on 20th Aug., Wolfe called together his generals to consult on some new mode of attack. They



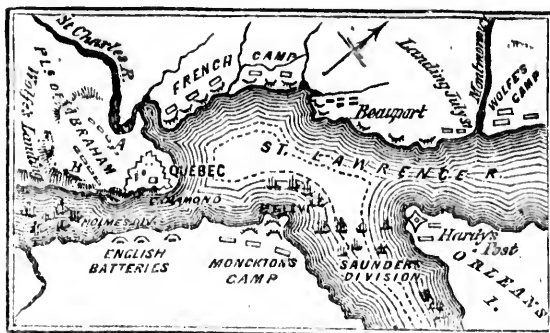
Montcalm.



Wolfe.

QUESTIONS.—What was transpiring at Quebec? Who were Wolfe's generals, and how many soldiers had he? When did he arrive at Quebec? Point out on the map the two hostile camps. What did Wolfe do?

unanimously opposed the making of another assault on the camp at Beauport, and strongly recommended that Quebec should be attacked from above rather than from below the city. Wolfe approved of the advice, and, on the 3rd of September, transferred his camp to Point Lévis. Having at length completed all his plans, Wolfe, on the night of the 12th of the month, silently landed his men at a place since called Wolfe's Cove. Having learned the countersign from two deserters,



Military Operations at Quebec, 1759.

Wolfe was enabled to pass the shore sentinels, on his way up the river. At the Cove, the guard was overpowered; and silently all that night there toiled up that steep ascent 8,000 British troops. At daybreak, the startling news reached the camp of the French General that the heights had been scaled, and that the enemy was in a strong position on the Plains of Abraham! Having arranged his forces, consisting of 4,500 men, he hastily moved forward to the attack. De Vaudreuil, the governor, advised, and even ordered, delay, until a larger force could be collected, and De Bourgainville recalled from Cape Rouge, just above Quebec, (whither he had been sent to watch the movements of a part of the British attacking force); but all in vain. Montcalm was impetuous; and after rapidly crossing the St. Charles, he at once gave orders to advance, without even waiting to rest, or taking time to form in proper order of battle. Wolfe quietly waited the fierce onslaught, and gave his men orders not to fire

QUESTIONS.—After his first failure, what did Wolfe do? How was the new plan carried out? Give the particulars of the British ascent to the Plains of Abraham. How did Montcalm act when he received the news?

until the
were w
yards.
brave
as they
troops,
ketry,
extend
along
lines.
wavere
discha
the ord
though
ed, he
diers.
gone m
this tin
shout
to the
line of
and en
Montca
the lou
heroic
dying
they gi
gasping
side an
instant
noble c

* A se
soldier,
the fatal

QUEST
Wolfe v
did Mon

until the French soldiers were within forty or fifty yards. On came the brave Frenchmen; and as they neared Wolfe's troops, the rattle of musketry, at a given signal, extended, as if by magic, along the whole of his lines. As the French wavered at the deadly discharge, Wolfe gave the order to charge. Although already wounded, he led on the grenadiers. He had scarcely

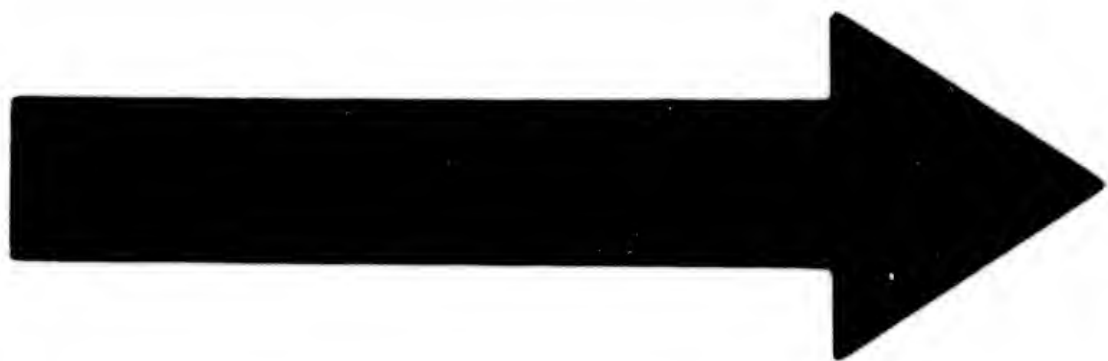


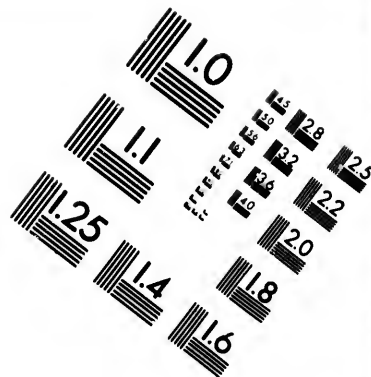
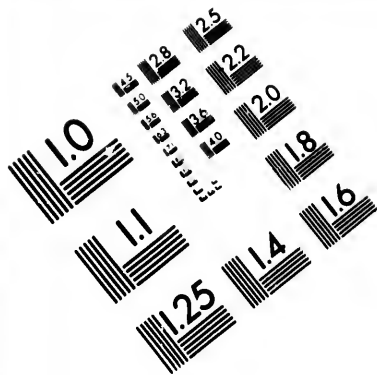
Wolfe's Ravine.
(Half way up the Heights.)

gone more than a few paces before he was again struck, but this time he was mortally wounded.* Nevertheless, with a wild shout his men still pressed on, while he was silently carried to the rear, near a well. The charge upon the advancing line of French troops was decisive, though they were cheered and encouraged to stand firm by the voice and example of Montcalm, who had already been wounded twice. At length, the loud shouts "They run! they run!" fell on the ear of the heroic Wolfe, and roused for a moment to consciousness the dying hero. "Who—who run?" said he. "The enemy, sir; they give way everywhere," was the eager response. Then gasping a hurried message for Col. Burton, he turned on his side and said, "Now God be praised; I die in peace!" and instantly the brave Wolfe expired. Montcalm himself with noble courage restrained the retreating soldiers; but, struck a

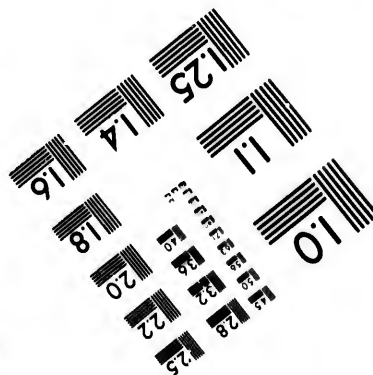
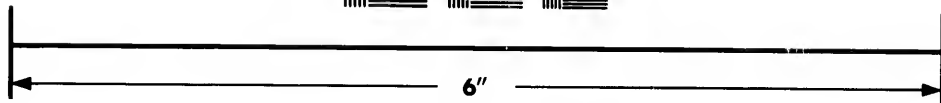
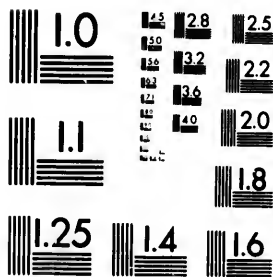
* A sergeant whom Wolfe had reduced to the ranks for his cruelty to a soldier, and who had deserted to the French, is said to have aimed one of the fatal bullets at the hero. Braddock shared a similar fate; see page 81.

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of this memorable battle. How was Wolfe wounded? Mention the particulars of his last moments. How did Montcalm bear his reverse? What happened to him during the battle?





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

15 28
13 22
18 20
118

10
51

third time, he fell from his horse mortally wounded, and was carried into the city. De Vaudreuil, on whom now devolved the chief command of Montcalm's army, rallied a portion of the troops, and successfully resisted for a time the advance of the victorious army into the city; but all in vain, for the battle was already decided in favour of the advancing columns of the enemy.—Thus was this memorable battle fought and won, with a loss of 1,500 French and 700 British; and thus, in the memorable fall of Quebec, fell also, in Canada, although the after-struggle was protracted for a year, that imperial power which, for more than one hundred and fifty years, had ruled the colonial destinies of New France. The history of French rule in America is full of heroic achievements—of touching and memorable incidents; and its termination, though decisive, was still worthy of that great nation, whose history is parallel to our own in noble deeds and chivalrous renown.



Wolfe's old Monument, Quebec.

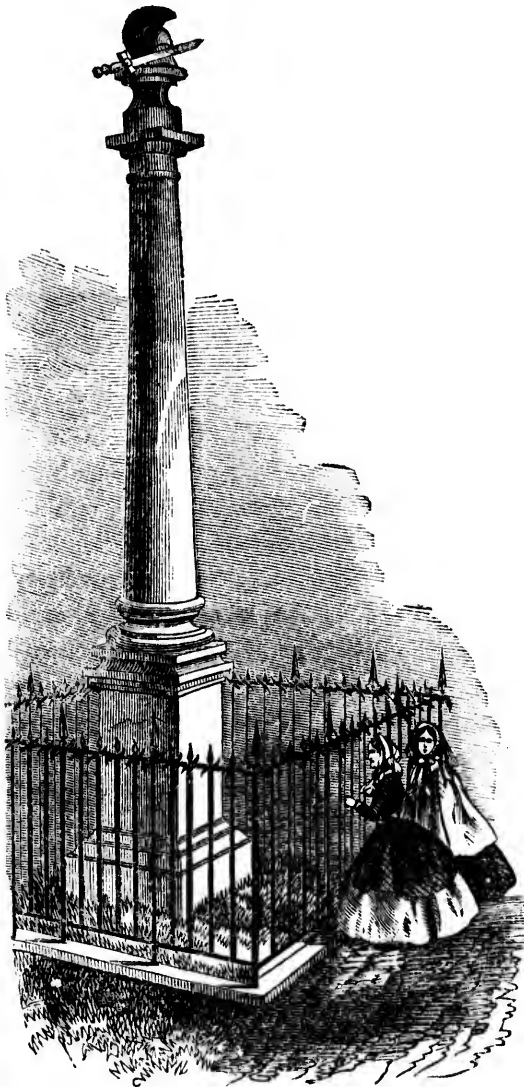
45. *Death of Wolfe and Montcalm.*—The death of Wolfe and Montcalm, within so short a time of each other, created a profound feeling of regret. Wolfe's body was conveyed to England, and buried at Greenwich. A monument was erected to his memory in Westminster Abbey, and another on the Plains of Abraham (which, in

1849, was replaced, by the British troops serving in Canada, by a handsomer one), on the very spot where "Wolfe died, victorious." Montcalm died on the morning after the battle,

QUESTIONS.—After Montcalm's death, how was the contest maintained? How many fell in this battle? What is said of French rule? How were the deaths of the two heroes regarded? What monuments were erected?

duc

Q
mon
of th



Wolfe's new Monument, erected in 1849.

duce M. de Ramzay, who still held the citadel, to defend

aged 47. He was buried at the Ursuline Convent, Quebec. A noble and chivalrous soldier, he was regretted by friend and foe. A monument to the memory of himself and Wolfe was erected, by subscription, at Quebec, in 1827, chiefly by the exertions of the Earl of Dalhousie, then Governor-General of Canada.

46. *Events leading to the Close of the Campaign.*

—On the death of Montcalm, General de Lévis, then at Montreal, took command of the French army. Before his arrival, De Vaudreuil, the Governor, endeavoured to induce M. de Ramzay, who still held the

QUESTIONS.—Mention the particulars of Montcalm's death. What monuments were erected to Wolfe and Montcalm? Who took command of the French army in Canada? What did the Marquis de Vaudreuil do?



Wolfe and Montcalm's Monument.

Quebec. In this, however, De Ramzay permitted himself to be overruled by the inhabitants. De Lévis on his arrival sought to remedy this mistake; but before he could complete his plans, the garrison had surrendered to General Townshend, on the 18th of September. De Lévis retired with his army to Jacques Cartier river, 27 miles from Quebec, and De Vaudreuil went to Montreal. After reinforcing various posts with his soldiers, De Lévis rejoined the Governor, and awaited aid from France. After the capitulation of Quebec, General Murray, the British governor, strengthened the defences of the city. So little, however, did he fear its recapture, (as the French army was shut up between Quebec, Montreal, and Lake Champlain,) that he sent back part of the army to England. In the meantime, General Amherst repaired Fort Carillon, on Lake Champlain, and named it Ticonderoga. (See notes on pages 39 and 82.)

47. *Final Efforts to Regain Canada.*—Although the scanty succours sent from France failed to reach it, Governor de Vaudreuil and General de Lévis determined to make a final effort to retake Quebec. De Lévis therefore collected all his available forces, and, after great difficulty, gained a footing in the rear of the city in April, 1760. General Murray, anxious to attack the French before they could concentrate their strength, at once marched out to give them battle. About 3,500 men were en-

QUESTIONS.—How was De Vaudreuil's advice received? How did the surrender of Quebec affect the movements of De Lévis? What followed the capitulation? Mention the efforts made by France to regain Canada.

gaged
the B
their
menc
forcem
arrive
Leavi
and p
army
ited t
Augus
openc
ant, di
his ma
forces.
out of

48.

portion
Osweg
did sin
investe
Resista
some
posed
Amhe
Septer
memo
whole
ferred
crown
fifty
scant
ful ri

QUE
Fronch
the Fr

gaged on each side. After a desperate encounter at Ste. Foye, the British were forced to retire within the city walls, leaving their artillery in the hands of the French. De Lévis now commenced the siege, and both parties anxiously waited for reinforcements from home. Those for General Murray having arrived first, De Lévis was compelled to raise the siege. Leaving a corps of observation near Quebec, want of stores and provisions compelled him to distribute the rest of his army among the remaining French garrisons. He then visited the military posts at Isle aux Noix and Montreal. In August, Col. Haviland appeared before Isle aux Noix and opened fire upon it. M. de Bourgainville, the French commandant, did not long resist the attack, but, having withdrawn with his main force, the rest of the garrison surrendered to the British forces. Thus the whole of the Lake Champlain country passed out of the hands of the French.

48. *Close of French Rule in Canada.*—In the meantime a portion of the British forces at Quebec, Lake Champlain, and Oswego, was directed to march upon Montreal. This they did simultaneously; and early in September, Montreal was invested by a force of 17,000 men under General Amherst. Resistance was useless; and, after some discussion, De Vaudreuil proposed to capitulate. To this, Gen. Amherst agreed; and on the 8th of September, 1760, was signed that memorable document, by which the whole of Canada was solemnly transferred from the French to the British crown. Thus, after one hundred and fifty years of heroic struggle, with scant means of defence, against powerful rival colonists and a relentless Indian enemy, the first



Lord Amherst.

QUESTIONS.—What was the result of Murray's encounter with the French? How did the Lake Champlain country pass out of the hands of the French? Give the particulars of the close of French rule in Canada.

promoters of European civilization and enterprise in Canada were compelled to give place to a more aggressive race. But they did so with honour. Little, however, did those think who were then the victors over a brave enemy in Canada, that, within twenty years after the French standard had ceased to float at Quebec, their own proud flag would be ignominiously lowered at New York, as well as at every other fort and military post within the thirteen revolted colonies. And little, too, did they think that soon they would be compelled to maintain at Quebec a military and commercial supremacy, which the vanquished French Colonists had so valiantly done during the preceding one hundred years. As a parting tribute to their unflinching valour and fidelity, the last defenders of Canada, ere returning to France, obtained from their conquerors, and left as a legacy to their countrymen, a guarantee for the free exercise of their religion, and for other privileges dear to a people about to be transferred from their own to the protection of a foreign flag.*

49. *The Conspiracy of Pontiac.* †—In June, 1763, Pontiac, an Ottawa chief at Michilimackinac, and an active ally of the

* The brief military details which are given of the several campaigns in this *Seven Years' War* are taken chiefly from *Précis of Wars in Canada from 1755 to 1814*, by Sir James Carmichael Smyth, Bart. London, 1862.

† Pontiac was a celebrated chief of the Ottawa tribe of Indians, who, removing from the valley of the great river of that name, settled near Michilimackinac. An ally of the French, he resisted the efforts of the English to gain possession of the French forts, after the fall of Quebec, in 1759-60. In June, 1763, he matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from Lake Michigan to the Niagara. The plot failed, and Pontiac afterwards professed friendship for the English; but an Indian spy having discovered, in a speech, symptoms of treachery, stabbed him to the heart, and fled. Pontiac's loss was greatly deplored; for he was a man of singular sagacity, daring courage, and statesman-like views. The county of Pontiac, in Lower Canada, is called after this renowned chief.

QUESTIONS.—What was the victors' fate? What privileges were granted to the vanquished? Mention the authority given for the military details. What occurrence took place in June, 1763? Sketch Pontiac's career.

French
tinctio
neous
lake M
on the
perse
Ojibw
(King
vited t
to the
sacred
attack
dian w
theless
consta
was fir
attack
destru
over th
50. 2

Englan
tinued
signed
of her
the sm
coast o
Spain.

51. 2
Most o
France
inhabit
who wo
antago

QUEST
Colonels
ticulars

French, matured a bold and comprehensive plan for the extinction of English power on the upper lakes, by the simultaneous capture of the extensive chain of forts reaching from lake Michigan to the Niagara river. Nine forts were attacked on the same day, and their garrisons either massacred or dispersed. The capture of Michilimackinac was entrusted to the Ojibway and Sac, or Sauk, Indians. On the 4th June, 1763, (King George's birthday,) Minavavana, an Ojibway chief, invited the English to witness a game at ball. Having played up to the gate of the fort, the Indians rushed in, seized and massacred the garrison, except a few who escaped. Detroit was attacked by Pontiac himself; but the scheme failed, an Indian woman having revealed the plot. The siege was nevertheless maintained by the Indians, with more than their usual constancy, for upwards of fifteen months, until the garrison was finally relieved by Colonel Bradstreet. Niagara was not attacked; and Pittsburg was most gallantly rescued from destruction by Colonel Bouquet, who won a notable victory over the Indians at Bushy Run on his way to the fort.

50. *The Treaty of Paris, 1763.*—The war between France and England did not end with the conquest of Canada. It continued for two years longer. At length a treaty of peace was signed at Paris, by which France ceded to England the whole of her possessions in North America, with the exception of the small fishing islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon (off the coast of Newfoundland), and Louisiana, which she ceded to Spain.

51. *The French and English Colonial Systems contrasted.*—Most of the French military officers and troops returned to France after the capitulation, as well as many of the chief inhabitants. Their return was encouraged by the English, who were anxious thus quietly to rid themselves of a powerful antagonistic element in the population of their newly ac-

QUESTIONS.—Give the particulars of Pontiac's conspiracy. How did Colonels Bradstreet and Bouquet rescue two of the forts? Give the particulars of the treaty of Paris. How did it affect French military officers?

quired possession. They well knew, from the character of the French and English Colonies, and their political and social structure, that the process of assimilation between the two races, so long arrayed in hostility to each other, would be very slow. Independent of the dissimilarity in national tastes and habits, the relations of the French Colony with the Imperial Government were essentially different from those which connected a British Colony with the mother country. The French colony was a child of the state. Everything in it of a civil nature was either under official patronage or *surveillance*, while religious matters were subject to ecclesiastical control. Two principal objects engrossed the attention of the French colonists,—the extension of the peltry traffic, and the conversion of the Indian tribes. As a means of carrying out these two great projects, exploration and discovery formed a chief feature of French colonial life.

52. *System of Government in the English Colony.*—In the English colony, the Government, on the contrary, was rather a civil and social bond, than an expression of the embodied will of the Imperial authorities. It interfered as little as possible in matters of trade, leaving that to develop itself as fast and as freely as the enterprise of the trader and the circumstances of the colony would admit. Hence, exploration and discovery within the colony formed but a subordinate part of the objects and pursuits of the English colonist. When the rival colonists came into contact, therefore, it was rather in a struggle for enlarged boundaries for trade, or for influence over the Indian tribes. The momentous struggle which led to the separation of Canada from France, forever put an end to these struggles between the French and English colonies for dominion over rival Indian tribes, and for the monopoly of the fur-trade. It also brought to a close a protracted contest for commercial and national supremacy, waged for nearly a cen-

QUESTIONS.—How did the English view their departure? Mention the chief points of contrast between the French and the English colonial systems. How did these systems affect the French and English colonists?

CHA

tury
tend
fish
devel
of em
even
it we

T

Pr

1. Are
2. Ca
—1
taw
—1
18.

[NOT
Tribes,
Teache
the His
the you

1. A
Bay.—
over t
all fou
Five o
son Ba
Arctic
more
sembl
Kilisti
of the
and fi

QUES
he Ind
ribes fo

tury and a half between two of the foremost nations of Christendom. That contest, although it was too often utterly selfish in its aims and purposes, nevertheless unconsciously developed in a wonderful degree, even in both colonies, a spirit of enterprise and discovery which has scarcely had a parallel even in later times, when steam and electricity have added, as it were, wings to man's locomotive and physical power.

The Principal Indian Tribes of British America.

CHAPTER X.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Principal Indian Groups—Their Habits—Area occupied by each Tribe.

1. Area occupied by the Indian Tribes of Canada and Hudson Bay.—
2. Indian Domestic Habits.—3. Hieroglyphics.—4. Wampum.—5. The Calumet.—6. Weapons of War.—7. Burial.—8. Religion.—9. Sachem.—10. Principal Tribes of Canada.—11. The Algonquins.—12. The Ottawa.—13. The Ojibways.—14. The Wyandots.—15. The Minor Tribes.—16. The Huron-Iroquois.—17. Origin and Settlement of the Iroquois.—18. Iroquois Confederacy.—19. Wars of the Iroquois.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As the following chapter, on the Indian Tribes, does not form any consecutive part of the History of Canada, the Teacher can omit it in whole or in part at his discretion, when going over the History for the first time in the ordinary course, or when teaching it to the younger pupils.]

1. *Area occupied by the Indian Tribes of Canada and Hudson Bay.*—Although the Indian tribes which have been scattered over the entire continent were very numerous, they have been all found to belong to eight or ten distinct groups or families. Five of these occupied the present area of Canada and the Hudson Bay territory, viz.: I. The Esquimaux, or Eskimo, of the Arctic regions and Labrador, who, in their *physique*, but still more in their manners, belief, and superstitious customs, resembled the natives of Lapland and Greenland. II. The Kilistinons, or Kiristinons, of the Hudson Bay. The name of these Indians was afterwards transformed to Cristinaux, and finally to Cris (Crees). III. The Chippewayans of the

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter ten. How have the Indian tribes of British North America been grouped? Name those tribes found occupying the area of Canada and the Hudson Bay Territory.



Indian Warrior.

various tribes, each speaking a separate dialect of their original tongue, yet among all the tribes a remarkable similarity in customs and institutions prevailed. In colour, form, temperament, religious belief, and pursuits, all were alike. The men engaged in war, hunting, and fishing; while the women performed all other kinds of labour.

2. *Domestic Habits.*—The wigwams of the Indians were of the simplest construction; being poles covered with matting made from the bark of trees. Their implements were made of bones, shells, and stones. Meat they roasted on the points of sticks, or boiled in stone or earthen vessels. They dressed themselves in skins, with or without the fur. Some Indian tribes derived their names from the mode of wearing these skins. Thus the Rocky Mountain Indians were called Chippewyan, from the manner in which they wore the skins gathered round their necks. Their chief ornaments were feathers, porcupine quills, bones, or shells. They tattooed, as well as painted, their faces and bodies.



Indian Wigwam.

3. *Hieroglyphics.*—Indian treaties were generally hierogly

QUESTIONS.—Give the subdivisions of the Chippewyan group. What other Indian groups or families are there? Mention the peculiarities of the five groups. Give an account of the domestic habits of the Indians.

Rocky Mountains (who should not be confounded with the Chippewas, or Ojibways), including the following tribes: (1) The Dog-ribs (les Plats-côtés de Chiens); (2) The Hares (les Peaux de Lièvres); (3) The Yellow-knives (les Couteaux Jaunes); (4) The Slaves (les Esclaves); (5) The Deer-eaters (les Mangeurs de Caribou); and (6) The Beavers (les Castors). The Indians of Canada were, IV. The Algonquins (originally Algoumekins); and, V. The Huron-Iroquois (which see, p. 106). Each of these five groups or families spoke a distinct language, having no affinity to the other. The five groups were subdivided into

phical
hierog
an acc
like fo
paddle
indica
riors;
represe
with a
bow, a
with t
indica

3. 2
mal, fi
always
The to
was ge
followi

Trib

Algonqu
Nipissing
Hurons
Ojibways
Ottawas.
Missisau
Indians
Petuns..

Tabittikis
Iroquois



Wamp

QUESTIO
plain also
totem of t

phical, as were also all their recorded deeds. The accompanying hieroglyphics give an account of a war-like foray. The nine paddles in the canoe indicate nine warriors; the figures represent prisoners, with a tomahawk, bow, arrow, war-club, &c. One prisoner is beheaded; another, with the shading below, is a woman. The fire and animals indicate a council held by chiefs of the bear and turtle tribes.



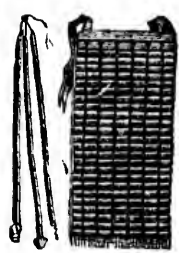
Hieroglyphical Record of a War Party.

3. *The Totem*, or outline of some animal, from *do-daim*, a family mark, was always the chief's signature to a treaty. The totem, and not the personal name, was generally inscribed on the tomb. The following were totems of the chief tribes:



Turtle: Mohawk Totem.

Tribe or Nation.	Locality.	Totem.
Algonquin (Proper).....	Quebec	A green oak, &c.
Nipissing.....	Two Mountains.....	A heron.
Hurons	Montreal, Lake Huron.	Cord, rock, &c.
Ojibways	Lake Superior.....	Loon and bear.
Ottawas.....	Ottawa River.....	A grey squirrel.
Missisaugas, (River } Indians)	St. Clair, Quinté, To- } ronto, &c.....	A crane.
Petuns.....	Huron and Georgian } Peninsula.....	Wolf and stag.
Tabittikis.....	Lake Temiscaming.....	An eagle.
Iroquois (Six Nations).....	United States and Ca- } nada.....	Wolf, bear, deer, &c



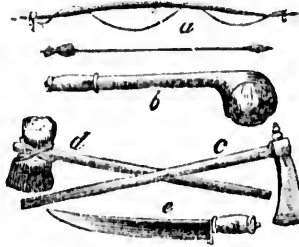
Wampum.

4. *Wampum*.—Indian money consisted of white or purple tubes, made of the inside of the conch or clam shells, either fastened on belts or strung like beads, and called wampum. Each bead had a determined value. Wampum was used either in trade or politics. Wampum belts were the official records of alliance, and, in the hands of a chief, were the ratification of treaties of friendship, &c.

QUESTIONS.—Explain the hieroglyphical picture of a war party. Explain also the meaning of the word totem. Give the name, locality, and totem of the various tribes mentioned in the table. How is wampum used?

5. *The Calumet*, or peace-pipe, was made of clay or stone, and ornamented; and when smoked by the sachems with an enemy or a stranger, it indicated peace and fidelity.

6. *The Weapons* of war or of the chase consisted of (a) bow and arrow; (b) war-club;



Indian Weapons.

(c) tomahawk; (d) stone hatchet; and (e) scalping-knife; and spear. War was the chief occupation of the Indians, either among themselves, or, in later times, upon the white settlements. Forty braves, or warriors, constituted an ordinary war-party, under a chief; but sometimes six or more ventured out as scouts or marauders, upon the "war-path" alone. For protection, the colonists had to erect timber-palisades about their dwellings, and around which the Indian would stealthily watch for his victim.



Calumets.



Palisaded Enclosure, and Indian.



Scaffold Burial.

7. *Burial*.—The dead were usually placed on a high scaffold, either sitting or lying. Sometimes they were wrapped in skins, and laid on sticks in a pit. Weapons, food, paints, &c., were placed beside them for their use in the "happy hunting grounds beyond the setting sun."

8. *The Religion* of the Indians consisted chiefly in the belief of a good and an evil spirit. There were no infidels among them.

QUESTIONS.—What is a calumet, and what was its use? Give the names of the Indian weapons of war shown in the engraving. What is said of Indian war, its usages, and dangers? Give an account of Indian burial.

Althou
they p
Life.

and of

9. 7

quin, s

an her

to his

He cou

In cou

and to

A chie

a war-p

10.

of Indi

its disc

Huron-

remain

Lawren

(See W

olutio

Indians

and th

granted

No. 16

11. 7

Iroquo

Ottawa

and to

the Iro

bark-e

from th

"Peop

ments

been a

the Six

French

or Iro

settled

du Sa

Boule

QUES

was th

early tr

Although they deified the heavenly bodies and the elements, they pre-eminently adored the Great Manitou, or Master of Life. They had dim traditions of the creation, the deluge, and of the great atonement.

9. *The Sachem*, also called *Sagomo*, and *Aghanna* (Algonquin, *sakema*), was the head of a tribe, and was frequently an hereditary monarch, who sometimes owed his elevation to his superior prowess in war, or to his oratorical powers. He could be deposed; but while in power he was supreme. In council, composed of the elders, he presided as umpire, and to his decision all were required to bow with submission. A chief was subordinate to the sachem, and was the leader of a war-party. *Squa* was the Algonquin for woman.

10. *The Principal Tribes of Canada*.—The principal groups of Indians which occupied the area of Canada at the time of its discovery, were the Algonmekins, or Algonquins, and the Huron-Iroquois. The Hurons, or Wyandots, on their arrival, remained in the country lying on the north side of the St. Lawrence, while the Iroquois removed to the south side. (See *Wyandots*, No. 14.) After the war of the American Revolution, some of the Iroquois, or five (afterwards six) Nation Indians, who had previously subdued their brethren the Eries and the Hurons, removed to Canada, and settled on lands granted to them by King George III. (See *Huron-Iroquois*, No. 16, page 106.)

11. *The Algonquins*, originally Algonmekins, with the Huron-Iroquois, are said to have descended from the north, by the Ottawa (or Utawas) river, at the close of the 15th century, and to have occupied the left bank of the St. Lawrence. By the Iroquois they were called, in derision, Adirondacks (or bark-eaters). They received the generic name of Algonquins from the French. In Indian they were called *Odis qua gume*,—"People at the end of the water." In arts and other attainments they excelled the Iroquois. They are supposed to have been at the head of a northern confederacy similar to that of the Six Nation Indians. In later times they were allies of the French and Wyandots, in their wars against the No-do-was, or Iroquois. The principal tribes of the Algonquin group settled in British North America, were: (1) The Montagnais du Saguenay (Saguenay Mountaineers); (2) The Têtes de Boule (the Bull-heads of the St. Maurice); (3) The Ottawas;

QUESTIONS.—In what did the religion of the Indians consist? Who was the Sachem, and what is said of him? Mention the names of the early tribes in Canada. Who were the Algonquins? What is said of them?

(4) The Ojibways, or Chippewas of Lake Superior and River Winnipeg (Sauteux of the French); (5) The Mashkégons of the River Nelson. The Kilistinons, afterwards the Crees (les Cris), of the Hudson Bay west and River Saskatchewan, were said to have been of Algonquin origin. No tribe of this group has been found west of the Rocky Mountains; nor have any tribe of the Chippewayan group been found east of Hudson Bay.

12. *The Ot-ta-was*, or Ut-a-was. A tradition of this tribe asserts that they were members of a northern confederacy—(see *Algonquins*, No. 11)—that they migrated and separated; the Algonquins fixing their hunting-grounds near Quebec, the Hurons about Montreal and along the Upper Lakes, and the Ottawas near Michilimackinac and Detroit. They exacted tribute from the tribes passing through their territory. They are chiefly noted for their famous union, under their chief Pontiac, with the Ojibways, Sacs, Senecas, Pottawottamies, and others, for the capture of nine British posts, in 1763. (See “Conspiracy of Pontiac,” Chapter IX, No. 49, page 96.) Remnants of the Ottawas are now settled on the Manitoulin Island, in Lake Huron.

13. *The O-jib-way*, or Od-jib-way, [plural Odjibwäig,] occupied the shores of Lake Superior, and included the Mes-sas-sagnes (or Mis-si-sau-gas), who occupied the area at the mouth of a river called by their name, lying between Point Tessalon and La Cloche, on the north shore of Lake Huron. The Ojibways sheltered the flying Hurons, and defeated their pursuers at Point Iroquois, Lake Superior. The Ojibways and Misse-saugas are both called by different writers Chip-pe-ways. (The Chep-pe-way-ans are a Rocky Mountain race.) Remnants of the Ojibways are now settled at Alwick, Rice Lake, New Credit, Sarnia, and Lakes Simcoe and Couchiching. The Chippewa, like the Algonquin of old, is now the common business language of the Indians, and is as necessary among them as French is among Europeans.

14. *The Wy-an-dots*, or Hurons, claim to have been originally at the head of the Iroquois group of tribes. They at first occupied the northern shores of the St. Lawrence (westward from the present site of Montreal), and afterwards the country lying between Matchedash Bay and Lake Simcoe, &c. After their alliance with the Adirondacks, the Iroquois waged

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal tribes of the Algonquin group. Mention the tradition of the Ottawas. For what were these Indians noted? Where was the territory of the Ojibways? What is said of them?

rior and River
ashkégons of
he Crees (les
Chewan, were
of this group
nor have any
st of Hudson

of this tribe
confederacy—
and separated;
Quebec, the
akes, and the
They exacted
ritory. They
er their chief
ttawottamies,
sts, in 1763.
(49, page 96.)
ne Manitoulin

bwäig,] occu-
e Mes-sas-sag-
at the mouth
oint Tesselon
n. The Ojib-
their pursuers
ys and Misse-
-ways. (The
) Remnants
ce Lake, New
iching. The
the common
essary among

ve been origi-
pes. They at
wrence (west-
afterwards the
e Simcoe, &c.
roquois waged

a war of extermination against them, and pursued them up the Ottawa to the Manitoulin Islands (in the lake since called Huron), to Michilimackinac, and to the northern shores of Lake Superior. Here the Ojibways sheltered them, and defeated the Iroquois. This occurred in 1648-50. The French missionaries afterwards collected scattered remnants of the tribe, and settled them at the village of Lorette, near Quebec.

15. *The Minor Tribes* of, or bordering on, Canada, were: (1) The Petun (or Tobacco) Indians (Tionnontatehronon or E-ti-on-non-to-tes), who occupied the peninsula to the north-west of Owen's Sound and the country near the Saugeen river. Routed by the Iroquois, they fled, in 1650, to Missouri. (2) The At-ti-wen-da-ronk, or "Neutre Nation," (speaking a Huron dialect,) so called from their original neutrality in the wars between the Iroquois confederacy and the Hurons. This peaceful tribe occupied the southern part of the peninsula lying between Lakes Erie, Huron, and Ontario, and the northern side of the Niagara river. Having at length aided the weakened Hurons, they were attacked and reduced to servitude by the Iroquois, in 1646-50. (3) The Eriehronon, also called Riquehronon, or Eries (the Nation du Chat of the French), are supposed to have been identical with the Ca-taw-bas, who fled before the Iroquois to South Carolina, in 1656-8. They occupied the southern shore of Lake Erie, and have left evidences of their former power in the inscriptions on the rocks of Cunningham Island. Some writers think that the Eries were the neutral nation spoken of, or were at the head of a neutral alliance of tribes occupying the area between Lakes Erie and Ontario. (4) The An-das-tes, were spread over Pennsylvania, New Jersey, Maryland, and Virginia. As allies of the Hurons, part of them came westerly to Buffalo, and, after sixteen years' war with the Iroquois, were subdued in 1672, and fled down the Alleghany river. (5) The Poutewatami, or Pot-to-wat-to-mies, an Algonquin tribe, originally from the Baie des Puants (Green Bay), Michigan, now reside in Kansas, and a few at Owen Sound. (6) The Nip-is-sings, called As-ki-cou-a-nel-ho-rón by the Hurons, and Sorciers by the French, resided near the lake of that name. (7) A few Mun-seys (De-la-wares); and (8) Nan-ti-cokes, branches of the Len-ni Le-na-pes (or original people), (both Algonquin,) are settled in the western part of the Province, near London. (9) The At-ti-kam-i-ques, or

gonquin group.
e these Indians
is said of them?

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Wyandots, or Huron Indians, and of their extermination by the Iroquois in 1648-50. Mention the number and names of the minor tribes of Canada. What is said of each of them?

Poissons Blancs (White Fish) of the French, in the north of Canada, were destroyed by the pestilence of 1670.

16. *The Huron-Iroquois* group or family included: (1) The Five (afterwards the Six) Nations of celebrated Iroquois Indians; and (2) The Hurons (Wyandots, or Quatogies), as well as the following tribes: (3) The Sioux (Dakotas); (4) The Assineboines (Sioux of the rocks), from *Assini* (Ojibway), rocks or stones, and *bwain*, or *pwan*, a Sioux (or little Iroquois); and (5) The Blackfeet (*les pieds noirs*). Of these five we refer now only to the celebrated Six Nation Indians. The history of these Indians, although chiefly identified with that of the State of New York, is also intimately connected with that of Canada. As a confederacy, they were the faithful allies of the English Crown from the earliest colonial times until the close of the American Revolution. The Six Nations embraced the following cantons, or tribes: (1) The Mohawks; (2) Oneidas; (3) Onondagas; (4) Cayugas; (5) Senecas; and (6) Tuscaroras. At the close of the revolutionary war, the Mohawks, Cayugas, Onondagas, and others removed to Canada, and settled; 1st, at Brantford, on the Grand River (so called after Brant, the celebrated Mohawk chief), where they received a grant from the Crown of six miles on each side of the river from its head to its mouth, now worth \$1,000,000; 2nd, at Tyendinaga (so called after Brant's Indian name), on the Bay of Quinté; and, 3rd, on the River Thames. In 1671, a portion of the Mohawks settled at Sault St. Louis (Lachine), near Montreal.

17. *Origin and Settlement of the Iroquois*.—The origin of the Iroquois is very obscure. Their own tradition is that they originally descended the River Ottawa, and resided, as a small tribe, at Hochelaga (Montreal). Others say that they came from the vicinity of Hudson Bay by way of the Saguenay river, and settled in the country around Three Rivers, which they considered as having been theirs. They were subject to the Algonquins, and from them learned the arts of husbandry and war. Becoming numerous, they sought to secure their independence; but being vanquished, they were compelled to fly. Having ascended the St. Lawrence, and coasted the southern shore of Lake Ontario, they entered the Oswego river, and scattered themselves in separate bands throughout various parts of the State of New York.

18. *Iroquois Confederacy*.—Afterwards, for mutual protec-

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Huron-Iroquois group of tribes. Which were the most celebrated tribes of this group? When were they placed in Upper Canada? What is said of their origin and settlement?

tion,
leagu
the I
Huds
the e
ture
nies
wards
Unit
forme
of 20
Orig
1712,
becan
Huro
ated
seven
Moh
know
Natio
Enem
confi
by th
Tusc
term
"I h
whic
from
19
quoi
defe
und
At-t
Niag
Can
Ont
hood
bro
a m
but
bega

Qu
—its
Iroq

north of

(1) The Iroquois Indians as well as the (4) The Ojibway, (5) The Seneca; refer now to the State of Canada.

English of the following:

(3) On-

tas. At

the

of these

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

of the

tion, and at the desire of the Onondagas, they formed a league, under the title of Ho-de-no-sau-nee, or "people of the Long House." This house extended from the River Hudson to the great lakes of Canada. The Mohawks guarded the eastern end, and the Senecas the western. The structure of this league suggested the union of the thirteen colonies in the revolutionary war—an union which was afterwards developed into the political compact of the present United States. The confederacy is supposed to have been formed in 1540. It was successfully maintained for upwards of 200 years; indeed it has never been formally dissolved. Originally it included only five cantons or nations; but, in 1712, the Tuscaroras, a southern tribe, were admitted, and became the sixth nation. The Ne-ca-ri-a-ges, a remnant of the Hurons at Mich-il-i-mack-i-nac (the "Great Turtle," abbreviated to Mack-i-naw), was nominally admitted, in 1723, as a seventh nation. By the Algonquins, or Adirondacks, the Mohawks, or principal tribe of this celebrated league, was known as the Min-goes, or Min-gans; Ma-quas by the Dutch; Nation des Loups, by the French; and Nod-o-was, or "Adder Enemy," by the Ojibways and Hurons. The Iroquois, as a confederacy, were known as the Cinq Nations (Five Nations) by the French; and subsequently, after the admission of the Tuscaroras, as the Six Nations by the English. The French term "Iroquois" is founded on the Indian word "*hiro*," "I have said" (*j'ai dit*), an approbatory exclamation with which they always finished their speeches. Others derive it from "*Yoc hauh!*" another approbatory exclamation.

19. *Wars of the Iroquois.*—In their protracted wars the Iroquois extirpated the Eries; destroyed the power of the Hurons; defeated the Adirondacks and Utawas, and thus placed Canada under their sway. In 1640–1670, they drove the An-das-tes and At-ti-ou-an-di-rons, or "Neutral Nation," and Petuns, from the Niagara Peninsula and the Lakes; and after their conquest of Canada, established colonies along the northern shores of Lake Ontario. Before 1670, they formed villages in the neighbourhood of what is now Kingston. L'Abbé de Fénélon, elder brother of the distinguished Archbishop of Cambray, was once a missionary among them. In 1740 they reached their zenith; but after the close of the American Revolution, their power began gradually to decline.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the celebrated Iroquois confederacy;—its origin, objects, history and duration. By what names were the Iroquois Indians known? Give a sketch of the wars of the confederacy.

Sketch of the History of Canada.

(Continued from page 99.)

CHAPTER XI.

BRITISH RULE, FIRST PERIOD: FROM THE CONQUEST UNTIL
THE DIVISION OF THE PROVINCE OF QUEBEC, 1760—1792.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Establishment of English Colonial Government—American
Designs upon Canada—Changes in the Constitution.*

1. British Rule inaugurated.—2. State of Canada at this Time.—3. Ameliorations in the System of Government discussed.—4. The Quebec Act of 1774—5—Efforts of the Disaffected Colonists to detach the Canadians from England.—6. American Hostile Attacks upon Canada.—7. Siege of Quebec by the Americans.—8. Determination of the Americans to retain Canada.—9. Progress of Events in Canada in 1777—1783.—10. Independence of the United States.—11. Changes in the Constitution.

1. *British Rule inaugurated.*—It was after the treaty of peace, in 1763, that General Murray was appointed first Governor-General of the new British Province of Quebec, in place of Lord Amherst, who had hitherto acted as governor-in-chief. The boundaries of the new province were contracted by the separation from it of New Brunswick, Labrador, &c. The old district-divisions of Quebec, Montreal, and Three Rivers were retained. General Murray, with an executive council, governed the Quebec; General Gage, the Montreal; and Col. Burton, the Three Rivers District. Two other districts, the St. Maurice and the St. Francis, were shortly afterwards set apart. Justice was administered in each district chiefly by military or militia officers, subject to an appeal to the Governor. This system was not popular, and only continued in operation for a short time, until a court of King's Bench and a Court of Common Pleas were instituted. The laws and customs of France were, however, followed in matters affecting land.

QUESTIONS.—Name the principal subjects of chapter eleven. When did British rule in Canada commence? Who was its first governor? Give the names of its divisions. What system of government was then adopted?

2.
at thi
The c
and a
failur
ors th
and e
invol
3.
1766,
Guy)
val,
pro t
contin
by m
provi
trans
of the

* Sir
who h
the arr
under
Brigad
from C
in 177
return
Ameri
knight
mande
Lord I
1796 (v
Gener
thirty-
nial g
mann
for hir
of Can
He di

QUI
Who
gover

2. *State of Canada at this Time.*—The population of Canada at this time was about 80,000, including nearly 8,000 Indians. The country, however, had been exhausted by a desolating war, and agriculture and other peaceful arts languished. The failure of the French Government to pay its Canadian creditors the sums due to them, chiefly through the fraud, rapacity and extravagance of the Intendant Bigot and his accomplices, involved many of them in misery and ruin.

3. *Ameliorations in the System of Government discussed.*—In 1766, Governor Murray was recalled, and Gen. (afterwards Sir Guy) Carleton appointed Governor-General.* During the interval, Major Irving was appointed President of the Province *pro tem.* At this time much dissatisfaction was felt at the continued administration of justice and civil affairs solely by military men, and many more of the inhabitants left the province. Memorials and complaints on the subject were transmitted to England. They were referred to the law officers of the crown. Nothing further was done, however, except

* Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester) was among the most eminent men who have governed Canada. He was born in England in 1725, entered the army and took a prominent part in the siege and capture of Quebec, under Wolfe, in 1759. He was, for his services, promoted to the rank of Brigadier-General, and during the Governor-General (Murray's) absence from Canada in 1767, he administered the government. Being in England in 1770, he aided in the passage of the Quebec Act of 1771. In 1774 he returned as Governor-General, and successfully resisted the attack of the Americans upon Quebec in 1776. In 1778 he returned to England, and was knighted by the King. In 1782 he succeeded Sir Henry Clinton as Commander-in-Chief of the royal forces in America. In 1786 he was created Lord Dorchester for his distinguished services; and from that time until 1796 (with the exception of two years) he remained in Canada as Governor-General. He was thus connected with Canada for the long period of thirty-six years. During that time he acquired great distinction as a colonial governor by his prudence, firmness, and sagacity. His conciliatory manner towards the French Canadians and towards other parties, won for him their love and respect; and when he retired from the government of Canada, it was amid the heartfelt regret of all classes of the people. He died in 1808, aged 83.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the population and state of Canada at this time. Who succeeded Governor Murray? What ameliorations in the system of government were proposed? Give a sketch of Lord Dorchester's career.

to direct the Governor-General to issue a commission to inquire into the truth of these complaints. He went to England in 1770 to give his testimony on Canadian affairs, and did not return until 1774. In the meantime, M. Cramahé was appointed Governor *ad interim*. The evidence taken before the commission was referred to three crown lawyers, who did not report upon it until 1772-73. Two were in favour of the views entertained by the colonists; while the third opposed them.

4. *The Quebec Act of 1774.*—As the result of all these discussions, the British ministry resolved to submit to Parliament a conciliatory measure, which was finally passed, entitled a "Bill for reconstructing the government of the Province of Quebec." This bill provided, among other things, for the "free exercise" of the Roman Catholic religion; for the establishment of a Legislative Council; and for the introduction of the criminal law of England into the province; but it declared "that in all matters of controversy, relative to property and civil rights, resort should be had to the laws of Canada as the rule for the decision of the same." Thus, the enjoyment of the religion and civil laws of French Canada were confirmed to the inhabitants by Imperial statute, and a system of local self-government was introduced. The act gave unmixed satisfaction to the Canadians; and, at a time when the old English colonies were wavering in their attachment, it confirmed them in their allegiance to the British crown.

5. *Efforts of the Disaffected Colonists to Detach the Canadians from England*—Most of the old English Colonies in America had long possessed liberal royal charters, under which they enjoyed the right of almost unlimited self-government. The long continuance of this right, almost unquestioned by the home Government, had, in many cases, fostered a spirit of ambitious resistance to the legitimate exercise of the power of the

QUESTIONS.—Mention the steps which were taken to remove any causes of complaint. What was the result of these inquiries? Mention the principal provisions of the Quebec Act of 1774. Was that Act satisfactory?

Sover
even
or of
oppos
vehem
to the
impos
ment
reign
1765,
repea
1767,
was c
Comp
its ar
were
the s
gover
pany
of M
enfor
by ci
tativ
ance
deleg
and

* "
per p
while
the c
posse
the t
[pres
acqu

Qu
an a
civil

Sovereign and of the Imperial Parliament over the Colonies, even when it was employed to modify or counteract the hasty or oppressive acts of the local government. This spirit of opposition had much to do with, and even gave an undue vehemence to, the resistance of the New England colonists to the ill-advised stamp and customs duties acts which were imposed upon the American Colonies by the Imperial Parliament, and which ripened into open revolt against the Sovereign a few years afterwards. The stamp act was passed in 1765, but, owing to the violent agitation which it caused, was repealed in 1766. The custom duties act was passed in 1767, but repealed in 1770, except so far as the duty on tea was concerned. In order to raise a revenue, the East India Company was allowed, in 1773, to export tea to Boston. On its arrival there a party, disguised as Indians, (some of whom were interested rivals of the East India Company,) boarded the ships, seized the tea and threw it into the harbour. The government therefore shut up the harbour, until the Company should be indemnified for its losses,* revoked the charter of Massachusetts, and sent troops under General Gage to enforce obedience. In 1774, the Assembly of Massachusetts, by circular, requested a meeting in Philadelphia of representatives from all of the Colonies to concert measures of resistance. Each of the thirteen old Colonies, except Georgia, sent delegates. Canada declined to take any part in the revolt; and although one of the three addresses issued by the insur-

* "The object of the mother country [in imposing a duty of *three* pence per pound on tea imported by the East India Company into America, while it was *twelve* pence per pound in England] was mainly to break up the contraband trade of the Colonial merchants with Holland and her possessions." "Some of the merchants of Boston had become rich in the traffic, and a considerable part of the large fortune which Hancock [president of the insurgent Congress] inherited from his uncle, was thus acquired."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, (Boston, 1857,) page 47.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the English colonies in America? Give an account of the state of feeling in New England at this time, and of its evil effects upon the colony. What is said of the famous tea-riot in Boston?

gent Congress was specially addressed to the Canadians,* they hesitated to depart from their formal allegiance to the British crown, especially as that same Congress had denounced the liberality to these very French Canadians of the Quebec Act of 1774, which they regarded as so great a boon.

6. *American Hostile Attacks upon Canada.*—The appeal from the insurgents having failed to secure the co-operating sympathy of the Canadians, Congress dispatched a two-fold expedition in 1775 to secure the British posts in Canada, and to develop the friendly feeling of the inhabitants. One army from Boston under Gen. Arnold † was despatched by way of the Kennebec River against Quebec. The other, under Generals Montgomery ‡ and Schuyler, marched against Montreal. On its way it surprised and captured the important forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain, with all their munitions of war; and, in succession, it also took the posts at Isle aux Noix, St. Johns, Chambly, and Sorel. A still more flattering address was then issued by Congress and extensively circulated in Canada. Many people of both British and French origin heartily sympathized with its objects. The Governor-General (Sir Guy Carleton) was much embarrassed by such disloyal

* The first of these documents was addressed to King George III, the second to the British people, and the third to the Canadian colonists.

† Benedict Arnold after these events returned to his allegiance, and, as a royalist General, fought with great bravery in the subsequent campaigns of Virginia and Connecticut. The brave and noble Major John André, who was employed to carry out the arrangements with Arnold for the surrender of West Point to the British general, was taken, while on his way to Arnold, and executed as a spy. The Americans thus saved West Point. Arnold, who fled, was branded as a traitor by the revolutionists. Though a brave man, he was unprincipled and rapacious.

‡ Gen. Richard Montgomery was born in Ireland in 1737. He served under Wolfe at Quebec, but afterwards left the service of his sovereign and joined the American revolutionists. From his knowledge of the defenses of Quebec, he was sent to take it and also Montreal. Montreal was captured; but he failed at Quebec, and lost his life in the attempt.

QUESTIONS.—What efforts were made by the insurgents to undermine the loyalty of the Canadians? These disloyal overtures having failed, what course was next adopted? What is said of Arnold? of Montgomery?

sympa
he cou
of the
and F
resista
had e
of the
compe
loyal
7. Z
of Que
cans.

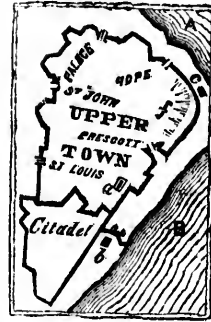
preser
includ
dict A
had a
made
to aw
gomen
forebc
oppor
currec
was h
gomen
wound
remain
spring
ease
fore f
Carlet

* Ex
Lawre
Genera
wound

QUE
What
of Que

sympathy; and, although aided by the clergy and seigneurs, he could scarcely collect a sufficient force to stop the progress of the Americans, to whose victorious standard many British and French Canadians had flocked. Montreal, after a slight resistance, surrendered to the invaders. General Carleton had even to fly in disguise to Quebec. Here he found many of the inhabitants disposed to surrender the city. These he compelled to leave it, and proceeded at once to organize the loyal militia for its defence.

7. *The Siege of Quebec by the Americans.*—With the exception of Quebec, Canada was now virtually in the hands of the Americans. The capture of this place, therefore, would decide the present fate of the country. Carleton had but 1,600 men, including about 600 militia. Col. Benedict Arnold, the American commander, had already reached Quebec, and, having made an unsuccessful attack on it, retired to await Gen. Montgomery. On Montgomery's arrival, he invested the city, but forebore to attack it until a favourable opportunity presented itself. This occurred on the 31st December. The assault was however repulsed. General Montgomery was killed and Colonel Arnold wounded. The Americans withdrew the remainder of their forces, but still maintained the siege until spring. The besiegers, too, having lost many men by disease were not able to maintain themselves. They therefore fell back in May, 1776; but were vigorously followed by Carleton, who had received reinforcements. He pressed them



Walls of Quebec.*

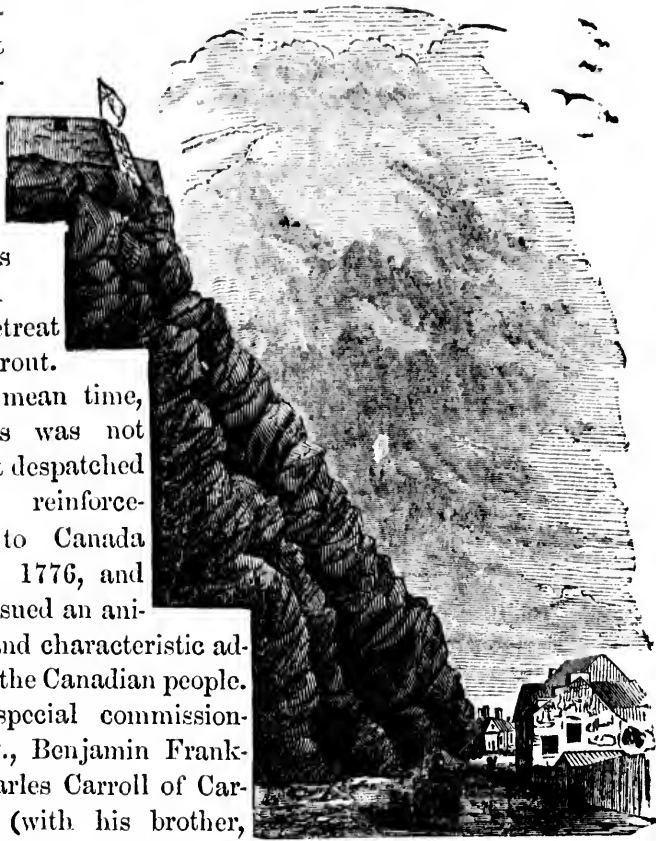
* Explanation of the Engraving:—A, the St. Charles River; B, the St. Lawrence; *a*, the Wolfe and Montcalm Monument; *b*, the spot where General Montgomery was killed; *c*, the place where Colonel Arnold was wounded; *f*, Durham Terrace. The gates are indicated by name.

QUESTIONS.—Was the invasion of Canada by the Americans successful? What did Gen. Carleton do in the emergency? Give a sketch of the siege of Quebec by the Americans. Point out the various places in the engraving.

so closely that he captured their artillery stores, and thus changed their retreat into a rout.

In the mean time, Congress was not idle. It despatched further reinforcements to Canada early in 1776, and again issued an animated and characteristic address to the Canadian people. Three special commissioners, viz., Benjamin Franklin, Charles Carroll of Carrollton, (with his brother, Bishop Carroll,) and Samuel

Chase, were also despatched to treat with the Canadians. Their embassy signally failed; for the inhabitants had by this time learned by experience to regard the Americans as enemies rather than as friends. Strong efforts were also made to detach the Iroquois from the British standard, but without effect. Under the able chieftanship of the brave Joseph Brant, or Thayendanege, the Iroquois or Six Nation Indians remained fast and loyal allies of king George III.



Face of the Citadel, Quebec.

QUESTIONS.—After the siege of Quebec, what followed? How did Gen. Carleton follow up his success? What did the American Congress do? Was the disloyal appeal successful? What is said of the Iroquois?

8
of the
Reta
In on
the A
Cana
Briti
troop
been
out fr
reinfe
ton's
ed in
camp
once
sume
erican
was se
of Car
from t
plain;

* Jose
born on
he beca
Iroquoi
English
settleme
of Sir W
in Conn
from th
obtaine
territor
mouth.
after hir
townshi
Mohaw

QUEST
did Gen
invaders

8. *Determination of the Americans to Retain Canada.*—

In order to dislodge the Americans from Canada, about 8,000 British and German troops, which had been promptly sent out from England to reinforce Gen. Carleton's army, arrived in Canada. The campaign was at once vigorously resumed, and the American invading force was soon driven out of Canada, and even



Thayendanega (Joseph Brant).*

from the forts of Ticonderoga and Crown Point on Lake Champlain; but owing to Gen. Burgoyne's bad generalship in following

* Joseph Brant (Thayendanega), a Mohawk Indian, of pure blood, was born on the banks of the Ohio, in 1742. In the revolutionary war of 1776 he became the ally of the English; and, as a prominent chief among the Iroquois, he influenced several cantons of that celebrated league to join the English standard. During the war, he was chiefly engaged on the border settlements of New York and Pennsylvania, in conjunction with the son of Sir Wm. Johnson and Colonel Butler. He received a good education in Connecticut; and, during the revolution, held a colonel's commission from the King. At the close of the war, he removed to Canada, and obtained for the Six Nations, from Governor Haldimand, the grant of a territory on the Grand River, six miles in width, from its source to its mouth. The town of Brantford, or Brant's ford, on the river, was named after him; as was also the county of Brant, in the same locality, and the township of Thayendanega, on the Bay of Quinté, where a number of the Mohawks had settled. He translated the whole of the Gospel of St.

QUESTIONS.—How many troops were sent out from England? What did Gen. Carleton do with them? How did the campaign against the invaders end? Give a sketch of the chief Thayendanega, or Joseph Brant.



General Burgoyne.*

up the enemy, without proper support or guarded lines of retreat, it ended disastrously for the British arms. Burgoyne was compelled to surrender to General Gates at Saratoga in the State of New York, in October, 1777.

9. *Progress of Events in Canada, 1777-1783.*—Quiet being restored to the province, Carleton sought to effect various reforms. The council resumed its sittings, and passed several useful measures. In 1778, Sir Guy Carleton returned to England, and was replaced by General Haldimand as Lieutenant-Governor. His *régime* was rather more repressive than popular. This he considered necessary, as the times were critical; for the Americans, who were generally successful in the revolutionary contest with England, had both sympathizers and emissaries throughout Canada. Gen. Haldimand remained five years, and was then succeeded by Henry Hamilton, Esq., as *locum tenens*, who in turn was followed by Colonel Hope.

10. *The Independence of the United States.*—The surrender of

Mark into the Mohawk language; and in many ways exerted himself to promote the temporal and spiritual welfare of his people. He was greatly respected and beloved by them and by the English. He visited England in 1783; and died near Wellington Square, Upper Canada, on November 24, 1807, aged 65 years. His remains were removed to the Mohawk village, Grand River, and interred near the church which he had erected there. His son John subsequently led the Mohawks at the victorious battle of Queenston, in October, 1812. He was a noble specimen of a Christian Indian, and did much to alleviate the horrors of Indian warfare during the period of the American revolutionary war.

* John Burgoyne, a general in the British army, was sent out to America to aid in suppressing the revolt of thirteen colonies. He was successful at Ticonderoga, but disastrously failed in the rest of his campaign, as General Braddock had done before him, and from similar causes. He afterwards became an M.P., and died in 1792. See Note * on page 83.

QUESTIONS.—How did Gen. Burgoyne's campaign end? Why did he fail? Give a sketch of his career. Trace the progress of events in Canada during the years 1777 to 1782. What governors succeeded Gen. Carleton?

seven thousand British troops, under General Cornwallis, to an allied French and American force of twelve thousand, at Yorktown in the State of Virginia, on the 19th of October, 1782, virtually decided the war; and in September, 1783, Great Britain, by treaty, recognized the independence of her thirteen revolted colonies. Not less than 25,000 loyalists, who had adhered



General Lord Cornwallis.*

to the royal cause in these colonies, were forced to quit their homes. Their property was confiscated; they themselves were proscribed, and were compelled to seek protection under the British flag in England, the West Indies, Canada, Nova Scotia, and New Brunswick. The Iroquois Indians had also to leave their old wigwams and camping-grounds, and to accept from the British government a home in Upper Canada.

11. *Proposed Changes in the Constitution.*—In 1786, Sir Guy Carleton, then Lord Dorchester, returned as Governor-General. The political discussions which had for the previous two or three years been going on with a view to popularize the public administration and to introduce representative government, were now revived. Petitions for and against the proposed changes were sent to England; and various schemes for the settlement of the question were, under strong influence, sub-

* Charles Marquis Cornwallis was born in 1738. He successfully served under the British Generals Howe and Clinton in the first years of the American revolutionary war. He held a separate command in 1780; and after gaining several victories over the Americans, he was at length besieged by them at Yorktown, and, after a gallant defence, was compelled to capitulate. He was twice afterwards Governor-General of India, and once Lord-Lieutenant of Ireland. In India, he defeated Tippoo Saib, and in Ireland suppressed the rebellion of 1798. He was a humane, brave, and honourable man. He died in 1805, aged 67 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the surrender of Gen. Cornwallis to a combined French and American army at Yorktown. Sketch his career. What is said of the Loyalists? What course did Lord Dorchester pursue?

mitted to the British ministry. At length, Lord Grenville, the Colonial minister, sent to Lord Dorchester, in 1789, the draft of a new constitution for Canada, which proposed to divide the Province of Quebec into Upper and Lower Canada, and to give to each section a Legislative Council and House of



William Pitt.*

Assembly, with a local government of its own. Lord Dorchester opposed the division of the province; but, nevertheless, the bill was introduced into the House of Commons by the younger Pitt, and, after much opposition, was finally passed in 1791.† Thus, under the celebrated constitutional act of this year, representative government in a modified form was for the first time introduced into the

two Canadas simultaneously, and gave very great satisfaction.

CHAPTER XII.

THE UNITED EMPIRE LOYALISTS OF AMERICA.*

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Principles, Conduct, and Treatment of the U. E. Loyalists.

1. Distinctive Principles of the American Loyalists of 1776.—2. Conduct and Treatment of the Loyalists.—3. Dispersion of the Loyalists.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—*Although the following chapter, on the United Empire Loyalists, does not form any consecutive part of the History of Canada, we would not advise the Teacher to omit any part of it when going over the History with his pupils.*]

1. *Distinctive Principles of the American Loyalists.*—As the object of the American revolutionists was to destroy the unity

* William Pitt, the second son of the great Lord Chatham, was born in 1759. He entered Parliament in 1781, and in 1783 was appointed Prime Minister by the King. He was one of the most eminent statesmen of Britain. He died in 1806, aged only 47 years.

† "It was in a debate on this bill, that Fox and Burke severed the ties of friendship which had existed between them for a long period. The

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the proposed changes in the constitution of Canada. What is said of William Pitt, and of Fox and Burke, in the discussion on the subject? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter XII.

of the British Empire, so the object of the American Loyalists was to preserve it. Hence, they took the name of United Empire Loyalists. Moreover, they deeply felt that loyalty to the sovereign was the first and highest duty of the subjects of a monarchy like that of England;—that it was enjoined upon them by all the strong influences and associations of national tradition, early teaching, and natural instinct, as well as by the divine authority of God himself, whose injunction in the apostolic precept was as imperative upon them no less to “fear God” than to “honour the king,” and to “be subject unto the higher powers; for there is no power but of God”—and they felt that “whosoever, therefore, resisteth the power, resisteth the ordinance of God.” Animated by these patriotic and Christian views, they nobly took up arms to maintain them, and never laid them down until they were vanquished.

2. *Conduct and Treatment of the Loyalists.*—The United Empire Loyalists, on the final failure of the royal cause in America, nobly abandoned their possessions, their homes, and firesides in the thirteen colonies, or United States, that they might still enjoy, though as exiles, protection and freedom under the British flag. Their heroic fortitude, under the unparalleled sufferings and privation which they and their families endured, in leaving their comfortable homes for a life in the distant wilderness, has rendered their memory dear to all British Americans; while the unrelenting severity of the acts of perpetual banishment and confiscation against them, passed by the several States which they had left, inflicted deep and unmerited wrongs upon young and old alike, and doomed them to years of privation and hardship in a new, unsettled country. The generous amnesty even of Cromwell under the protectorate, and the remarkable “act of oblivion” for political offences in the time of Charles II, must ever remain in striking and chivalrous contrast to the heartless refusal of the victorious “thirteen free and independent States” to restore the rights and privileges of their conquered fellow-colonists at the close of their successful revolution.*

3. *Dispersion of the Loyalists.*—Of the 25,000 American scene was one of the most interesting that ever occurred in the House of Commons. Fox, overcome by his emotions, wept aloud.”—*Sabine's American Loyalists* (1857), page 89. (Sabine is an American writer.)

*“The State Legislatures, generally, continued in a course of hostile action [to the U. E. Loyalists], and treated the conscientious and the pure,

QUESTIONS.—Who were the United Empire Loyalists? By what principles were they guided in the revolution? Sketch their conduct, and their treatment by the conquerors. What does Sabine say of the latter?

colonists, which, at the close of the war, remained true to the British cause, about 10,000 came to Canada, the same number went to Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and other colonies, and the remainder to England. As an acknowledgment of their eminent services and devoted loyalty, about £3,300,000 sterling were distributed among them as a compensation in part for their losses. Each one of them also received, as a free gift from the Crown, from 200 to 5,500 acres of land in Canada or Nova Scotia, according to their military rank and services. This liberal grant was, however, no equivalent for the ease and comfort and worldly prosperity which many of the loyalists had freely sacrificed at the call of duty in the service of their king and country. Some of the more prominent of the loyalists were appointed to offices of emolument. Most of them lived to a good old age, respected and honoured by the community.* Although, in most cases, they suffered incredible hardships in their efforts to reach the maritime British provinces and to penetrate into the interior of Upper Canada, they proved themselves when there to be invaluable pioneers and colonists. By their early labours, their example of thrift and industry, and their sterling loyalty, they have largely contributed to the prosperity and stability of the British American colonies. The race has now passed away; but the early impress which they gave to the institutions of the provinces, and to the character of their descendants, is yet strongly felt among us. Their principles of honour and traditions of loyalty will long remain, it is hoped, to be among those potent historical influences for good which we possess, and which often mould the character and after-life of nations.

and the unprincipled and corrupt, with the same indiscrimination as they had done during the struggle. In some parts of the country, there really appears to have been a *determination* to place these misguided, but then humbled men, *beyond the pale of human sympathy*. In one legislative body, a petition from one banished, praying to be allowed to return to their homes, was *rejected without a division*; and a law was passed which *denied to such as had remained within the State, and to all others who had opposed the revolution, the privilege of voting at elections, or of holding office*. In another State, *all who had sought royal protection were declared to be aliens, and to be incapable of claiming and holding property within it, and their return was forbidden*. Other legislatures refused to repeal such of their [repressive and confiscation] laws as conflicted with the conditions of the treaty of peace."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, page 86.

* "Nothing in the history [of the U. E. Loyalists] is more remarkable than their longevity. Several lived to enjoy their half-pay upwards of half a century; and so common were the ages of eighty-five, ninety, and even of ninety-five years, that the saying 'Loyalist half-pay officers never die' was often repeated."—*Sabine's American Loyalists*, page 63.

QUESTIONS.—How does this treatment compare with the amnesties of Cromwell and of Charles II? Where did the Loyalists go after their banishment? Give a sketch of their after-career. What of their longevity?

1. Wh
Fe
Up
tur
dan

Lower

1. .
enterp
fisher.

2. .
Labra
Labra
Bay o
on th
and M
and U

3.

the so
Uppe
grand
navig
two
east,
the N
the L
Lawr
ing in

QUE
ists in
is it no

CHAPTER XIII.

Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

(Continued from page 118).

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. What Lower Canada is noted for.—2. Its Boundaries.—3. Its Physical Features.—4. Its Principal Rivers.—5. Its Inhabitants.—6. What Upper Canada is noted for.—7. Its Boundaries.—8. Its Physical Features.—9. Its Principal Lakes.—10. Its Principal Rivers.—11. Its Boundary-Rivers.—12. Its Inhabitants.

I. LOWER CANADA.

Lower Canada is about 600 miles in length, from east to west, and 300 in breadth, from north to south.

1. *Noted For.*—Lower Canada is noted for the exploring enterprise of its founders; for its commercial importance, fisheries, mineral wealth, beautiful scenery, and noble rivers.

2. *Boundaries.*—Lower Canada is bounded on the north by Labrador and the Hudson Bay Territory; on the east by Labrador and the Gulf of St. Lawrence; on the south by the Bay of Chaleurs, New Brunswick, and the State of Maine; on the south-east by the States of New Hampshire, Vermont, and New York; and on the south-west by the River Ottawa and Upper Canada. (See the map on page 193.)

3. *Physical Features.*—Though not a mountainous country, the scenery of Lower Canada is more picturesque than that of Upper Canada. Its rivers and mountain-ridges are also on a grander scale. Fogs frequently prevail in autumn on its navigable waters. The lower St. Lawrence is enclosed by two mountain-ranges, viz., the Appalachian, on the south-east, running along the peninsula of Gaspé (there known as the Notre Dame Mountains), and extending to Alabama; and the Laurentian, on the north, running from the Gulf of St. Lawrence to Cape Tourment, near Quebec, and thence extending into the interior north-west of Lake Superior.

QUESTIONS.—How should the conduct and character of the U. E. Loyalists influence us? Give the length and breadth of Lower Canada. For what is it noted? Trace its boundaries. Describe its chief physical features?

4. *The Principal Rivers* are the St. Lawrence, the Saguenay, the St. Maurice, the Ottawa and its tributaries in part, the Richelieu, the St. Francis, the Batiscan, the Ste. Anne, and the Chaudière.

5. *The Inhabitants*.—The first settlers in Lower Canada were chiefly from the central parts of France; but in the Eastern Townships, the inhabitants are chiefly of British origin, including descendants of United Empire Loyalists and American settlers.

II. UPPER CANADA.

Upper Canada is about 750 miles in length, from south-east to north-west and from 200 to 300 miles in width. Its north-west boundaries are, however, indefinite.

6. *Noted For*.—Upper Canada is noted for its great lakes; for its agricultural products, fertile soil, and petroleum-springs.

7. *Boundaries*.—Upper Canada, which presents the appearance of a triangular peninsula, is bounded on the north and the east by the Hudson Bay Territory and the River Ottawa; on the south and the south-east by Lake Superior, Georgian Bay, Lakes Ontario and Erie, and the River St. Lawrence; and on the west by the Western Indian Territories, Lakes Superior, Huron, and Ste. Claire, or St. Clair, and the rivers St. Clair and Detroit. (See map on page 193.)

8. *Physical Features*.—The surface is gently undulating, rather than mountainous, and is diversified by rivers and lakes. The ridge of high land which enters the province at the Falls of Niagara, extends to Hamilton, and is continued to Owen Sound, thence along the peninsula to Cabot Head, and through the Manitoulin Islands, Lake Huron. The Laurentian Hills run westward from the Thousand Islands (in the St. Lawrence near the foot of Lake Ontario), and extend north of Lake Simcoe, forming the coast of Georgian Bay and Lake Huron. The water-sheds of Upper Canada are not in general

QUESTIONS.—Name the principal rivers of Lower Canada. Who first settled Lower Canada? What is the length and breadth of Upper Canada? Of what shape is it? Trace its boundaries. Sketch its physical features.

sharp ri
which t
the wat
its lake
Simcoe,
into Lal
9. *T*
form the
contain
length i
cover an

Name

Superior
Huron, an
gian Bay
St. Clair
Erie.....
Ontario..

10. *T*
and its
tawan, t
gian Bay
the Syd
Grand i
Trent an
ara, into

11. *T*
United S
St. Cla
and bet

12. *T*
emigran
United

QUEST
is said of
boundary

sharp ridges, but rather level, and often marshy surfaces, on which the streams interlock. A main water-shed separates the waters of the Ottawa from those of the St. Lawrence and its lakes; a minor one divides the streams flowing into Lake Simcoe, Georgian Bay, and Lake Huron, from those flowing into Lakes Erie and Ontario.

9. *The Principal Lakes.*—The magnificent lakes which form the southern and western boundaries of Upper Canada, contain nearly half the fresh water on the globe. Their total length is 1,085 miles, and, exclusive of Lake Michigan, they cover an area of upwards of 70,000 square miles.

Names.	Length in Miles.	Greatest Width in Miles.	Area in Eng. Sq. Miles.	Height in Feet above Sea.	Mean Depth in Feet.
Superior	355	160	32,000	601	900
Huron, and Georgian Bay.....	280	190	25,000	578	800
St. Claire.....	20	36	360	571	20
Erie.....	240	80	9,500	566	100
Ontario.....	180	65	6,000	234	500

10. *The Principal Rivers* in Upper Canada are the Ottawa and its tributaries; the Spanish, the French, the Maganétawan, the Muskoka, and the Nottawasaga, falling into Georgian Bay; the Saugeen and the Aux Sables, into Lake Huron; the Sydenham and the Thames, into Lake Ste. Claire; the Grand into Lake Erie, through the County of Haldimand; the Trent and the Moira, into the Bay of Quinté; and the Niagara, into Lake Ontario.

11. *The Boundary Rivers* between Upper Canada and the United States are the St. Clair (named by De la Salle, page 62, Ste. Claire), the Detroit, the Niagara, and the St. Lawrence; and between Upper and Lower Canada, the Ottawa.

12. *The Inhabitants.*—Upper Canada was chiefly settled by emigrants from the British Isles, and by descendants of the United Empire Loyalists of America.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the two chief water-sheds in Upper Canada. What is said of the great lakes? Give the names of the principal rivers and boundary-rivers of Upper Canada. Who originally settled Upper Canada?

CHAPTER XIV.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, SECOND PERIOD: FROM THE SEPARATION OF THE PROVINCES UNTIL THE CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1812, *i. e.* FROM 1792 TO 1814. (Continued from p. 118.)

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Parliamentary Government—Slavery—Political Progress—War of 1812.

1. Parliamentary Government inaugurated.—2. Settlement of Upper Canada.—3. First Upper Canada Parliament.—4. Lieutenant-Governor J. G. Simcoe.—5. Slavery abolished.—6. Seat of Government of Upper Canada.—7. Sir Guy Carleton (Lord Dorchester).—8. Eloquent Years' Quiet.—9. War with the United States foreshadowed.—10. Sir James Craig's Administration.—11. Sir James Prevost's Powers.—12. American Declaration of War in 1812.—13. Opening of the Campaign of 1812.—14. Battle of Queenston.—15. Close of the Campaign of 1812.—16. Reverses and Successes of the next Campaign.—17. Battle of Chrysler's Farm.—18. Campaign of 1813 in Lower Canada.—19. Campaign of 1814.—20. Battle of Lundy's Lane.—21. Close of the War.

I. LOWER AND UPPER CANADA.

1. *Parliamentary Government inaugurated.*—In June, 1792, the first parliamentary elections were held in Lower Canada; fifty members were returned. The Legislative Council, appointed by the Crown, consisted of fifteen members. On the 17th of December, the new Legislature was opened by General Alured Clarke, the Lieutenant-Governor, in the absence of Lord Dorchester, who remained in England until 1793. Eight acts were passed by both houses, and the session terminated in May. During the second session five bills were passed. The revenue of Lower Canada this year was only \$25,000. During the third session, of 1795, accounts of the revenue and expenditure, which now reached \$42,000, were first laid before the Legislature. Of the revenue, Upper Canada was only entitled to one eighth. Lord Dorchester continued in Canada until 1796. During his administration many useful acts were passed, and

QUESTIONS.—Of what does Chapter XIV treat? Name the principal subjects of it. When were the first elections held in Lower Canada? When and by whom was the Legislature opened? What was done by it?

general
latent h
Canada
sympat
caused
measur

2. S
ada, ha
whom
subsist
upon th
with th
was he
this sep
opposed
Canada
ruled b
Act of
feudal t
soccage
afterwa
Lunenb
Upper
Midlan
afterwa

3. T
ark (N
Govern

* Lieut
born in

QUEST
stringen
By whom

THE SEPA-
THE WAR
rom p. 118.)

gress—

f Upper Ca.
nt-Governor
ent of Upper
leven Years'
0. Sir James
—12. Ameri-
Campaign of
gn of 1812.—
7. Battle of
a.—19. Cam-
f the War.

une, 1792,
r Canada;
ouncil, ap-
s. On the
by General
nce of Lord
Eight acts
minated in
sed. The
0. During
and expen-
before the
ly entitled
until 1796.
assed, and

he principal
er Canada?
done by it?

general prosperity was enjoyed. Nevertheless, symptoms of latent hostility between the French and British races in Lower Canada were now and then apparent; while the remains of sympathy with the American revolutionary agitation of 1776 caused the legislature to pass some stringent precautionary measures to ensure public tranquillity.

2. *Settlement of Upper Canada.*—The western part of Canada, having been chiefly settled by United Empire Loyalists, to whom the British Government had liberally granted land and subsistence for two years, it was deemed advisable to confer upon these settlers a distinct government, more in accordance with their political predilections. The tenure by which land was held in both parts of the province may also have suggested this separation. The Governor-General, Lord Dorchester, had opposed the division of the province into Upper and Lower Canada as unwise and impolitic; but his objections were overruled by the Imperial Government, and the "Constitutional Act of 1791" was passed. In the east, the seigniorial or feudal tenure prevailed; in the west, that of free and common soccage (freehold). In 1788, Lord Dorchester divided what afterwards became Upper Canada into four districts, viz: Lunenburg, Mecklenburg, Nassau, and Hesse. In 1792, the Upper Canada Legislature changed these names into Eastern, Midland, Home, and Western. Many of these districts were afterwards divided, and their number increased to twenty.

3. *The First Upper Canada Parliament* was opened at Newark (Niagara) on the 17th September, 1792, by its first Lieutenant-Governor, Col. J. G. Simcoe.* The House of Assembly con-



* Lieutenant-Governor John Graves Simcoe, colonel in the army, was born in England in 1752. His military career commenced at nineteen, and

QUESTIONS.—Describe the state of feeling in Lower Canada. Why were stringent measures passed? What is said of the divisions of the Province? By whom was the first Upper Canada Parliament opened? Sketch his life.

sisted of only sixteen members, and the Legislative Council of seven. Eight bills were passed; one of which provided for the introduction of the English Civil Law. Trial by jury was also specially introduced, by statute, in that year. The English Criminal Law, though previously introduced into the entire province of Quebec, by Imperial statute, was also (as it stood in 1792), by Provincial statute, made the law of the land in Upper Canada. In 1792 the Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who resided near Halifax, as Commander-in-Chief of the British Forces in America, visited Canada, and was entertained by Governor Simcoe at Newark (Niagara).

4. *Slavery Abolished.*—In 1793, slavery was abolished in Upper Canada; and in 1803, Chief Justice Osgoode decided that it was also incompatible with the laws of Lower Canada.

5. *The Seat of Government* in Upper Canada was, in 1796, removed from Newark (Niagara), to York (Toronto), by Governor Simcoe. He was anxious that the capital should be fixed as far as possible from the frontier, and had even proposed London as an eligible site. Lord Dorchester strongly advocated Frontenac (Kingston) as the site of the capital; but the Lieutenant-Governor's opinion in favour of York prevailed.

6. *Eleven Years' Comparative Quiet.*—General Prescott* succeeded Lord Dorchester as Governor-General in Lower Canada

he commanded the Queen's Rangers (Hussars) during the American revolutionary war. In 1790 he was elected to Parliament; and in 1792, he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada. He induced many of the United Empire Loyalists to settle in Upper Canada, and sought in every way to promote the prosperity of the Province. He constructed Yonge Street as a military road to the lake which now bears his name. He was appointed Governor of St. Domingo in 1794, and a Lieutenant-General in 1798. He died on his return to England, in 1806, aged 54.

* Governor Robert Prescott was born in England in 1725. He served in America during the revolutionary war, afterwards in the West Indies. He was governor of Canada in 1796. He died in 1815, aged 89 years. Prescott, capital of the county of Grenville, is named after him.

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the proceedings of the Upper Canada Legislature. What is said of the Duke of Kent? When was slavery abolished? What is said about the seat of government? Give a sketch of General Prescott.

in 179
Sir R.
On his
tive Co
eleven
Canada
grantin
Jesuit
ment of
tion. H
lower
postal
the ship

9. W
between
for some
claim of
foreign
quence
trade wi
Napoleo
English
loyal fee
called ou
call was
prehensi
cans, we
command

* Major
born in the
Copenhag
during the
1812, he m
Hull, to su
Americans
gallantly l

QUESTIO
Dorchester
of 1812? H

Council
vided for
by jury
ar. The
into the
so (as it
the land
er to the
Chief of
as enter-

ished in
e decided
Canada.
in 1796,
by Gov-
ould be
proposed
ly advo-
but the
ailed.
ott* suc-
Canada

can revo-
2, he was
many of
ought in
nstructed
his name.
utenant-
d 54.
served in
t Indies.
59 years.

gislature.
? What
Prescott.

in 1796. After remaining three years, he was followed by Sir R. S. Milnes, as Lieutenant-Governor of Lower Canada. On his retiring, in 1805, Hon. Thomas Dunn, senior Legislative Councillor, acted as administrator until 1807. During these eleven years little of public or historical interest occurred in Canada. The local discussions related chiefly to abuses in land-granting by the government, the application of the forfeited Jesuit estates to the purposes of education, and the establishment of a Royal Institution for the promotion of public education. Efforts were also made to improve the navigation of the lower St. Lawrence, to regulate the currency, extend the postal communication, ameliorate the prison system, promote the shipping interest, &c.

9. *War with the United States foreshadowed.*—The relations between England and the United States had been unsatisfactory for some time. This state of things arose out of the persistent claim of the British Government to the *Right of Search* of foreign vessels for British naval deserters, and also in consequence of orders in Council (prohibiting neutral vessels to trade with France) which England passed in retaliation for Napoleon's famous Milan and Berlin Decrees, directed against English trade and commerce. In order to demonstrate the loyal feeling of the French Canadians, Governor Dunn, in 1807, called out and organized the militia of Lower Canada. The call was promptly and cordially responded to; so that any apprehensions as to their loyalty in case of war with the Americans, were set at rest. Col. (afterwards Sir) Isaac Brock, the commandant, also strengthened the defences of Quebec.*

* Major-General Sir Isaac Brock, "the Hero of Upper Canada," was born in the island of Guernsey, in 1770. He served under Lord Nelson, at Copenhagen. In 1811, he held the office of President of Upper Canada during the absence of Governor Gore in England. On the 16th August, 1812, he made an attack on Detroit, and caused the American General, Hull, to surrender, with 2,500 men. On the 13th October, he attacked the Americans on the Heights of Queenston, but fell early in the action, while gallantly leading his men, aged 42.

QUESTIONS.—Who, during eleven years, were the successors of Lord Dorchester? Sketch the history of those years. What led to the war of 1812? How was Lower Canada tested? Give a sketch of Sir Isaac Brock,

10. *Sir James Craig's Administration.*—In the same year (1807) Sir James Craig arrived as Governor-General. He remained until 1811, when Mr. Dunn again held the office *pro tem.* At this time the question of excluding the Judges from seats in the House of Assembly, was warmly discussed. Sir James indiscreetly interfered with the House and some of its members in this matter, but he was overruled by the Home Government, and at length assented to a bill excluding the Judges from the legislature. In order to bring the Government officials more under the control of the Legislature, the House of Assembly, in 1810, proposed to assume the payment of their salaries, and thus render them amenable to Parliament.

11. *Sir George Prevost's Policy.*—In 1811, Sir Geo. Prevost* was transferred from Nova Scotia to Canada, as Governor-General. He entered heartily into the feelings of the Canadian people, and sought to remove all immediate causes of discontent. In the meantime the relations between England and the United States continued to be most unfriendly. At length a decisive act of hostility occurred in the capture, on the 16th May, 1812, by an American frigate of 44 guns, of a British sloop of 18 guns. In view of the impending hostilities, the Legislature of Lower Canada passed an Act, with great unanimity, empowering the Governor-General to embody the whole militia-force of the country, endorsed his "army bills" to the extent of \$1,000,000, and voted \$60,000 per annum for five years,† to aid in the defence of the Province.

II. THE WAR OF 1812.

12. *American Declaration of War in 1812.*—In order to excite Congress to a prompt declaration of war against Great Britain,

* Sir George Prevost was born in England in 1767. He was a distinguished officer before he came to Canada. He held the position of Governor of Nova Scotia in 1808, and that of Canada during the war of 1812. He died in 1817, aged 50 years.

† Coffin's "Chronicle of the War of 1812," Montreal, John Lovell, 1864.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Sir James Craig's administration. What occurrences took place while Sir George Prevost was governor? Sketch his career. How did Lower Canada respond to his war policy?

Presid
a seri
to Gov
in the
allege
Engla
eviden
tegrity
under
again
Prevo
and to
a view
olic cl
restor
joyed

13.

Canad
Upper
for th
Rober
of Ge
Comm
and, c
Fort M
miles
Huron
cans,
over
herst
comm
Mong
plies
the A

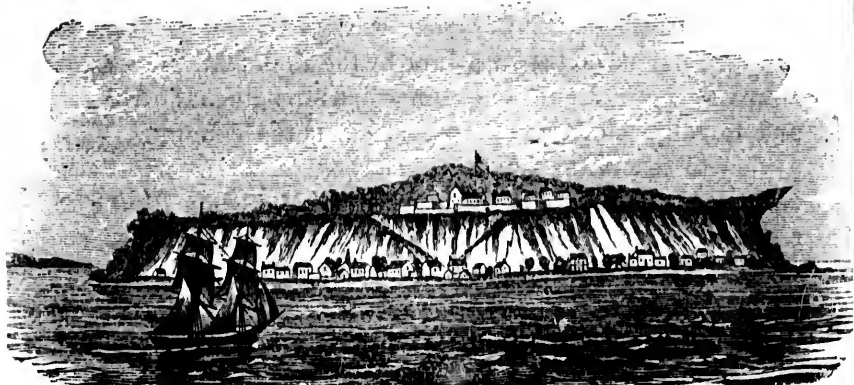
QUE
land?
the po

President Madison purchased from a Capt. Henry for \$500,000, a series of confidential letters, which the captain had written to Governor Craig's secretary in Canada, on the state of feeling in the New England States, against the projected war, and the alleged wish of these States to again ally themselves with England. The President laid these letters before Congress, as evidence of the secret machinations of England against the integrity of the Republic; they produced the desired result, and, under the authority of Congress, war was forthwith declared against England on the 18th June by the President. Sir George Prevost set out at once to examine and strengthen the frontier, and to rally the population in defence of the country. With a view to secure the active co-operation of the Roman Catholic clergy, he agreed to the proposition of Bishop Plessis to restore to that church the right and status which it had enjoyed in Lower Canada prior to the conquest.

13. *Opening of the Campaign of 1812.*—At this time Lower Canada contained an estimated population of 200,000, and Upper Canada, 80,000. The campaign opened inauspiciously for the Americans. Besides some minor captures, Captain Roberts (commandant at the Isle St. Joseph), by direction of General Sir Isaac Brock (then Lieutenant-Governor and Commander of the British forces in Upper Canada), surprised, and, on the 17th July, 1812, with great gallantry captured, Fort Michilimackinac, situated on an island of that name, forty miles from St. Joseph, and lying in the strait between Lake Huron and Lake Michigan. Five days previously, the Americans, having collected an invading army at Detroit, crossed over to Sandwich and advanced against Fort Malden at Amherstburgh. To create a diversion in their favour, the British commander despatched a small force across the Detroit River to Mongauga to intercept the American communications for supplies southwards. This plan succeeded; for on the 7th of August the Americans retreated to Detroit. In the meantime General

QUESTIONS.—How was Congress induced to declare war against England? What steps were taken in Canada to meet the emergency? Give the population of the two Canadas. How was the campaign opened?

Brock arrived, and on the 11th August crossed over to Springwell and advanced on Detroit. On the 16th, the American general, Hull, capitulated without firing a gun. Thirty-three pieces of cannon and 2,500 men fell into the hands of the British. Leaving a garrison at Detroit, General Brock returned to the fort at Niagara. An armistice in the meantime prevented further hostilities until September.*



The Island and Fort of Michilimackinac (Mackinac).

14. *Battle of Queenston*.—Early in October, 1812, another American invading army, under General Van Ranselaer, having been collected opposite Queenston, on the Niagara frontier, General Brock prepared promptly and effectually to repel it. On the 11th of October, the American troops attempted to cross the Niagara River, but failed for want of boats. On the night of the 12th, however, they succeeded; and on the morning of the 13th, General Brock, who had hastened up from Niagara, (not knowing that the Americans had already effected a landing above Queenston,) directed the detachment which had been posted on the heights with a battery of two guns, to descend and support the force which

* Sir James C. Smyth's *Precis of the Wars in Canada*, London, 1862.

QUESTIONS.—How was Detroit captured? Why were hostilities suspended? Give an account of the battle of Queenston Heights. Who were in command of the British and American forces? What did Gen. Brock do?

was
of th
cans,
posse
Brock
volu
unfo
utter
ston
Colo

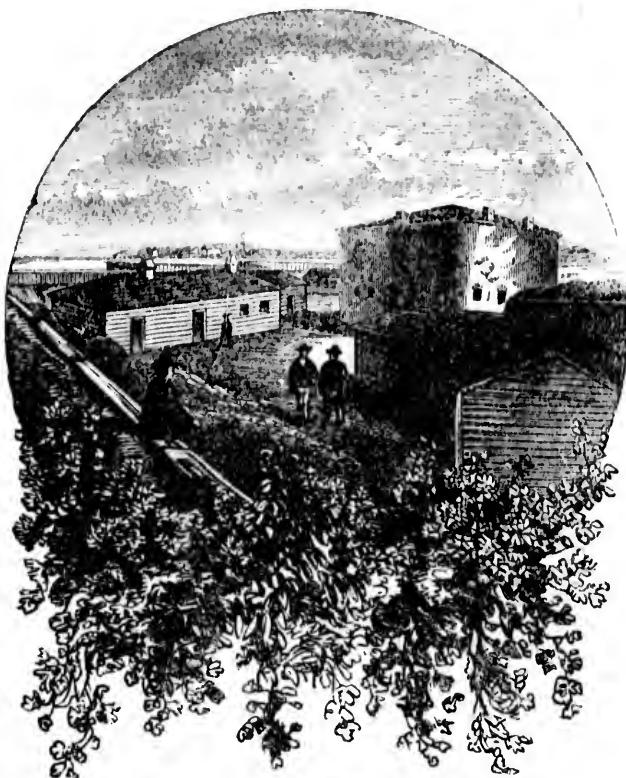
Qu
did
Wer

o Spring
American
irty-three
ls of the
returned
time pre-



another
aer, hav-
frontier,
o repel it.
mpted to
ats. On
d on the
hastened
ans had
cted the
th a bat-
e which
a, 1862.

ilities sus-
o were in
rock do?



Interior of Fort Missasauga, at Niagara.

was endeavouring to dispute the landing of the main body of the invaders on the bank, near the village. The Americans, who had already landed above Queenston, at once took possession of the heights. Perceiving his mistake, General Brock endeavoured to retake the position which he had thus voluntarily lost; and, in ascending the hill to do so, he was unfortunately struck by a shot and killed, just as he had uttered the words, "Push on, brave York Volunteers!" A stone now marks the spot where he fell. His aide-de-camp Colonel Macdonnell, while leading the volunteers, was also

QUESTIONS.—Name the fort shown in the engraving. What mistake did Gen. Brock make? How did the Americans take advantage of it? Were they successful? What did General Brock do in the emergency?



Brock's Monument; also a Cenotaph marking the Spot on which he Fell.

shot down. The command then devolved on Gen. Sheaffe,* who, coming from Niagara by a circuitous route, gallantly carried the heights, and compelled nearly 1,000 of the invaders to lay down their arms, many of whom, during the battle, were

* General Sir Roger H. Sheaffe was born in Boston, Massachusetts, in 1763. He entered the army in 1778, and served in Ireland, Holland, and Canada. For his eminent services at Queenston Heights he was created a Baronet. He died in 1851, aged 88 years.

QUESTIONS.—What befell the brave Brock? Point out in the engraving the spot on which he fell, and also his monument. Who took command on General Brock's death? Give a sketch of his career. What did he do?

drive
mour
deeds

15.

cans
river
mont
Laco
Dear

under

India

the S

fort a

Amer

larger

they

but c

ended

of the

16.

next

paign

victor

the A

near

also a

succe

* Th

during

† Co

Quebe

Canad

Chatea

er of t

QUE

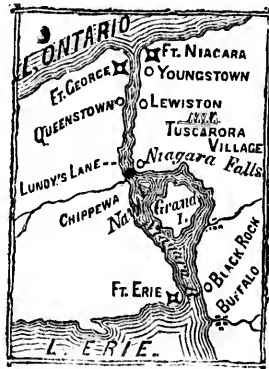
the clo

map.

driven over the heights into the river. Upper Canada deeply mourned Sir Isaac Brock, and has twice honoured his noble deeds by erecting a monument to his memory.*

15. *Close of the Campaign of 1812.*—In November, the Americans under General Smyth, in attempting to cross the Niagara river above the falls, were driven back with loss. In the same month, Gen. Dearborn pushed forward from Lake Champlain to Lacolle. Col. de Salaberry† went with a force to meet him, but Dearborn retired after an encounter with a small picket-force under Col. McKay. The capture by the Americans of the Indian village of St. Regis, where the boundary-line touches the St. Lawrence, was counterbalanced by the taking of their fort at Salmon River, near St. Regis. At sea, however, the Americans were more successful. With larger ships and more men and guns, they captured several British vessels; but on land, the campaign of 1812 ended at all points in the discomfiture of the American invading armies.

16. *Reverses and Successes of the next Campaign.*—In 1813, the campaign was opened in January by a victory gained by Col. Proctor over the American troops at Brownstown, near Detroit. In May and July he also attacked them, but with doubtful success. In April and May, York (Toronto) and Fort George



Niagara Frontier.

* The first monument, erected in 1815-6, was blown up by an insurgent during the rebellion troubles of 1837-8. The second was erected in 1859.

† Colonel Charles Michel de Salaberry, C.B., was born at Beauport near Quebec in 1778. He first served in the West Indies, and afterwards in Canada. He defeated and drove back the American invading army at Chateauguay in 1813. For his services he was created a military commander of the Bath, and a medal was struck for his victory at Chateauguay.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Brock's monuments? Give a sketch of the close of the campaign of 1812. Point out each place marked on the map. Sketch Colonel de Salaberry. How did the next campaign open?

(at Niagara) were captured by the Americans; but Major McDonell gained important advantages at Ogdensburgh, N. Y. At Stoney Creek, near Hamilton, the American Generals Chandler and Winder were captured on the 5th June, 1813, in a successful night-sortie, by Sir John Harvey,* and their invading army driven back. To Beaver Dams, on the Niagara frontier, Mrs. James Secord † (her husband being wounded) walked twenty miles, on the 24th June, 1813, to apprise Lieut. Fitzgibbon, the British officer, of the expedition sent against him. By skilfully arranging his scanty force of two hundred and fifty men, including Indians, Lieut. (afterwards Col.) Fitzgibbon captured, after a slight skirmish, five hundred Americans, fifty cavalry, and two field-pieces, under Colonel Berstler. Lewiston, Buffalo, Forts Schlosser, and Black Rock, on the Niagara river, were also successfully attacked and burnt, by direction of Sir Gordon Drummond, ‡ in retaliation for the wanton destruction of Newark (Niagara) and other British posts by the retreating American general. But the tide of victory turned; and the American success on Lake Erie was soon followed by the defeat of the British General Proctor § and his brave Indian ally, Tecumseh, at Moravian

* Sir John Harvey was born in England in 1778, and, having served for some time in the army, was sent out as deputy adjutant-general of the forces in Upper Canada. He served with great distinction there, and was appointed Governor of Prince Edward Island in 1836; of New Brunswick in 1837; of Newfoundland in 1841, and of Nova Scotia in 1846.

† While in Canada, in 1860, His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales gave Mrs. Secord a donation of four hundred dollars, in appreciation of her heroic and patriotic act.

‡ General Sir Gordon Drummond was born at Quebec, in 1771, while his father held the post there of paymaster-general of the forces in Lower Canada. He served on the staff in Canada in 1811, and next year he took command of the forces under Sir George Prevost. After a variety of eminent services in Upper Canada, he succeeded Sir George in 1814, as administrator of the Government and as Commander-in-Chief of the forces. He retired from Canada in 1818, and was generally regretted.

§ Lieutenant-General Henry A. Proctor was born in Wales in 1787. He took part in Sir Isaac Brock's expedition against General Hull at Detroit,

QUESTIONS.—What occurred at Niagara, Ogdensburgh, and Stoney Creek? Give a sketch of Sir John Harvey, and of Sir Gordon Drummond. What is said of Mrs. Secord? What is said of successes, and of reverses?

Town, river Thames. Fort George was, however, retaken by General Vincent, and Fort Niagara (as shown in the engraving), opposite to it, was also wrested from the Americans by Col. Murray.



The American Fort Niagara in 1813.

17. *Campaign of 1813 in Lower Canada.*—To effect a junction with Wilkinson's army, the Americans, under Gen. Hampton, pushed forward, on 26th of October, 1813, with 6,500 troops, from Lake Champlain towards Montreal. At the junction of the Ontario & Chateauguay Rivers, they encountered 1,000 Canadian militia under Colonel de Salaberry, who disputed their advance. By skilful man-



Tecumseh, a Shawanee Chief.*

in 1812. In 1813 he defeated General Wilkinson at the river Raisin, near the same city. For his ill-judged retreat at the river Thames, he was tried by court martial and suspended from service for six months; but he afterwards commanded the troops with great spirit in Canada. He was an able officer and highly popular.

* Tecumseh (or Tecumthé), a noted chief of the Shawanee Indians, was

QUESTIONS.—What events occurred on Lake Erie, the river Thames, and at Fort Niagara? What is said of Gen. Proctor and Tecumseh? Describe the engravings. How did the campaign in Lower Canada progress



Battle-Ground, River Thames, 1813.

to concentrate their forces for a combined attack on Montreal. General Wilkinson, who had a force of eight thousand men at Sackett's Harbour, was directed, with a portion of his troops, to join General Hampton from Chateaugay at Montreal, and invest that city. Wilkinson left Sackett's

born in 1770. His brother was the celebrated "prophet" of that tribe. In the American war of 1812, he was the warm friend and ally of the English. Although opposed to the civilization of the Indians, he adopted, in some measures, the habits of the whites, and held the rank of Indian Brigadier in the British army. He, with the western tribes of Indians, had been involved in hostilities with the United States, in 1811; and when war with Great Britain was declared, in 1812, Tecumseh and his warriors co-operated with the British forces. On the 5th October, while retreating from Detroit with General Proctor, the Americans overtook them at Moravian Town (river Thames), and a battle ensued. The allied forces were defeated, and the brave Tecumseh fell in the midst of the fight, aged 44 years. He was a fine-looking Indian, and a man of inflexible principle—honourable and humane.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the affair of Chateaugay. Who was successful there? What is shown in the engraving? What did the American general do? Give an account of the battle of Chrysler's field or farm.

agement and great bravery on the part of the Canadian officers, the American forces were defeated & compelled to retreat towards Plattsburg.

18. *The Battle of Chrysler's Farm.* — The success of the Americans in Upper Canada had led them

Harb
Gren
Being
had b
son r
dispe
about
and
lande
Taver
Britis
Amer
on th



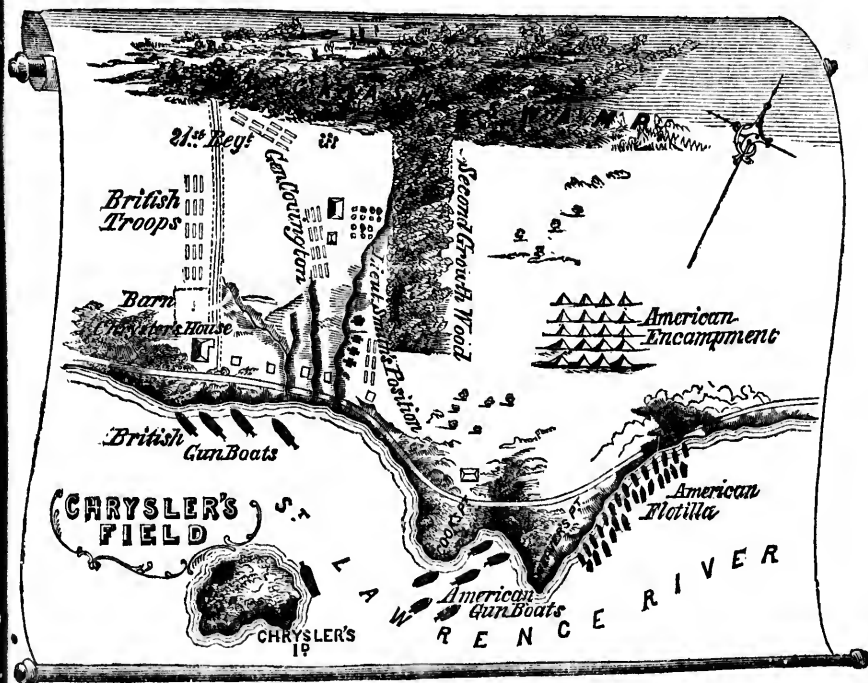
QUES
result?
relative

ent and
bravery
e part of
Canadian
s, the
can for-
ere de-
& com-
to re-
towards
burg.

the Battle
Chrysler's
— The
s of the
cans in
Canada
d them
on Mou-
at thou-
portion
laugay
ackett's

at tribe.
the Eng-
opted, in
f Indian
Indians,
nd when
warriors
retreating
them at
d forces
ht, aged
ble prin-

Harbour on the 4th of November, and menaced Kingston from Grenadier Island, on his passage down the St. Lawrence. Being harassed, as he proceeded, by a Canadian force which had been despatched from Kingston to intercept him, Wilkinson resolved, when some distance down the river, to land and disperse them. They were 3,000 strong, and the Canadians about 1,000. The Americans were led by Gen. Covington,— and to Lieutenant Smith was entrusted a battery. They landed at Cook's Point, and established themselves at Cook's Tavern. At Chrysler's farm, near by, Col. Morrison had the British forces skilfully drawn up to oppose the passage of the Americans. After two hours' hard fighting in an open field, on this farm, the Americans were compelled on the 11th of

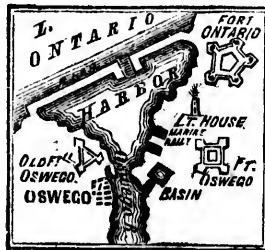


QUESTIONS.—Where did the American general appear? What was the result? How did it affect the movements of the Americans? Give the relative opposing forces. Point out on the engraving the places marked.

Who was
merican
arm.

November, to retire to their boats, with a loss of their general, Covington, and 350 killed and wounded, while the Canadian loss was only about 200. Hampton and Wilkinson's armies having been also defeated and demoralized by the determined bravery of the British and Canadian forces at Chateauguay and Chrysler's farm, determined to give up the contemplated attack on Montreal; and thus ended the formidable invasion of Lower Canada. These two battles, so gallantly won by inferior numbers, terminated the campaign of 1813.

19. *Campaign of 1814.*—At La Colle Mill, eight miles from the foot of Lake Champlain, the campaign of 1814 was opened on the 31st March. This post, which was garrisoned by only 500 men, was attacked by Gen. Wilkinson with 5,000 American troops. With the aid of two gun-boats, and two sloops from the Isle-aux-Noix, the Americans were defeated, and driven back to Plattsburg. After the failure of their invading army at La Colle, the Americans turned their attention to Upper Canada. But here the British were active. On the 4th of May a force of 1,200 soldiers and marines were sent to Oswego to



Forts at Oswego.

destroy the depot there. They were highly successful, and returned to Kingston next day. It was a source of very great mortification that this victory of the British at Oswego was followed by the comparative failure of their attack upon Sackett's Harbour, owing to the irresolution of Sir George Prevost, who ordered a retreat just as victory was achieved. Fort Erie was also lost. This fort, defended by only 200 men, was captured by the Americans, 4,000 strong, on the 3rd of July, 1814. At Chipewawa, on the 5th July, Gen. Riall, with 2,400 troops, gave battle to 4,000 Americans. The British fought bravely, but

QUESTIONS.—How did the contest end? What was the effect of the double defeat of the Americans? Where was the campaign of 1814 opened? Give a sketch of the battles at Oswego, Sackett's Harbour, and Fort Erie?

Riall was compelled to retreat to the Twenty-Mile Creek on his way to Burlington Heights, near Hamilton. Thence he sent a detachment of 900 to —

20. *Lundy's Lane* (called Bridgewater by the Americans), near Niagara Falls. Here, on the 25th July, this detachment was attacked, and was about retreating, by order of General Riall, when General Drummond opportunely arrived from York and encountered the American forces. The battle commenced at 5 p.m., and continued until halfpast 11. Both parties being reinforced, the strife was renewed. At midnight the enemy retired to Chippewa, leaving the British in possession of the field. The Americans lost 1,200 killed, wounded and prisoners; and the British, 900, including General Riall, who was captured. The generals on both sides were wounded. This was the hardest fought battle in the whole campaign.

21. *Close of the War*.—On the 15th August, Gen. Drummond sought to retake Fort Erie, but failed. On the 17th September, the besieged made a sortie, but were driven back. The loss on each side was 600. Drummond's failure, however, was more than compensated by the capture of Prairie du Chien, and the gallant relief and defence of Fort Mackinac. But on Lake Champlain, the British forces suffered defeat; though this disaster was soon retrieved by a decline of American naval power on Lake Erie, and the retirement of their army from Fort Erie on the 5th Nov. 1814. The destruction of this fort was the last act in the bloody drama; with the exception of the fatal battle of New Orleans, Jan. 8, 1815, where the Americans were victorious. By the Treaty of Ghent, 24th Dec., 1814, Forts Mackinac and Niagara were given up to the Americans, and peace was finally restored to the Province—its soil freed from the foot of the invader, and our laws and institutions preserved to us by the blessing of Providence and the bravery of our defenders, among the most conspicuous of whom was the loyal militia of the country.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the battles of Chippewa and Lundy's Lane. What is said of the latter battle? Give a sketch of the close of the war. Mention the final acts of the contest. What is said of the treaty?

CHAPTER XV.

FAMOUS CANADIAN BATTLE-GROUNDS OR FORTIFIED POSTS.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Battle Fields in Upper and Lower Canada.

1. Quebec.—2. Beauport Flats.—3. Ste. Foye.—4. Montreal.—5. Isle-aux-
Noix.—6. St. Johns.—7. Fort Chambly.—8. The Cedars Rapids.—9.
Frontenac, or Kingston.—10. Fort Niagara.—11. Queenston Heights.—
12. Stony Creek.—13. Beaver Dams.—14. Chateauguay.—15. Chrysler's
Farm.—16. La Colle Mill.—17. Chippewa.—18. Lundy's Lane.—19.
Thames.—20. Fort Erie.—21. Wars affecting New France and the
British Provinces.—22. Battles of the Seven Years' War.—23. Battles
of 1812.—24. American Posts Captured by the Canadians during the
War of 1812.—25-27. Canadian Posts Captured by the Americans.—
28. Military and Militia Force in Canada.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As the following chapter, on Famous Canadian Battle-Grounds or Fortified Posts, does not form any consecutive part of the History of Canada, the Teacher can omit it in whole or in part at his discretion, when going over the History for the first time in the ordinary course, or when teaching it to younger pupils.]

1. *Quebec* was founded, near the site of the ancient Algonquin village, Stadacona, by Champlain, in 1608. Quebec is supposed to have been so named from the Algonquin word *ke-pec*, a "strait,"—the St. Lawrence being only about 1,300 yards wide from Cape Diamond to Point Lévis, while immediately below it expands into a basin of nearly twice that width. It was captured by Sir D. Kertk in 1629; restored in 1632; successively defended by Count de Frontenac against Sir William Phipps, in 1690; by the Marquis de Vaudreuil against Admiral Walker, in 1711; but was finally captured by the English forces under Genera' Wolfe, in 1759, and formally ceded to England in 1763. The Americans, under Gen. Montgomery, were repulsed before its walls in 1775-6.

2. *Beauport Flats*, near Quebec.—At the siege of Quebec, Wolfe had fixed his camp on the left bank of the Montmorency river, and Montcalm his at Beauport. On the 31st July, 1759, Wolfe, aided by the fleet, attacked Montcalm with 8,000 men, but was defeated and compelled to retire.

3. *Ste. Foye*, outside of Quebec.—Here, on the 28th April, 1760, General Murray made a sortie from the citadel upon the French besieging force, under General de Lévis. He was defeated and driven into his entrenchments, with the loss of his artillery and ammunition. In October, 1863, a monument was erected at Ste. Foye to the memory of the French and English slain in this battle.

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter XV refer? Give a sketch of Quebec, and of its vicissitudes in war. What is said of Beauport Flats? For what is Ste. Foye noted? What monument was erected there in 1863?

D POSTS.

5. Isle-aux-Rapids.—9. Heights.—10. Chrysler's Lane.—19. and the—23. Battles during the Americans.—

uous Cana-consecutive e or in part in the ordi-

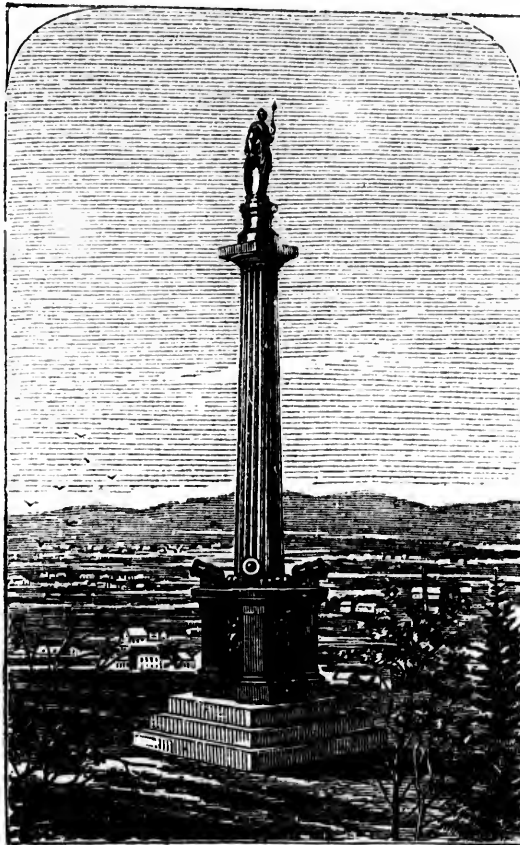
nt Algon-Quebec is quin word out 1,300 ile imme-vice that estored in e against audreuil captured, and for-der Gen.

Quebec, morency ly, 1759, 00 men,

h April, upon the He was loss of nument ch and

f Quebec, For what

4. *Montreal* was founded, on the site of the ancient Huron village of Hochelaga, by M. de Maisonneuve in 1642, and named *Villa Maria*, or *Marianopolis*, by the Superior of the Jesuits. It afterwards took its name from the adjoining "Mountain," or *Mont Royal*, so styled by Jacques Cartier. It was devastated by the Iroquois in 1689; capitulated to the English in 1760; taken by the Americans under General Montgomery, in 1775, and restored in 1776 when the Am-



Monument erected at Ste. Foye in 1863.

ericans were forced to retire with their army from Canada.

5. *Isle-aux-Noix*, in the Richelieu river, commands the entrance to Lake Champlain; it was fortified by the French on their retreat from Crown Point in 1759; captured by the English in 1760; taken by the Americans in 1775 (from hence they issued their proclamation to the Canadians); and rendered important service in the war of 1812-14.

6. *St. Johns*, Richelieu river, at the foot of the navigable waters of Lake Champlain, had been occupied by the French

QUESTIONS.—What is shown in the engraving? Give a sketch of Montreal? How did it get its name? What battles were fought there? Where is the Isle aux Noix? For what is it noted? What is said of St. Johns?

previous to 1749, but was fortified by Montcalm in 1758; it was taken by the English; again fortified and enlarged by Sir Guy Carleton; captured by the Americans in 1775, and retained by them until they were forced to retire from Canada, in 1776. It was the point of rendezvous for Burgoyne's army, previous to his ill-fated expedition, which terminated so disastrously at Saratoga, in 1777. (See pages 112 and 115.)

7. *Fort Chambly*, the third important military post on the Richelieu river, 12 miles from St. Johns, was originally built of wood and named St. Louis, by M. de Chambly, a retired captain of the regiment of Carignan-Salières. It was often attacked by the Iroquois. Afterwards it was rebuilt of stone, and named Chambly. In 1775 it was captured by the Americans, but retaken in 1776. It is now a military station.

8. *The Cedars Rapids* post, on the St. Lawrence river, 24 miles from Lachine, was occupied by the Americans, as a small fort, in 1776. It was taken by a detachment of the British army and 500 Indians under the celebrated Brant, without firing a gun. The Americans sent for its support were captured after a severe struggle.

9. *Frontenac*, or Kingston.—M. de Courcelles originated the design with the consent of the Indians, of building a fort here, as a barrier against the English fur-traders; but, being recalled, Count de Frontenac erected it in 1672. It was rebuilt with stone in 1678, by La Salle. In 1689, during the famous eruption into Canada of the Iroquois, it was abandoned by the French, and taken possession of for a short time by the Indians. In 1695 it was again rebuilt; and in 1758, captured by the English under Col. Bradstreet. It is now called Fort William Henry, after the late King William IV. It is fortified.

10. *Fort Niagara*.—This spot, though now beyond the boundaries of Canada, was enclosed by La Salle, in 1679, when on his way to the Mississippi. In 1725, the French erected a fort here, which, in 1759, was captured by Sir Wm. Johnson. The legends connected with the history of this fort, under French rule, are numerous. In the war of 1813, it was surprised and captured from the Americans by the Canadian militia. (See the illustrations on pages 88, 133, and 135.)

11. *Queenston Heights*, Niagara river. Here on the 13th of October, 1812, Sir Isaac Brock attacked the Americans, but fell in battle. After his death, the invaders were driven over the

QUESTIONS.—Who built Fort Chambly? When was it captured and restored? What is said of the Cedars Rapids Post? Give a sketch of Frontenac;—also of Fort Niagara. What is said of Queenston Heights?

1758; it
ed by Sir
5, and re-
Canada, in
e's army,
d so disas-
15.)

ost on the
nally built
, a retired
was often
lt of stone,
the Ameri-
ation.

ce river, 24
, as a small
the British
nt, without
t were cap-

iginated the
a fort here,
t, being re-
was rebuilt
; the famous
loned by the
the Indians.
ured by the
Fort William
ified.

beyond the
n 1679, when
uch erected a
m. Johnson.
s fort, under
3, it was sur-
the Canadian
and 135.)

on the 13th of
ricans, but fell
riven over the

it captured and
ive a sketch of
enston Heights?

heights. John Brant, an Indian chief, son of the celebrated Joseph Brant, led 100 warriors in this battle. (See page 132.)

12. *Stoney Creek*, seven miles from Hamilton. On the 5th June, 1813, the American Generals Chandler and Winder were here captured in a successful night-sortie, by Sir John Harvey, and their invading army driven back.

13. *Beaver Dams*, or *Beech Woods*, Welland river. On the 24th June, 1813, (Mrs. James Secord having walked twenty miles to apprise Lieut. Fitzgibbon, the British officer, of the expedition sent against him,) a picquet of 50 men and 200 Indians captured, after a slight skirmish, 500 Americans, under Col. Boerstler, including 50 cavalry and two field-pieces.

14. *Chateaugay*.—To effect a junction with General Wilkinson's large army from Sackett's Harbour, the American General Hampton, on the 26th October, 1813, pushed forward, with 3,500 troops, from Lake Champlain towards Montreal. At the junction of the Outarde and Chateaugay rivers, he encountered 400 Canadians, under Colonel de Salaberry, who disputed his advance. By skilful management and great bravery on the part of the Canadian officers, the Americans were compelled to retreat towards Plattsburg. Wilkinson's army also retired.

15. *Chrysler's Farm*, Williamsburg, County Dundas, 11th November, 1813. The Americans, under Gen. Wilkinson, in their passage down the St. Lawrence to attack Montreal, being harassed by the Canadian forces, resolved to land and disperse them. They were 3,000 strong, and the Canadians about 1,000. After two hours' hard fighting in an open field, the Americans were compelled to retire, with a loss of one general, and 350 killed and wounded, while the Canadian loss was only 200. These two battles, so gallantly won by inferior numbers, terminated the campaign; and thus ended this formidable invasion of Lower Canada. Medals were awarded by the British Government to the Canadian Militia, whose heroism and stratagem in these battles saved Montreal from attack. (See page 137.)

16. *La Colle Mill*, eight miles from the foot of Lake Champlain. Here, on the 31st March, the campaign of 1814 was opened, with the attack by General Wilkinson and 5,000 American troops upon this post, garrisoned by only 500 men. With the aid of two gun-boats, and two sloops from the *Isle-aux-Noix*, the Americans were driven back to Plattsburg.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of Stoney Creek? What noted occurrence took place at Beaver Dams? Who was the heroine there? Give a sketch of the battle of Chateaugay;—of Chrysler's Farm;—and of La Colle?

17. *At Chippewa*, on 5th July, 1814, Gen. Riall, with 2,400 troops, gave battle to 4,000 Americans. The British fought bravely, but were compelled to retreat. Riall afterwards sent a detachment to—

18. *Lundy's Lane*, or Bridgewater, near Niagara Falls. Here, on the 24th July, 1814, General Drummond, in support of Riall's detachment encountered the American forces. The battle commenced at 5 P.M., and continued until 11½. Both parties being reinforced, the strife was renewed. At midnight the enemy retired to Chippewa, leaving the British in possession of the field.

19. *Thames*.—After the capture of the British force on Lake Erie, General Proctor and Tecumseh, with 1,400 men, retreated from Amherstburg along the Thames river. At Moravian Town they were overtaken by General Harrison, with an army of 3,000 Americans, and defeated. Here the brave Tecumseh lost his life. (See page 135.)

20. *Fort Erie*.—This fort, defended by only 170 men, was captured by the Americans, 4,000 strong, on the 3rd July, 1814. On the 15th August, General Drummond sought to retake it, but failed. On the 17th September, the besieged made a sortie, but were driven back. The loss on each side was 600. On the 5th November, the Americans blew up the fort, and retired from Canada. It is now in ruins.

21. *Wars affecting New France and the British Provinces :*

1. King William's War, 1689, between William III, Prince of Orange, and Louis XIV, on behalf of James I; commenced in Nova Scotia by the capture of Port Royal by Sir William Phipps; ended in 1697 by the Treaty of Ryswick.

2. Queen Anne's War, commenced 1702, between France and England, ended in 1713 by the Treaty of Utrecht.

3. King George's War, or the old French and Indian War, commenced in 1744 between England and France, ended in 1748 by the Treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle.

4. French and Indian War, or the Seven Years' War, commenced between England and France in 1756, Quebec taken by Wolfe 1759, ended in 1763 by the Treaty of Paris.

5. American Revolutionary War, commenced in 1775, ended in 1783 by the Treaty of Paris.

6. War of 1812 between England and the United States, commenced in 1812, ended in 1815 by the Treaty of Ghent.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the battle of Chippewa;—of Lundy's Lane;—of Moravian Town, River Thames;—of Fort Erie? Mention the different wars affecting New France and the British Provinces in America.

22. *Battles of the French and Indians, or Seven Years' War.*

WHEN FOUGHT.	WHERE FOUGHT.	COMMANDERS.	
		English.	French.
1754, May 28.	Great Meadows, Pa.*	Washington.....	Jumonville.
July 3.	Fort Necessity, †....	Washington.....	Villiers.
1755, June 13.	{ Fort Beausejour, †	} Monckton.....	{ De Vergor.
	{ Fort Gaspereau, †		{ De Villeraï.
July 9.	Monongahela, †....	Braddock.....	Beaujeu.
Sept. 8.	Near Lake George, †	Williams.....	Dieskau.
	Fort Wm. Henry, *	Johnson.....	Dieskau.
1756, Aug. 11.	Oswego, †.....	Mercer.....	Montcalm. [chief.
Sept. 8.	Kittanning, Pa.*....	Armstrong.....	Jacobs, Delaware
1757, Aug. 3.	Fort Wm. Henry, †.	Mouroe.....	Montcalm
1758, June 25.	Louisbourg,*.....	Amherst and Wolfe	De Drucour.
July 5.	Ticonderoga, †....	Abercrombie.....	Montcalm.
	Fort Frontenac,*....	Bradstreet.....	De Noyan.
Nov. 24.	Fort du Quesne,*....	Forbes.....	De Lignières.
1759, July 22.	Ticonderoga,*.....	Amherst.....	Bourlamagne.
	Fort Niagara,*.....	Prideaux & Johnson	D'Aubry.
31.	Beauport Flats, †..	Wolfe.....	Montcalm.
Sept. 13.	Quebec,*.....	Wolfe.....	Montcalm.
1760, April 28.	Ste. Foye, †.....	Murray.....	De Lévis.
Sept. 8.	Montreal,*.....	Amherst.....	Vaudreuil.

* British successful; † French successful.

23. *Principal Land-Battles of the War of 1812.*

WHEN FOUGHT.	WHERE FOUGHT.	COMMANDERS.	
		British.	American.
1812, July 17.	Mackinac,*.....	Roberts.....	Hancks.
	Aug. 5. Magagua,*.....	Tecumseh.....	Van Horne.
9.	Magagua, †.....	Muir.....	Miller.
	16. Detroit,*.....	Brock.....	Hull.
Oct. 13	Queenston,*.....	Brock.....	Van Rensselaer.
1813, Jan. 28.	Frenchtown,*.....	Proctor.....	Winchester.
	April 27.	York, †.....	Sheaffe.....
May 1.	Fort Meigs, †.....	Proctor.....	Clay.
	27. Fort George, †....	Vincent.....	Dearborn.
29.	Sackett's Harbour, †	Prevost.....	Brown.
June 5.	Stoney Creek,*.....	Harvey.....	Chandler.
	24. Beaver Dams,*.....	Fitzgibbon.....	Boerstler.
July 11.	Black Rock,*.....	Bishopp.....	Adams.
	26. Burlington Heights*	Maule.....	Scott.
Aug. 2.	Lower Sandusky, †.	Proctor.....	Croghan.
Oct. 5.	Thames, †.....	Proctor.....	Harrison.
	26. Chateauguay,*.....	De Salaberry.....	Hampton.
Nov. 11.	Chrysler's Farm,*....	Morrison.....	Wilkinson.
Dec. 19.	Fort Niagara,*.....	Murray.....	McClure.
1814, Mar. 30.	La Colle Mill,*.....	Handcock.....	Wilkinson.
	July 5.	Chippewa, †.....	Riall.....
25.	Lundy's Lane,*.....	Drummond.....	Brown.
Aug. 14.	Fort Erie, †.....	Drummond.....	Gaines.
	24. Bladensburg,*.....	Ross.....	Winder.
Sept. 11.	Plattsburg, †.....	Prevost.....	Wcomb.
	13. Fort McHenry, †....	Cochrane.....	Armistead.
1815, Jan. 8.	New Orleans, †.....	Pakenham.....	Jackson.

* British successful; † Americans successful.

III. AMERICAN POSTS CAPTURED DURING THE WAR OF 1812-14.

(*War declared by authority of Congress against England 18th June, 1812.*)

24. *By the Canadian Troops.*—*Mackinac*, by Capt. Roberts, 17th July, 1812; *Detroit*, (with General Hull and 2,500 Americans,) by Sir Isaac Brock, 16th August, 1812; at *River Raisins*, Gen. Winchester and his army, by Gen. Proctor, 22nd January, 1813; *Ogdensburgh*, by Major McDonnell, 22nd February, 1813; *Fort Meigs*, Ohio, by Gen. Proctor, 5th May, 1813; (also various towns on the *Chesapeake River*, by the British in May, 1813;) *Black Rock*, near Buffalo, by Col. Bishopp, 11th July, 1813, and again in December; the frontier towns of *Buffalo*, *Youngstown*, *Lewiston*, *Manchester* (Falls), and *Tuscarora*, were also burnt in December, as reprisals for the burning of Niagara by the Americans; *Plattsburg*, by Col. Murray, 31st July, 1813; *Niagara*, by Col. Murray, 19th December; *Oswego*, by Commodore Yeo, 6th May, 1814; several towns on the coast of *Maine*, by the British, July, 1814; and *Washington*, by General Ross, 24th August.

25. *Naval Captures by the British*, not including re-captures. National vessels: *Wasp*, *Chesapeake*, *Argus*, *Essex*, *Frolic*, *President*, *Rattlesnake*, *Syren*, *Nautilus*, *Viper*, *Madison*, &c. Total 24 (15,000 tons), carrying 660 guns and 3,000 men.

IV. CANADIAN POSTS CAPTURED BY THE AMERICANS.

26. *Revolutionary War.*—*Chambly*, by Col. Bedell, 30th Oct., 1775; *St. Johns*, by Gen. Montgomery, 3rd Nov., 1775; *Montreal*, by Gen. Montgomery, 13th Nov., 1776. In June, 1776, the Americans evacuated the Province.

27. *War of 1812-14.*—*Toronto*, by Gen. Pike (who was killed), 27th April, 1813; *Fort George* (Niagara River), 27th May, 1813; *Moravian Town*, on the river *Thames*, by Gen. Harrison, 5th Oct., 1813; *Fort Erie*, by Gen. Brown, 3rd July, 1814; *Chippewa*, by Gen. Brown, 4th July, 1814.

28. *Naval Captures by the Americans.*—British force on *Lake Erie*, by Commander Perry, 10th Sept., 1813; on *Lake Champlain*, by Com. McDonough, 11th Sept., 1814. National vessels (not including re-captures): *Alert*, *Guerrière*, *Frolic*, *Macedonian*, *Java*, *Peacock*, *Boxer*, *Epervier*, *Avon*, *Cyane*, *Levant*, *Dominica*, *St. Lawrence*, *Highflyer*, &c. Captures-at sea (not including those on the Lakes): 30 (10,000 tons), carrying 503 guns and 2,800 men.

* **QUESTIONS.**—Mention the principal battles in the old French war. Who declared war against England in 1812? What principal posts and vessels by the British? What ones were captured by the Americans?

V. MILITARY AND MILITIA FORCE IN CANADA.

29. *The various Military Stations* of the Province of Canada are garrisoned by soldiers sent out and paid by the Imperial Government; and by Canadian militia on active service, raised and maintained by the Province. The regular force is about 3,500 men. The militia force (both active and sedentary) has recently been put upon an efficient footing. It now consists of 12,565 officers, about 350,000 men, 2,000 cavalry horses, and 50 guns. The Governor-General is the Commander-in-Chief. Military Schools of Instruction for militia officers have been established by the Canadian Govt. at Quebec and Toronto.

 Summary Sketch of the History of Canada.

(Continued from page 139.)

CHAPTER XVI.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, SECOND PERIOD (Continued):
FROM THE CLOSE OF THE WAR OF 1812-14, UNTIL THE
UNION OF THE PROVINCES.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Governors—Contests between the Government and the Houses of
Assembly in Upper and Lower Canada—Canal Policy—
Crisis of 1837—Lord Durham's Mission.*

1. Governors of Upper Canada.—2. Political Discussions in Upper and Lower Canada.—3. Upper and Lower Canada from 1823-1828.—4. Political Party Contests in Canada from 1829-1836.—5. Political Contests in Lower Canada, 1829-1836.—6. The Fatal Crisis of 1837-1838.—7. Progress of the Rebellion—Lord Durham's Mission.—8. Final Efforts of the Insurgents.—9. Union of the Provinces.

1. *Governors of Upper Canada.*—During the years 1805-1815, there had been frequent changes of Governors. The Hon. Francis Gore held office from 1806 until 1811, when he was succeeded as President by Sir Isaac Brock, who fell at Queenston Heights in October, 1812. Sir R. H. Sheaffe held the

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the military and militia force in Canada? Who is commander-in-chief? Mention some of the principal subjects of Chapter xvi. Who were the governors of Upper Canada from 1805 to 1812?

office *pro tem.*, as President, when he was succeeded by Baron de Rottenburgh, also as President, in 1813. In that year, Sir Gordon Drummond was appointed Lieutenant-Governor, and he succeeded Sir George Prevost as Administrator in Lower Canada, in 1815. During this same time, Sir George Murray, Hon. Francis Gore, and Sir F. P. Robinson, succeeded each other as Lieutenant-Governors of Upper Canada. The latter gentleman remained in office until 1817, when Hon. Samuel Hunter was appointed Administrator until the arrival of the the new Governor, Sir Peregrine Maitland,* in 1818.

2. *Political Discussions in Upper and Lower Canada, 1816-1822.*—The distracting influences of the war having gradually ceased, political discussions soon occupied public attention. In Lower Canada, a protracted contest arose between the Legislative Assembly and the Executive Government, on the subject of the finances. The Assembly maintained that the right to fix and control the public expenditure was inherent in itself, while the Governor and Legislative Council, being co-ordinate branches of the Legislature, resisted this doctrine, and sought to vest it in themselves. The chief object which the Assembly had in view was, by controlling the expenditure, to prevent or to reform certain abuses which had grown up in the administration of public affairs. It also wished to assert its own authority, as an independent branch of the Legislature, and to prevent the possibility of its being reduced to an inferior position in the state. So tenacious was the Assembly of its rights in this matter, that for years, almost all other questions

* Sir Peregrine Maitland was born in England in 1777. Having distinguished himself at Waterloo, he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada in 1818; while his father-in-law, the Duke of Richmond, was appointed Governor-General of Lower Canada. On the Duke's sad death from hydrophobia, in 1819, Sir Peregrine administered the Government of Lower Canada until the appointment of the Earl of Dalhousie as Governor-General, in 1820. Sir Peregrine was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Nova Scotia in 1828, and died in 1854, aged 77 years.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the names and dates of the Governors of Upper Canada from 1813 to 1818. Give a sketch of Sir Peregrine Maitland. What was the state of political feeling in Lower Canada after the war of 1812?

were made subordinate to this vital one, or they were treated as only forming part of the general issue involved in it. Thus things remained during the administrations of Sir John C. Sherbrooke,* the Duke of Richmond (who was unfortunately bitten by a fox and died of hydrophobia, while up the Ottawa river in 1819), and the Earl of Dalhousie.† In Upper Canada an almost similar contest arose between the same parties in the state; while the abuses arising out of the system of land-granting, the management of the Post Office Department, and the oligarchical power of the Family Compact (intermarried families of the chief government officials and their immediate adherents), were warmly discussed and denounced. Nevertheless, progress was made in many important directions. Emigration was encouraged; wild lands surveyed; commercial intercourse with other colonies facilitated; banking privileges extended; the system of public improvements (canals, roads, &c.) inaugurated; steamboats were employed to navigate the inland waters; education encouraged, and religious liberty asserted.

3. *Upper and Lower Canada from 1823—1828.*—The public discussions in Lower Canada were chiefly directed against a project for the Union of the two Provinces, which was proposed by the Imperial Government. The feeling of Upper and Lower Canada being against the measure, it was not persisted in. Notwithstanding the continuance of the demands of the Legislative Assemblies in either Province to control

* Sir John Coape Sherbrooke was born in England, and before coming to Canada had acquired some distinction as an officer in the East Indies and the Peninsula, and as Governor of Nova Scotia. He administered the Government of Lower Canada with firmness and tact from 1816 to 1818. He died in 1830.

† George, Earl of Dalhousie, a general in the army, was born in Scotland. He served in Nova Scotia before coming as Governor-General to Canada. He arrived in 1820, and remained nine years. His administration was energetic and firm. He died in 1838.

QUESTIONS.—What spirit did the L. C. House of Assembly exhibit? How long did this state of feeling last? Give a sketch of Sir John Sherbrooke, and of the Earl of Dalhousie. What was the state of feeling, 1823—28?

the finances, even to the "stopping of the supplies" (that is, refusing to sanction by vote the payment of moneys necessary to defray the current expenses of the Province), public improvements were carried on with spirit. In Lower Canada, large sums were voted for the continuation of the Chambly and Lachine canals; and stock to the amount of \$100,000 was taken by the Legislature in the Welland canal, of Upper Canada. In Upper Canada, the Welland canal (projected by the Hon. William H. Merritt) was also aided by Parliament.



Hon. William H. Merritt.*

* The Honourable William Hamilton Merritt was the son of a United Empire Loyalist. He served in the war of 1812, and projected the Welland Canal in 1818. Mr. Merritt was a member of the Legislature for many years; President of the Executive Council, in 1849; and Chief Commissioner of Public Works, in 1851. He died in 1862, aged 69 years.

QUESTIONS.—Did the political discussions affect public improvements? Mention what was done in Upper and Lower Canada on this subject. Give a sketch of the Hon. W. H. Merritt. What agitation is referred to?

In Upper Canada, the claim of the Church of Scotland (as an established church of the realm) to a share in the Clergy Reserves (which had been set apart by George III, for the support of a "Protestant Clergy,") commenced the agitation on that subject. Personality and bitter feeling entered so largely into the discussion of public affairs by the

*S
He s
Upp
his r
in-C
rebe
after
and
† S
tinc
Gen
was
as G
in 18
Qu
gove
Kem

(that is, necessary public im- Canada, mbly and 0,000 was of Upper jected by rliament. e Canada, n of the of Scot- an estab- hurch of m) to a the Clergy s (which a set apart ge III, for port of a tant Cler- commenced ation on ject. Per- and bitter entered so into the on of pub- rs by the of a United ted the Wel- legislature for ; and Chief ed 69 years.

improvements? this subject- referred to?

press, that in Lower Canada the editor of the *Quebec Spectator* was twice arrested for libel; while in Upper Canada, the editor of the *Colonial Advocate* had his office broken open, and his type thrown into Toronto bay. The perpetrators of this outrage were compelled to pay heavy damages.

4. *Political Party Contests in Canada from 1829 to 1836.*— In 1829, the Governors of Upper and Lower Canada were changed. Sir John Colborne* replaced Sir Peregrine Maitland, in Upper Canada, and Sir James Kempt† replaced Lord Dalhousie in Lower Canada. In the meantime, political questions were discussed with much vehemence; and to thoughtful men, public affairs seemed to be gradually approaching a crisis. To enter into all the details of the political contests of those stormy times, long since settled, would be but to recapitulate the numerous points of dispute between the two great political parties. This would be foreign both to the scope and object of this history. The utmost we can do, is to glance briefly at the most striking features of public affairs or events of moment, and to deal summarily with the general results, either of a long political discussion, or of a political crisis. Besides, the subjects of dispute were in reality few, although the phases of the protracted and ever varying dis-

* Sir John Colborne was born in England in 1777; entered the army in 1794. He served in Egypt and Sicily, and also in the Peninsula. He governed Upper Canada during a stormy period, but failed to restore harmony. On his retirement from Upper Canada in 1836, he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the forces in Canada, and remained until the suppression of the rebellion in 1839. He held the office of Governor-General for a short time, after Lord Gosford's recall. He was created Baron, Lord Seaton, in 1840, and a Field-Marshal of the Empire in 1860. He died in 1863, aged 86 years.

† Sir James Kempt was born in Scotland, in 1765. He served with distinction in Egypt and Sicily, and in 1807 was appointed Quarter-Master General for British North America. He was wounded at Waterloo. He was Governor of Nova Scotia from 1820 to 1823, when he was transferred as Governor to Lower Canada, where he remained until 1830. He died in 1855, aged 90 years.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the personalities of the press? Who were governors from 1829 to 1836? Sketch Sir John Colborne, and Sir James Kempt. What is said of the stormy discussion of political questions then?

cussion were numerous, and partook largely of personalities.* Few candid men will deny, however, at this distance of time, that serious faults existed on both sides. The governing, or official, party (although individually estimable and honourable men in private life) was, as a party, selfish, intolerant, and arbitrary. It was a self-constituted oligarchy, which, having the reins of power in its hands, would allow no person to question its acts, or to share in its rule. Heedless of the grave responsibilities of their position as the ruling party, they steadily refused to make wise concessions, or to meet the just and reasonable demands of public opinion at the proper time. All their opponents were indiscriminately denounced as revolutionists and republicans. Unfortunately, there was some reason for this assertion; but it was only true of individuals, and not of the party. The continued voluntary association (if not identification on all public occasions and questions) of the reformers with political malcontents, was, for a time, a serious blot on the escutcheon of the liberal party in Upper Canada. Although many distinguished leaders among them held firmly to the great principles of British constitutional freedom, as expounded by British statesmen, still, many who invariably acted with them, and gave great strength to their party, felt little reverence for anything, either British or nonarchical. With them, the republican experiment on this continent, of then only sixty years' growth, was an unquestioned success; and by that standard all things political in Upper Canada were to be judged. As the crisis of 1837 drew near, the liberal party showed signs of disintegration. The standard of authority and the political principles of each section of the party being essentially different, the British constitutionalist portion gradually withdrew from association with the republican malcon-

* It would prejudice the learner's mind to criticise each arbitrary act too severely, or to bear too hardly upon either political party, without giving fuller information than this school history will permit.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the two great political parties of 1834 to 1836? Give a sketch of each. What was the effect of the course pursued by them at the time? What led to the break-up of the liberal party?

Ca.
ten
see
5
Can
asp
poli
erne
in U
the
a m
and
sepa
inten
the
again
being
posse
Britis
had b
conten
at the
tion, t
were,
firmed
rary.
party,
of this
a stat
cal dis
years.
of Ass
Hon. A
late H
* Hon
to the B
QUEST
at this ti
this feeli

tents; this added new elements of strife and bitterness to the seething political turmoil of the time.

5. *Political Contests in Lower Canada, 1829-1836.*—In Lower Canada, party strife, in many respects, assumed a different aspect from that of Upper Canada. Some features of the political contest between the governing party and the governed in Lower Canada were, however, the same as they were in Upper Canada. Favouritism and exclusiveness marked the conduct of the governing party in each province, and, as a matter of course, it produced similar fruits in discontent and resistance in both provinces. There was, however, a separate element of discord in Lower Canada, which gave intensity to all the political discussions there—and that was the hostility of race—French against British, and British against French. As was very natural, the French element being largely in the preponderance, and being the old race in possession of the soil, looked with great distrust on the intrusive British, whose hereditary national antipathies to the French had been kept alive since 1660 during the continuance of the long contests for the monopoly of trade and territory. And although, at the conquest, and subsequently during the American revolution, the laws, customs, and religion of the French Canadians were, as far as possible, guaranteed, and this guarantee confirmed, still, they looked upon this concession as only temporary. They maintained that the policy of the British governing party, and their own exclusion from office, violated the spirit of this concession, if it did not virtually revoke it. With such a state of feeling, and under such circumstances, the political discussions in Lower Canada were very bitter for several years. At length they culminated in the passage by the House of Assembly of 92 famous resolutions, prepared chiefly by the Hon. A. N. (now Judge) Morin, although nominally by the late Hon. Judge Bedard.* These resolutions denounced the

* Hon. Elzéar Bedard, a prominent and active politician until elevated to the Bench, was a native of Lower Canada, and died in 1849.

QUESTIONS.—What was the state of political feeling in Lower Canada at this time? How did it differ from that in Upper Canada? How did this feeling find utterance? What is said of the late Hon. Elzéar Bedard?

conduct of public affairs by the government, the exclusion of the French Canadians from office, the party nomination by the Crown of Legislative Councillors, &c. This led to counter-demonstrations and equally strong resolutions on the part of the British portion of the population, so that a fierce war of rival races and political parties was the result. At length, both sides appealed to the British government and Legislature for a settlement of their differences. In the British Parliament warm debates on the subject took place. In Upper Canada, the strife between the two parties also continued, and was heightened by the unlooked-for establishment of fifty-seven Church of England rectories by Sir John Colborne, on the eve of his leaving the province. Finally, in 1835, the Imperial Government sent a commission, composed of Lord Gosford* (as Governor-General), Sir Charles Grey, and Sir James Gipps, to inquire into the cause of the alleged grievances in Lower Canada. The report of the Commissioners was laid before the Imperial Parliament, and discussed by it early in 1837. In the meantime, a strong party of liberals in Upper and Lower Canada became gradually detached from the more extreme opposition, led by Hon. L. J. Papineau, in Lower Canada, and by Mr. W. L. Mackenzie,† in Upper Canada.

* The Earl of Gosford was appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1835. He sought to conciliate opposing parties in Lower Canada, and to remove causes of complaint; but having failed in his mission, he was relieved in the government by Sir John Colborne, and returned to England in 1838. He died in 1849.

† William Lyon Mackenzie, Esq., was born in Scotland in 1795, and came to Canada in 1820. In 1824 he published the first number of the *Colonial Advocate* at Niagara. Soon afterwards the paper was removed to Toronto; and, in 1826, having given offence to the ruling party, the office of the paper was broken open and the types thrown into the Bay. Mr. Mackenzie recovered sufficient damages to enable him to continue to publish his paper until 1833. In 1828 Mackenzie was returned for the first time to the Provincial Parliament, for the County of York. Having used some strong expressions in his paper against the ruling party in

QUESTIONS.—Give the principal points of the famous 92 resolutions. How were these resolutions received? How was the contest viewed in England? What did Sir John Colborne do? Sketch the Earl of Gosford.

The discussion in the British Parliament was moreover unfavourable to the Lower Canada opposition, and several of its propositions were negatived by large majorities.

6. *The Fatal Crisis of 1837-38.*—The proceedings of the British Parliament, as arbiter between the contending parties, left the ultra oppositionists no resource but either to recede from their untenable position, or to carry out their threats of armed resistance. In order to avoid any appearance of coercion, no troops were sent out from Britain; but, in case of need, draughts were directed to be made on the garrisons of the adjoining provinces. Meanwhile, the spirit of resistance, which had been so fiercely aroused, took active shape: a secret enrolment of the disaffected was made, and the plans of their leaders in Upper and Lower Canada matured. Inflammatory appeals were made to the disaffected by their chiefs, and counter-appeals were made to the people by the clergy, and by the leaders of the loyal population. The Governors also issued proclamations of warning. Before any hostile blow was actually struck, Lord Gosford retired from Lower Canada, and Sir John Colborne from Upper Canada. Sir John was replaced by Sir F. B. Head, and was on his way to England, when he was appointed Commander-in-Chief of the

the House of Assembly, he was expelled from the House. He was re-elected, and again expelled; and this was repeated five times in succession. At length the House refused for three years to issue a writ of election. This proceeding was severely condemned by the Home Government. In the meantime Mr. Mackenzie went to England to represent the grievances of Upper Canada, and was well received by the Colonial Secretary, who requested him to remain to give information. In 1836 he was elected the first Mayor of Toronto. In 1837 he became the leader of the armed insurgents against the Government. He was forced to fly; and did not return until 1850, when he was again elected to the House of Assembly. He held a seat there until 1853, when he resigned. Though Mr. Mackenzie lived to regret his connection with the rebellion of 1837, he was nevertheless then a sincere and honest man in the expression of his views. He died in 1861 much regretted, aged 66 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Mr. Mackenzie. What was the effect in L. Canada of the discussions on Canada in England? What steps were taken by the disaffected? What changes took place among the Governors?

forces in Canada, and Administrator of the government in Lower Canada. He at once armed the volunteers there; while Sir F. B. Head sent to him all the troops he had, and then appealed to the loyalty of the people of Upper Canada for support. At length, on the 7th of November, the first fatal blow was struck. The "Sons of Liberty" attacked the "Doric" volunteers in the streets of Montreal, and compelled them to give way. Both parties now flew to arms in Montreal and its neighbourhood; and during the month a series of skirmishes or fights took place between the opposing parties at Chambly, Longueuil, St. Denis, St. Charles, and Point Olivier. Martial law was at once proclaimed in Lower Canada; and a Special Council, invested with Legislative power, convened. Up to this time no collision had taken place in Upper Canada; but on the 4th of December, some of Mackenzie's adherents having prematurely assembled at Montgomery's Tavern on Yonge street, four miles from Toronto, resolved to attack the city. On the 5th, a flag of truce was sent to parley with them; another was sent on the 6th, refusing their demands; and on the 7th, Sir Francis marched out against them with about 1,000 volunteers. The contest was short and decisive. Mackenzie, not having completed his plans, had to fight at a disadvantage. He vainly attempted to rally his men, and, at length, had to retreat up Yonge street, whence he afterwards fled to Buffalo. From this place he went to Navy Island (near Niagara Falls), where he collected quite a number of followers, under General Van Rensselaer. On the Canada side the insurgents were confronted by Colonel (afterwards Sir Allan) MacNab, at the head of about 2,500 militia.* Watching his opportunity,

* The Honourable Sir Allan Napier MacNab was born at Niagara in 1798. He was an officer in the navy, and afterwards in the army, in the war of 1812. After the war, he became a prominent politician, and in 1829 was elected an M.P.P. He was twice Speaker of the House of Assembly.

QUESTIONS.—Who took command of the forces in Canada? What did Sir F. B. Head do? How was the first fatal blow struck? Give an account of the first collision between the loyalists and the insurgents in U. Canada?

Colonel MacNab sent a small force under Lieut. Drew, R.N., to cut out Mackenzie's supply steamer, the *Caroline*. This they did successfully, and, having set her on fire, sent her over the Falls. Shortly afterwards, artillery was brought to bear upon the Island; and Van Rensselaer, finding his position difficult to maintain, retreated to the American mainland, where his forces soon dispersed. In the meantime, efforts were made along the Western frontier to invade the country from the United States, but, owing to the vigilance of the loyalists, they were unsuccessful. Lount and Matthews, who took part in the Toronto outbreak, were shortly afterwards tried and summarily executed.

7. *Progress of the Rebellion—Lord Durham's Mission.*—

In the meantime the Earl of Durham,* who had been appointed Governor General, and Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner to enquire into the affairs of Canada, arrived. Sir Francis B. Head was succeeded by Sir George Arthur † as Lieutenant Governor of Upper Canada. Large reinforcements were also sent to Canada, and the two provinces put in a better state of defence. Shortly after their arrival, Lord Durham, and the several eminent men who accompanied him, set about the ob-

In 1837, he was appointed military chief of the Upper Canada loyalists, in suppressing the insurrection. For his services he was knighted in 1838. He projected the Great Western Railway; was appointed Premier of Canada in 1855, and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom in 1856. He died in 1862, aged 64 years.

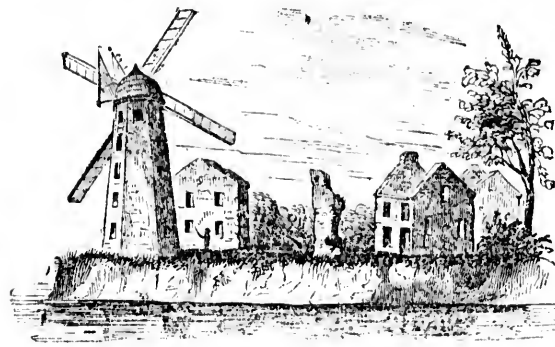
* The Right Honourable John George Lambton, Earl of Durham, was born in 1792. In 1813 he was elected to Parliament, and was appointed Her Majesty's Lord High Commissioner to Canada, in May, 1838, to inquire into its political grievances. His report upon the political state of the Provinces (which ultimately led to the union of the Canadas, and the introduction of parliamentary, or responsible, government into British America) was published in 1839. He died in 1840, aged 48.

† Sir George Arthur was born in 1784. Having been governor of Honduras and of Van Dieman's Land (Tasmania), he was appointed Lieutenant-Governor of Upper Canada at a critical time, in 1838. The efforts made during his administration against the rebellion were successful.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Navy Island affair. Give a sketch of Sir Allan MacNab's career. What steps were taken to restore quiet? Give a sketch of the Earl of Durham. Give a sketch of Sir George Arthur.

jects of their mission. Valuable information was collected, witnesses examined, and inquiries instituted with great vigour. A voluminous report on the state of the country was prepared as the result of these inquiries, and laid before Her Majesty. Among other recommendations made by the Earl, the union of the two Canadas was urged as of paramount importance. A hostile censure, in the House of Lords, on Lord Durham's local administration, however, brought his mission to an abrupt termination, and he returned to England. Sir John Colborne (afterwards Lord Seaton) again became Administrator of the Government in Lower Canada.

8. *Final Efforts of the Insurgents.*—Various hostile attempts were made, during the year 1838, to invade the Province. The most serious of these took place simultaneously in Novem-



Windmill Point, near Prescott.

Sir John Colborne in person. At Prescott, the insurgents, under Von Shoultz, a refugee Pole, maintained themselves for three days in a stone windmill, but they were finally defeated and captured. The windmill and adjacent buildings still remain blackened and battered ruins, as a monument of the misguided attempts of these men. The principal prisoners taken at both places were tried and executed; others were transported or banished. Further unsuccessful attempts at invasion were made at Windsor and Sandwich, near Detroit,

QUESTIONS.—What was done by the Earl of Durham? Why did he so soon leave the country? What further efforts were made by the insurgents? Where did the contests with them take place? What of Prescott?

ber, at Napierville, in Lower Canada, and at the Windmill Point, Prescott, on the St. Lawrence, in Upper Canada. That at Napierville was promptly put down by

during
had v
and
the
attem
High
been
devot
In tol
loyalt
rection
38, th
wome
erected
ands
in La
imm
60 feet
of a ca

9. U
lity, in
political
vent th
Thomp
as Gove
rence o
Special

* The F
M.P. in 1
1834; and
Governor
ated Barc
liament,
Upper Ca
and was b

QUEST
did the inl
taken to v

during the winter of 1838-9; but by this time, the rebellion had well nigh spent its strength; and having lost all prestige and sympathy even among the Americans, no invasion of the Province was again attempted. The Glengarry Highland Militia have long been noted for their loyal devotion to their country. In token of their patriotic loyalty during the insurrectionary troubles of 1837-



Glengarry Cairn, Lake St. Francis.

38, the inhabitants (men, women, and children) erected, on one of the islands opposite the shore, in Lake St. Francis, an immense cairn of stones, 60 feet high, surmounted by a flag-staff, inserted in the mouth of a cannon which had been placed in an upright position.

9. *Union of the Provinces, 1840.*—On the return of tranquillity, in 1839, the British Government determined to apply such political remedies to the state of the Provinces as would prevent the recurrence of civil strife. The Right Hon C. P. Thompson, M.P.,* an eminent commercial man, was sent out as Governor-General. He was directed to obtain the concurrence of the inhabitants to a Union of the Provinces. The Special Council of Lower Canada agreed to the proposed Union

* The Right Hon. Charles Poulett Thompson, born in England in 1799; M.P. in 1826; Vice-President of the Board of Trade in 1829; President in 1834; and established the English Schools of Design in 1837; appointed Governor-General of Canada in 1839; united the Canadas, and was created Baron Sydenham and Toronto, in 1840; opened the first united parliament, at Kingston, in June, 1841; projected a municipal system in Upper Canada in August; and died by reason of a fall from his horse, and was buried in Kingston, in September, 1841, aged 42 years.

QUESTIONS.—How did the rebellion progress in 1838? In what way did the inhabitants of Glengarry evince their loyal feeling? What steps were taken to unite the Provinces in 1839? Give a sketch of Lord Sydenham.

in November, 1839, and the Legislature of Upper Canada in December of the same year. The Act of Union was therefore passed by the British Parliament in 1840, and took effect on the 10th of February, 1841.

CHAPTER XVII.

SKETCH OF BRITISH RULE, THIRD PERIOD: FROM THE UNION OF THE PROVINCES IN 1840 UNTIL 1864.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Union of the Provinces—Administration of Lord Sydenham—of Sir Charles Bagot—of Lord Metcalfe—of Lord Elgin—of Sir Edmund Head—of Lord Monck (in part).

1. Act of Union of the Two Canadas.—2. Lord Sydenham's Administration.—3. Sir Charles Bagot's.—4. Lord Metcalfe's.—5. The Earl of Elgin's.—6. Sir Edmund Head's.—7. Lord Monck's (in part).—8. Confederation.—9. Governors of Canada.

1. *The Act of Union of the Two Canadas.*—The new constitution of United Canada, as embraced in the Act of Union, embodied several features not heretofore introduced into colonial constitutions. The most important of these features was *first*, the institution of "responsible government," that is, a government controlled by colonial ministers of the crown, having seats in the Legislature, responsible to it for their official acts and for their advice to the Governor-General; and *secondly*, the concession to the House of Assembly of complete control over the revenue in all its branches, and the supervision of the entire expenditure of the country. Thus were the demands of one great party granted; while to meet the views of the other party, guards and checks were interposed, which since that time have been gradually relaxed.

2. *Lord Sydenham's Administration.*—The year 1841 was a memorable one for Canada. In that year the double system

QUESTIONS.—What was done in Upper and Lower Canada in regard to the projected union? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter xvii. What were the chief features of the Union Act? For what is 1841 noted?

of Governors and Government ceased. Sir George Arthur retired from the Lieutenant-Governorship of Upper Canada, and Lord Sydenham became sole representative of the Queen in Canada. The first United Parliament was summoned to meet at Kingston, Upper Canada, in June, 1841. Several most important measures were passed by it, including those relating to municipal institutions, popular education, the customs, currency, &c. The session at length terminated in September, under most melancholy circumstances, occasioned by the unexpected death of the Governor-General, who died from the effects of a fall from his horse, on the 19th of the month.

3. *Administration of Sir Charles Bagot,** 1841-42.—The regret for the death of Lord Sydenham was universal throughout Canada. By his energy and wisdom he had rescued Canadian politics from the debasement of personalities and strife, and elevated them to the dignity of statesmanship. He had opened up new fields for provincial ambition, in the prosecution of comprehensive schemes of public improvements, public education, finance, trade, and commerce. Under such circumstances his successor, Sir Charles Bagot, arrived. The new Governor had, however, many difficulties to contend with, as the smouldering embers of former strifes were frequently fanned into a flame, and many of the old party rivalries and passions fiercely aroused. He nevertheless acted with great prudence, and called to his councils the chief of the reform party, then in the ascendant in the legislature. His health having failed, however, he was compelled to return to England, where he died shortly afterwards.

* Sir Charles Bagot was born in England in 1781. He became Under Foreign Secretary of State in 1806. He was successively Ambassador at Paris, Washington, St. Petersburg, The Hague, and Vienna. He became Governor-General of Canada in 1842. During his administration the chiefs of the reform party first held office as ministers of the Crown, under the new system of responsible government. Many useful measures were passed by the Legislature. He died in 1843, much regretted, aged 63.

QUESTIONS.—Who was the last Governor of U. C.? What measures were passed by the first Parliament of United Canada? What sad event occurred then? Sketch Sir Charles Bagot's administration, and his career.

4. *Administration of Lord Metcalfe*,* 1842-5.—Sir Charles Metcalfe, who had distinguished himself as Governor in India and in Jamaica, succeeded Sir Charles Bagot. His endeavour to mitigate what he felt to be the evil to the country of mere party government, and appointments to office, led to a difference between himself and the members of his cabinet, and they resigned. They maintained that appointments to office under the Crown should be made chiefly with a view to strengthen the administration, and upon the advice of ministers responsible to parliament. Sir Charles, on the other hand, maintained that the patronage of the Crown should be dispensed according to merit, irrespective of party objects, and for the sole benefit of the country. Other points of difference arose between the Governor and his cabinet, which widened the breach. On an appeal being made to the country, the policy of Sir Charles was sustained by a majority of the electors, and he was shortly afterwards raised to the peerage, as Baron Metcalfe. A cancer in his face soon afterwards compelled him to resign his office and return to England, where, after a painful illness, he died—being the third Governor in succession who fell a victim to disease while in office. In 1844, the Government removed to Montreal.

5. *The Administration of the Earl of Elgin*.†—When ill health

* Sir Charles Metcalfe was born in England in 1785, and, having held the office of governor in India and Jamaica, succeeded Sir Charles Bagot as Governor-General of Canada in 1843. He was firm and conscientious in his administration of government. He retired from Canada in 1845, and died in 1846, aged 61 years.

† The Right Honourable James, Earl of Elgin and Kincardine, was born in London in 1811. He was elected a Member of the Imperial Parliament in 1841; appointed Governor of Jamaica from 1842 to 1846; Governor-General of Canada, from 1847 to 1854; laid the corner-stone of the Upper Canada Normal School, in 1851; effected a treaty of commercial reciprocity with the United States, in 1854; was appointed envoy extraordinary to China in 1857, and to Japan in 1858. Returning to England, he became a member of Lord Palmerston's Administration, as Postmaster General, in 1859. He was again appointed Her Majesty's special Commissioner to China in 1860; and, in 1861, he was made Viceroy of India. He died there in 1863, universally regretted, aged 52 years.

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Sir Charles Bagot? Give a sketch of him. What is said of the administration of Sir Charles Metcalfe? What was peculiar in the death of the Governors? Who succeeded Sir C. Metcalfe?

Sir Charles
 nor in India
 endeavour to
 f mere party
 a difference
 et, and they
 office under
 strengthen the
 s responsible
 maintained
 ed according
 e sole benefit
 between the
 breach. On
 of Sir Charles
 e was shortly
 . A cancer in
 his office and
 e died—being
 tim to disease
 l to Montreal.
 hen ill health
 having held the
 Charles Bagot as
 conscientious in
 da in 1845, and
 rdine, was born
 rial Parliament
 1846; Governor-
 ne of the Upper
 mercial recipro-
 y extraordinary
 o England, he
 , as Postmaster
 's special Com-
 ceroy of India.

a sketch of him.
 fe? What was
 Sir C. Metcalfe?

compelled Lord Metcalfe to retire, General Lord Cathcart, Commander of the Forces, assumed the reins of government as Governor-General: these he held until the arrival of the Earl of Elgin and Kincardine, early in 1847. Shortly after Lord Elgin's arrival, the famine and fever, which had spread sad desolation in Ireland and Scotland, drove multitudes to seek a home in Canada. They brought fever and death with them; and for a time pestilence was abroad in the land. Measures were promptly taken to provide for this calamity, and for the large influx of emigrants. These measures were generally successful, and in some degree mitigated the evil.—Public attention having for a time been devoted to this subject, was soon again directed to the political state of the country. Lord Elgin entered heartily into the discharge of the duties of his high office, and exhibited a comprehensiveness of mind and a singleness of purpose which at once gave dignity to his administration, and divested the settlement of questions then agitating the public mind, of much of that petty bitterness and strife which had entered so much into the discussion of most of the political questions of the day. Under his auspices, responsible government was fully carried out, and every reasonable cause of complaint removed. Rarely had a Governor so identified himself with the interests of Canada, or sought so ably and effectually to promote them. The consequence was that contentment, peace, and prosperity became almost universal throughout Canada. A general election took place in 1848, giving a large preponderance of the reform party in the new House of Assembly. Lord Elgin at once surrounded himself with the chiefs of that party;* and measures of the greatest

* As Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine were the chiefs of the reform party in this cabinet, we give a short biographical sketch of each:

(1.) The Honourable Robert Baldwin, C.B., was born in Toronto in 1804, and was the son of the late Hon. Dr. William Warren Baldwin. For a length of time Mr. Baldwin was a prominent leader of the liberal party

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Lord Elgin. What were the characteristics of Lord Elgin in the discharge of his duties? How did he moderate party violence, and with what result? Who succeeded to power in 1848?

importance to the country, relative to the finances, post-office, education, and public improvements, were passed by the Legislature. One measure, however, produced a sudden ebullition of party violence, which for a time disturbed the general harmony, and brought disgrace upon the province. In 1845, a former ministry, under Lord Cathcart's administration, had issued a commission to enquire into the losses sustained during the rebellion by individuals, either from military necessity or from lawlessness, in 1837-8. Their report was but partially acted upon at the time; but so great was the pressure brought to bear upon the government by parties who had suffered these losses, that in 1849 the matter came up before the Governor in Council, and subsequently before the legislature for final settlement. The measure proposed being thought too indiscriminate and liberal by the party in opposition to the government, warm discussions took place in the House, and a violent agitation on the subject commenced throughout the country. The measure, however, passed both houses, and was assented to by Lord Elgin in the Queen's name. No sooner had he done so than he was assailed in the streets of Montreal—the seat of government being in that city since 1844—and as a crowning act of violence, the Houses of Parliament were set fire to, and they, with their valuable library, were almost totally destroyed. Besides the irreparable loss of the library and of the public

in Upper Canada. He was first elected to the Legislature in 1829; became an Executive Councillor in 1836; Solicitor-General in 1840; Attorney-General, and joint Premier of Canada, in 1842 and 1848. He was, in 1854, created by the Queen a Civil Commander of the Bath, for distinguished public services. He retired from public life in 1851; and died in 1858, aged 54 years.

(2.) The Honourable Sir Louis Hypolite Lafontaine was born in Boucherville, Lower Canada, in 1807. For many years he was an M.P., and a distinguished political leader in Lower Canada. He was appointed Attorney-General and joint Premier of Canada, in 1842 and 1848; Chief Justice of Lower Canada in 1853; and created a Baronet of the United Kingdom, in 1854. He died in 1864, aged 57 years.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Messrs. Baldwin and Lafontaine. What measures were passed in 1849? What circumstances led to the outbreak of that year? What loss did the province sustain? How did Lord Elgin act?

CHA
reco
publ
trium
Toro
his r
him
turn
of th
he h
In 18
form
adopt
of the
out h
system
aided
the E
the p
the P
fore le
with t
the G
branch
Hon.
nation
favour
extens
6. A
not eq
* The
late Rev
Examina
M.P.; In
projected
Chief of
In 1862

QUEST
tained b
Mention

s, post-office,
by the Legis-
en ebullition
general har-

In 1845, a
stration, had
ustained dur-
ary necessity
but partially
ssure brought
suffered these
the Governor
ature for final
ght too indis-
to the govern-
, and a violent
at the country.
d was assented
er had he done
real—the seat
d as a crowning
set fire to, and
ally destroyed.
of the public

ature in 1829; be-
al in 1840; Attor-
1848. He was, in
Bath, for distin-
1851; and died in

born in Boucher-
s an M.P., and a
e was appointed
2 and 1848; Chief
et of the United

fontaine. What
t to the outburst
l Lord Elgin act?

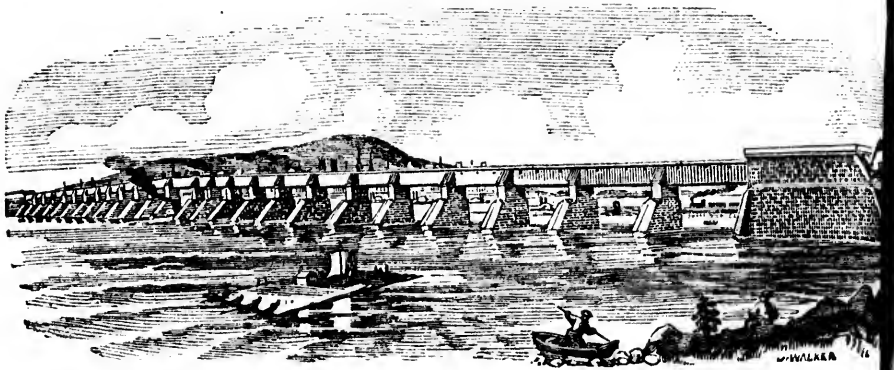
records, a fatal injury was inflicted upon the good name and public credit of the country, and popular violence for a time triumphed. The seat of government was at once removed to Toronto. In consequence of this ebullition, Lord Elgin tendered his resignation; but the Queen declined to accept it, and raised him a step in the peerage. After a time tranquillity returned; and with it the unfeigned respect of the great mass of the people for Lord Elgin for the courage and ability which he had displayed during an eventful crisis in their history. In 1850 a free banking law was introduced. In 1851 a uniform rate throughout the province of five cents on letters was adopted. In the same year, Lord Elgin laid the corner-stone of the Upper Canada Normal School; and personally throughout his whole administration, he promoted the success of the system of Public Instruction in Upper and Lower Canada, and aided it by his graceful eloquence. In 1853 the members of the House of Assembly were increased from 84 to 130. At the period of Lord Elgin's departure from Canada, in 1854, the Province again enjoyed great peace and prosperity. Before leaving, he procured the passage of the Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. During his eventful administration the Great Western and Grand Trunk Railways, with some branch lines, projected chiefly by Sir Allan MacNab and the Hon. Mr. Hincks,* were commenced. In the Great International Exhibition at London in 1851, Canada made a most favourable impression on the British public, both for her extensive and valuable resources, and for her enterprise.

6. *Administration of Sir Edmund Head, 1854-60.*—Although not equal to Lord Elgin as an able and popular Governor, the

* The Honourable Francis Hincks, C.B., fifth and youngest son of the late Rev. Dr. Hincks, of Belfast, Ireland. He established the *Toronto Examiner* newspaper in 1839, and the *Montreal Pilot* in 1844. He was an M.P.; Inspector General of Public Accounts and Premier of Canada; projected the Grand Trunk Railway; and was appointed Governor-in-Chief of the Windward Islands in 1855, and of British Guiana in 1861. In 1862 he was created by the Queen a Civil Commander of the Bath.

QUESTIONS.—How did this outburst affect Lord Elgin? Was he sustained by the Queen? What is said of his promotion of education? Mention the closing acts of his career. Give a sketch Mr. Hincks's career.

administration of Sir Edmund Head was a memorable one in Canadian annals. It was noted for the settlement of the Clergy Reserve question in Upper Canada, and of the Seigniorial Tenure question in Lower Canada; also for the completion of the Grand Trunk Railway to Rivière du Loup, and of its splendid Victoria Bridge over the St. Lawrence River at Montreal.



The Victoria Tubular Railway Bridge, from St. Lambert.

In 1855 and 1861 Canada again distinguished herself in the Great International Exhibitions held in Paris and London. In 1856, the Legislative Council was made an Elective Chamber. In the same year a Canadian line of ocean steamers, running to Ireland and England, was established; and efforts were made to open up communication with the Red River Settlement. In 1857 a severe commercial crisis visited Canada, from which she has not yet recovered, but which the civil war in the United States has unusually protracted. In 1858 the decimal system of currency, with appropriate silver and copper coins, was introduced. In the same year the 100th Regiment was raised in Canada and sent to England, in addition to large subscriptions and a Legislative grant of \$80,000 towards the Patriotic (Crimean) Fund. In 1859-60 the statute

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Lord Elgin? What is said of his administration? For what was it noted? Mention the principal matters of public interest. What is said of the Exhibition? What occurred from 1855-60?

able one in
the Clergy
Seigniorial
completion of
of its splen-
t Montreal.



mbert.
rself in the
nd London.
an Elective
an steamers,
and efforts
Red River
isis visited
t which the
tracted. In
ropriate silver
e year the
England, in
t of \$80,000
the statute

law of Upper and Lower Canada was consolidated, by able commissioners appointed for that purpose. The handsome buildings for the University of Toronto and University College were also finished and occupied in 1858-60. The closing period of Sir Edmund's administration was rendered still more memorable by a visit in 1860, to Canada and the other British North American provinces, of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales. The Prince met with an enthusiastic reception wherever he went; and his presence, as the special representative of his august mother the Queen, evoked feelings of the warmest affection and loyalty for Her Majesty. While in Canada the Prince inaugurated the Victoria Railway Bridge, and laid the



The Parliament Buildings, Ottawa.

corner-stone of the Parliament Buildings at Ottawa,—that city having been previously selected by Her Majesty as the seat of government for Canada. The visit of the Prince of Wales was, in 1861, followed by a brief one from Prince Alfred.

7. Administration of Lord Monck.—On the retirement of

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the events which occurred in 1860? Mention the most memorable one. What was the object of the visit of the Prince of Wales? How was he received? What did he do in Canada?

f his adminis-
ters of public
from 1855-60?

Sir Edmund Head, Lord Viscount Monck was appointed to succeed him. The civil war between the Northern and Southern States of America, which commenced in 1861, had greatly deranged trade. At first, public sympathy in Canada was chiefly enlisted with the North in its contest with the South; but the unwarrantable seizure of the British steamer *Trent* by a Federal admiral, and its justification by his government, as well as the denunciation of England by American public speakers and writers, first checked the current of sympathy in Canada for the North. As the war progressed, a feeling of respect for the Southerners grew up, on account of their heroic bravery in so long resisting the Northern armies, and owing to the wonderful skill and prowess of their leaders, Generals Lee, "Stonewall" Jackson, and Beauregard, in conducting the war. Notwithstanding this admiration for Southern bravery, its existence has not lessened the efforts which have been made both in England and in these provinces to maintain an attitude of neutrality in the unhappy war between the belligerent parties. To prevent the raids of Southerners from Canada into the States on our borders, Volunteers were sent on active service to the frontier. These efforts, it is hoped, will have the effect of preventing the pernicious growth of hostile feelings between England, Canada and the United States, which every lover of his country so heartily deploras.

8. *Confederation*.—In 1864, the feeling of antagonism in Parliament between U. and L. Canada came to a crisis. In the successive elections which had been held during the preceding years, it was found that the hostile majority from either Province in the Legislature was increased rather than lessened. A project of confederation, which was ultimately designed to embrace the whole of the provinces of British North America, was therefore set on foot, giving to each the management of its own local affairs; while to a general government it is designed to leave matters common to all. Should this project take effect,

QUESTIONS.—Who succeeded Sir E. Head? What has been the effect of the American civil war? Trace the progress of feeling in Canada in regard to this war. What is said of antagonism between U. & L. Canada?

it is p
Canad
ocean
comm
federal
Provi
foreign
perity
the un
now,
local p
states
will t
acts m
standa

9. C
the G

Jean B
Sieur
Roi,
plore
Marqui

2. Cana

Samuel
Marc A
Chate
Chevali
Chevali

Jean de
Charles
Viscour
Baron o
Chevali
Alexan
Chevali
Count o
Sieur de
Marquis
Chevali
Marquis
Marquis
Count d

QUES
Explai
pected t

it is proposed to construct an Intercolonial Railway, connecting Canada, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia directly with the ocean, so as to give to these provinces a winter outlet for their commerce. It is expected, that, should this principle of confederation be applied to the various British North American Provinces, a great impetus will be given to internal trade and foreign commerce, and a new era of social and political prosperity will dawn upon these colonies. As in 1841, when the union of Upper and Lower Canada was consummated, so now, it is hoped that the bitter personalities and strife of mere local politics will give place to a more enlarged and enlightened statesmanship; and our public men will feel that, as Canada will then form part of a great confederation, their policy and acts must be dictated by a higher and more dignified national standard than we have as yet attained to in any of the provinces.

9. *Governors of Canada.*—The following are the names of the Governors of Canada since its discovery :

1. <i>New France.</i>		Marquis de la Jonquière..... 1749
Jean François de la Roche, Sieur de Roberval, 1st Vico Roi, with commission to ex- plore..... 1540		Marquis du Quesné de Menne- ville..... 1752
Marquis de la Roche, do... 1598		Marquis de Vaudreuil Cavagnol 1755
2. <i>Canada—Royal Government Es- tablished.</i>		3. <i>Province of Quebec.</i>
Samuel de Champlain, Viceroy 1612		Gen. James Murray, Gov. Gen. 1765
Marc Antoine de Bras de fer de Chateaufort 1635		Paulus E. Irving, Esq., Presdt. 1766
Chevalier de Montmagny 1636		Gen. Sir Guy Carleton, Lord Dorchester, Governor-Gen. 1766, 1774, 1776, and 1793
Chevalier d'Ailleboust de Cou- longe, 1648 and 1657		Hector T. Cramahé, Esq., President 1770
Jean de Lauzon..... 1651		Gen. Frederick Haldimand.... 1773
Charles de Lauson Charry... 1656		Henry Hamilton, Esq., Lieut. Governor 1774
Viscount de Voyer d'Argenson 1658		Henry Hope, Esq. 1775
Baron du Bois d'Avaugour... 1661		4. <i>Lower Canada.</i>
Chevalier de Saffray Mésy. ... 1663		Colonel Clarke, Lieut. Gov.... 1791
Alexandre de Proville Tracy.. 1665		Gen. Robert Prescott..... 1796
Chevalier de Courcelles..... 1665		Sir R. S. Milnes..... 1799
Count de Frontenac. 1672 and 1689		Hon. Thomas Dunn, President 1805 and 1811
Sieur de la Burre..... 1682		Sir J. H. Craig..... 1807
Marquis de Denonville..... 1685		Sir George Prevost..... 1811
Chevalier de Callières..... 1699		Sir G. Drummond, Administ.. 1815
Marquis de Vaudreuil..... 1703		Gen. John Wilson, Administ.. 1816
Marquis de Beauharnois..... 1726		Sir J. Coape Sherbrooke..... 1816
Count de Galissonnière.... 1747		

QUESTIONS.—What political project has been set on foot in Canada? Explain it. What is this scheme designed to accomplish? How is it expected to influence public prosperity, and the conduct of our public men?

Duke of Richmond.....	1818	Baron F. de Rottenburg, Pres.	1813
Sir James Monk, President...	1819	Sir Gordon Drummond.....	1813
Sir Peregrine Maitland.....	1820	Sir George Murray.....	1815
Earl of Dalhousie.....	1820 and 1825	Sir Frederiek P. Robinson...	1815
Sir F. N. Burton, Lieut. Gov..	1824	Hon. Samuel Smith, Admin- istrator.....	1817 and 1820
Sir James Kempt, Administrat.	1828	Sir Peregrine Maitland	1818 and 1820
Lord Aylmer, Administrator..	1837	Sir John Colborne, Lord Seaton	1828
Earl of Gosford.....	1835	Sir Francis B. Head.....	1836
Sir J. Colborne (Lord Seaton), Administrator.....	1838	Sir George Arthur.....	1838
Earl of Durham.....	1838		
C. Poulett Thompson, Lord Sydenham.....	1839		
		6. <i>Province of Canada.</i>	
		Baron Sydenham and Toronto, Governor-General.....	1841
		Gen. Sir R. Jackson, Admin..	1841
		Sir Charles Bagot.....	1842
		Sir Charles (Baron) Metcalfe..	1843
		Earl Cathcart.....	1845
		Earl of Elgin and Kincardine..	1847
		Sir Edmund W. Head	1854 and 1857
		Gen. Sir William Eyre, Adm..	1857
		Lord Viscount Monck.....	1861
		5. <i>Upper Canada.</i>	
Col. J. G. Simcoe, Lieut. Gov.	1792		
Hon. Peter Russell, President.	1792		
General Peter Hunter.....	1799		
Hon. Alexander Grant, Prest..	1805		
Hon. Francis Gore....	1806 and 1815		
Sir Isaac Brock, President....	1811		
Sir R. Hale Sheaffe, President.	1813		

PART IV.

CHAPTER XVIII.

SKETCH OF THE POLITICAL CONSTITUTION, &c., OF CANADA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

The Constitution—Common Law—Magna Charta and various Ancient and Modern Statutes—Canadian Acts—Civil Government—Courts of Law.

1. Elements of the Constitution.—2. Constitution of England.—3. Common Law of England.—4. Magna Charta.—5. Charta de Foresta.—6. Confirmatio Chartarum.—7. Statute of Treasons.—8. Petition of Right.—9. Habeas Corpus Act.—10. Bill of Rights.—11. Other Acts.—12. Treaty of Paris.—13. Quebec Act of 1774.—14. Constitutional Act of 1791.—15. Union Act of 1840.—16. Representation Act.—17. Legislative Council.—18. Seigniorial Tenure.—19. Municipal Institutions.—20. Systems of Education.—21. Law of Primogeniture.—22. Executive Government.—23. Parliament or Legislature.—24. Governor-General.—25. Legislative Council.—26. House of Assembly.—27. Superior Courts of Upper Canada.—28. Other Courts of Upper Canada.—29. Superior Courts of Lower Canada.—30. Other Courts of Lower Canada.—31. Final Appeal.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—As the following chapter, containing a Sketch of the Political Constitution, &c., of Canada, does not form any consecutive part of the History of Canada, the Teacher can omit it in whole or in part at his discretion, when going over the History in the ordinary course, or when teaching it for the first time to the younger pupils.]

1. *Elements of the Constitution.*—The simplest form of government, originally instituted in the world by GOD himself,

QUESTIONS.—Mention the names of the most distinguished French and English Governors of Upper and of Lower Canada given in the table. To what does Part IV relate? Mention the principal subjects of Chap. xviii.

Pres. 1813
 1813
 1815
 1815
 Admin-
 7 and 1820
 18 and 1820
 Eaton 1828
 1836
 1838
 ada.
 onto,
 1841
 min.. 1841
 1842
 alfe.. 1843
 1845
 dinc.. 1847
 4 and 1857
 dm.. 1857
 1861

CANADA.

l various
 Civil Gov-

Common
 .—6. Con-
 of Right.—
 12. Treaty
 of 1791.—
 tive Coun-
 0. Systems
 e Govern-
 heral.—25.
 Courts of
 Superior
 Canada.—

taining a
 form any
 omit it in
 n the ordi-
 pupils.]

n of gov-
 himself,

rench and
 table. To
 p. xviii.

when mankind had increased into families and tribes, was Patriarchal. Afterwards among the Israelites, from the time of Moses to that of Samuel, the form of government was Theocratic,—that is, *Jehovah* himself was the supreme Ruler and Lawgiver. After a time the Israelites “desired a king,” and God granted their request. Since then, three pure unmixed forms of government have existed in the world, viz., the Regal, Patrician, and Republican. The Patrician having now ceased to exist, there are but two principal forms of government, the Regal or Monarchical, and the Republican or Democratic. In Canada, the system of government is happily monarchical, in its most popular form. The Queen is represented by a Governor-General. The Constitution is founded upon that of England. In it is incorporated the Common Law of England, and those great national compacts which have been entered into from time to time, modified as they have been by Acts of the Imperial and Canadian Parliaments.

2. *The Constitution of England* (after which ours is modelled) comprehends (says Lord Somers) the whole body of laws by which the people are governed, and to which, through their representatives in Parliament, every individual is presumptively held to have assented. This assemblage of laws (says Lord Bolingbroke) is distinguished from the term government in this respect,—that the constitution is the rule by which the sovereign ought to govern at all times; and the government is that machinery by which he does govern at any particular time.

I. THE COMMON LAW OF ENGLAND.

3. *The Common Law of England* is an ancient collection of unwritten maxims and customs (*leges non scripta*), of British, Saxon, and Danish origin, which have prevailed in England from time immemorial.

II. NATIONAL AND FUNDAMENTAL COMPACTS.

4. *Magna Charta*, or the Great Charter, was chiefly derived from old Saxon charters, as continued by Henry I in 1100. It was formally signed by King John, at Runnymede, near Windsor, in 1215, and finally confirmed by Henry III, in 1224. It secures to us personal freedom, a constitutional form of government, trial by jury, free egress to and from the kingdom, and equitable and speedy justice.

QUESTIONS.—What was the form of government first instituted? Give a sketch of the progress of human government. Sketch the constitution of England. What is the *Common Law* of England? Describe *Magna Charta*.

5. *The Charta de Foresta*, or Charter of the Forests, was founded upon the Magna Charta of King John, and was granted by King Henry III, in 1217. It abolished the royal privilege of hunting all over the kingdom, and restored to the lawful owners their woods and forests.

6. *Confirmatio Chartarum*, or Confirmation of the Great Charter (which was then made common law), and the Charter of the Forest, made by Edward I in 1297. In the same year a statute was passed, forbidding the levying of taxes without the consent of Parliament.

7. *The Statute of Treasons*, granted by Edward III in 1350, at the request of Parliament, defined treason, and put an end to judicial doubt or caprice in the matter. Treason was still more clearly defined in the Act 36 George III, chapter 7.

8. *The Petition of Right*, a parliamentary declaration against the exaction of forced loans to the King and the billeting of soldiers on private persons, was assented to by Charles I in 1627.

9. *The Habeas Corpus Act* (founded on the old Common Law of England) was passed in the reign of Charles II, in 1679. It compels persons in charge of a prisoner to bring his body and warrant of commitment before a judge, within a specified time, so as to inquire into the legality of his arrest. The judge's writ of habeas corpus may be demanded as a right, and can not be refused, under penalty of a fine. The Act can only be suspended by authority of Parliament, and then but for a short time, when public safety demands it. It has only been suspended sixteen times in various parts of England, Ireland, and Scotland since 1689. [In consequence of a decision by the Upper Canada Court of Common Pleas, in 1861, on a writ of *habeas corpus* issued by one of the Superior Courts in England, in the case of John Anderson, a fugitive slave from Missouri, the British Parliament passed an Act, in 1862, declaring that no writ of *habeas corpus* should again issue in England into any British colony, in which a court was established having authority to grant such a writ.]

10. *The Declaration and Bill of Rights* was based upon the Petition of Right (see above), obtained by Parliament from Charles I, in 1627. This Bill was passed in the first year of the reign of William and Mary,—1689. It declared the rights and liberties of the subject; and settled the succession to the crown, from the time of the English revolution, in 1688.

QUESTIONS.—Explain *Charta de Foresta*. What is *Confirmatio Chartarum*? Describe the *Statute of Treasons*. What is the *Petition of Right*? Explain the *Habeas Corpus Act*; also the *Declaration and Bill of Rights*?

ests, was
s granted
privilege
he lawful

he Great
and the
In the
g of taxes

in 1350,
at an end
was still
er 7.

n against
letting of
Charles I

Common
, in 1679.
his body
specified
est. The
a right,
Act can
en but for
only been
Ireland,
cision by
61, on a
Courts in
ve from
2, declar-
e in Eng-
ablished

upon the
ent from
t year of
e rights
n to the
8.

o Charta-
of Right?
f Rights?

11. *Other Acts.*—The other more important Acts passed since 1688, related to religious toleration; to the re-settlement of the succession to the Crown (also limiting the Royal prerogative); the independence of the Judges and of Parliament; the freedom of the Press; the abolition of Slavery; and Catholic Emancipation. These Acts form part of our Canadian Constitution, as well as the following:

III. IMPERIAL TREATY AND ACTS RELATING TO CANADA.

12. *The Treaty of Paris*, in 1763, ceded Canada to the Crown of England. This treaty secured to the people of Lower Canada the free exercise of their religion, laws, and institutions. In 1763, the English criminal laws were introduced into Canada by royal proclamation; but, by the—

13. *Quebec Act of 1774*, this proclamation was annulled, and the ancient *Coutume de Paris* (law and custom of Paris) restored in civil matters. By this Act, the English criminal law was perpetuated, and a supreme Legislative Council established.

14. *The Constitutional Act of 1791* divided the Province into Upper and Lower Canada; introduced the representative system of government; and set apart the Clergy Reserve lands. Under its authority, the Upper Canada Parliament introduced the English criminal law and trial by jury in 1792.

15. *The Union Act of 1840* united the Provinces of Upper and Lower Canada into one Province, under one government. A seal for the united province, like that in the engraving, was then adopted.



IV. CANADIAN ACTS.

16. *The Representation Act*, the Franchise Act, and the Independence of Parliament Act, were passed in 1853.

QUESTIONS.—What Acts have been passed since 1688? Mention the object of the Treaty of Paris. What Acts have been passed by the Imperial Parliament relating to Canada? What Canadian Acts have been passed?

17. *The Legislative Council* was made elective in 1856.

18. *The Seigniorial Tenure* was abolished in Lower Canada, and the proceeds of the Clergy Reserve Lands of Upper Canada applied to municipal purposes, in 1855-7.

19. *Municipal Institutions* were introduced into Upper Canada in 1841, and into Lower Canada in 1847-55.

20. *Systems of Education* were devised for Upper and Lower Canada, in 1841-6.

21. *The Law of Primogeniture*, limiting the succession of property to the eldest son, in Upper and Lower Canada, was repealed in 1851.

V. CIVIL GOVERNMENT.

22. *Executive Government*.—The Executive Government consists of a Representative of Her Majesty the Queen, styled His Excellency the Governor-General of Canada, aided by a Cabinet, or Executive Council, comprising twelve Heads of Departments, who, by virtue of their office, have the title of Honourable. They are: 1. President of Committees of the Executive Council; 2. Attorney-General for Upper Canada; 3. Attorney-General for Lower Canada; 4. Minister of Finance; 5. Commissioner of Crown Lands; 6. Secretary of the Province; 7. Commissioner of Public Works; 8. Postmaster-General; 9. Receiver-General of the Public Revenue; 10. Minister of Agriculture; 11. Solicitor-General East; 12. Solicitor-General West. (The office of Minister of Militia is generally held by the Premier, but may for convenience be held by any member of the Cabinet.) The Members of the Cabinet are appointed by the Governor, and hold office (unless removed) so long as they can retain the confidence and support of the Legislature, in which they must hold seats. [In this respect our system differs from the American. In the United States, the Members of the Cabinet, appointed by the President, hold office for four years, and are independent of Congress. They cannot be changed during the President's four years' tenure of office, except by his consent—no matter how obnoxious may be the measures of his government, or how distasteful may be its policy.]

23. *The Parliament, or Legislature*, consists of three branches: 1. The Queen (represented by the Governor); 2. The Legislative Council; and 3. The House of Assem-

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Legislative Council—Seigniorial Tenure—Municipal Institutions—Education—Law of Primogeniture—Executive Government? How does the Executive differ from the American system?

bly. The consent of each branch is necessary before a bill can become law. The Parliament of England, from which ours is modelled, (from the French word *parlement*, discourse,) derives its origin from the Saxon general assemblies, called *Wittenagemot*. The first summons to Parliament in England by writ, which is on record, was directed to the Bishop of Salisbury, in the reign of King John, in 1205. The power and jurisdiction of the Parliament in England have been declared to be "so transcendent and absolute that it cannot be confined, either for causes or persons, within any bounds. It hath sovereign and uncontrollable authority in making and repealing laws."

24. *The Governor-General* is appointed by the Queen, and generally holds office for six years. He is guided by general or special instructions from the Queen's ministers, as well as by law and usage. He reports on public matters in the Colony, from time to time, by despatches to the Imperial Government addressed to the Secretary of State for the Colonies. He represents the Queen, and is the chief executive officer of the government. He grants marriage licenses, and is commander-in-chief of the militia. He assembles, prorogues, and dissolves Parliament, and assents to all unreserved bills passed by it, previous to their becoming law. Reserved bills await Her Majesty's pleasure; and any law can be disallowed by the Queen within two years from the date of its passing.

25. *The Legislative Council* corresponds to the House of Lords in England, or to the Senate of Congress in the United States. The members were formerly appointed by the Crown for life; but they are now elected for eight years—each electoral district returning one member. The old members retain their seats for life, unless disqualified. The Speaker is elected from among the members of the House, at the beginning of each Parliament. The Council can originate any bill but a money one. It may also amend or reject any bill passed by the Assembly. It cannot amend but may reject a money bill. It can be dissolved by the Governor. There are forty-eight electoral divisions—twenty-four in each Province.

26. *The House of Assembly* corresponds to the House of Commons in England, and to the House of Representatives in the United States. It consists of 130 members (65 from Lower Canada and 65 from Upper Canada), elected by freeholders and householders in counties, cities, and towns. The Speaker

QUESTIONS.—Describe the functions and origin of Parliament. What is said of the Governor-General? How is the Legislative Council constituted? What powers does it possess? What is said of the House of Assembly?

is elected by the House, for each parliamentary term of four years. This branch can originate any bill. It has the exclusive control of the revenue and expenditure of the Province. The forms of procedure in both branches of the Legislature are similar to those in use in the Imperial Parliament.

VI. JUDICIARY.*

27. *The Superior Courts of Upper Canada* are: 1. *Queen's Bench*, presided over by a Chief Justice and two Puisné Judges. This is the highest Common Law Court; it has an almost exclusive authority in criminal matters, and can compel all inferior courts and public officers to perform acts required of them. 2. *Chancery*, presided over by a Chancellor and two Vice-Chancellors. It is a Court of Equity, and is designed to supply, in civil matters, the deficiencies of other courts, either in their machinery or in their rigid adherence to peculiar forms. 3. *Common Pleas*, presided over by a Chief Justice and two Puisné Judges, has more special jurisdiction between subject and subject. The Judges of the Queen's Bench and Common Pleas hold the Courts of Assize, in the various counties, twice a year. 4. *Error and Appeal*, presided over by the Chief Justice of Upper Canada, and is composed of all the Superior Judges. Its name and composition indicate its jurisdiction and authority. (See *Habeas Corpus Act*, on page 172.)

28. *The other Courts* are: 1. *Heir and Devisee*, to determine claims of land from the Crown. 2. *Probate and Surrogate*, to give legal effect to wills and to the administration of estates. 3. *County Courts*, with equity powers, to try all civil cases under \$200 and \$400. 4. *Courts of Quarter Sessions*, to try cases of larceny and other petty offences. 5. *Recorders' Courts* are Quarter Sessions for cities. 6. *Division Courts* try summarily, in divisions of counties, small civil cases. 7. *Insolvent Debtors' Courts*, held by County Judges.

29. *The Superior Courts of Lower Canada* are: 1. The *Queen's Bench*, which has one Chief Justice and four Puisné Judges. It hears appeals, and gives judgment in serious criminal matters. 2. The *Superior* has one Chief Justice and

* The chief features in the original constitution of the Superior Courts of Law are given; but in Upper Canada the Courts of Queen's Bench and Common Pleas have now very nearly the same powers as well as co-ordinate jurisdiction.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the constitution of the Superior Courts in U. C.? Describe each of these courts? What other courts are there in Upper Canada? Give an account of the Superior Courts of Lower Canada

term of four
has the ex-
of the Pro-
of the Legis-
Parliament.

re: 1. *Queen's*
two Puisné
art; it has an
and can com-
perform acts
y a Chancellor
quity, and is
ncies of other
adherence to
er by a Chief
al jurisdiction
Queen's Bench
in the various
presided over
omposed of all
n indicate its
opus Act, on

, to determine
Surrogate, to
ion of estates.
ll civil cases
sions, to try
5. *Recorders*
on Courts try
cases. 7. *In*

are: 1. The
four Puisné
nt in serious
of Justice and

Superior Courts
Queen's Bench
wers as well as

Superior Courts
arts are there in
Lower Canada

seventeen Puisné Judges. It gives judgment in cases and appeals from the Inferior Courts. 3. The *Admiralty*, which has one Judge. It tries maritime cases.

30. *The other Courts* are: 4. *Commissioners*, in parishes, for trying civil cases under \$25; 5. *Quarter Sessions*; and 6. *Special Magistrates*.

31. *Final Appeal*.—There is a final appeal, in all civil cases over \$2000, from the Superior Courts of Upper and Lower Canada, to the Judicial Committee of Her Majesty's Privy Council in England.

CHAPTER XIX.

SOCIAL, CIVIL, AND COMMERCIAL PROGRESS.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Resources, Enterprise, and Progress of Canada.

1. Latent Resources.—2. Early Enterprise.—3. Material Progress.—4. Interesting Facts.—5. Recent Ameliorations.—6. French Posts.—7. Public Improvements.—8. Various Interesting Facts.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

I. PROGRESS OF LOWER CANADA.

1. *Latent Resources*.—During the first period after the conquest of Lower Canada, little progress was made. She had, however, within her own borders, the germ and elements of her future advancement; and in the activity of her sons, under the fostering care of a more popular form of government, she was enabled, when unchecked, to develop advantageously her wealth and resources.

2. *Early Enterprise*.—The basis for this development was laid at the time when the spirit of exploration and discovery, which so eminently characterised the early periods of French colonial government, was evoked, and nobly sustained by the zeal and heroism of Champlain, Jolliette, Marquette, Blamois, La Verandrye, La Salle, Frontenac, and Beauharnois. The navigation of the rivers first explored by Champlain, has since been rendered complete, by the construction of the Chambly Canals; the course pursued by Jolliette and La Salle is now the great highway of our commerce; while the example of the

QUESTIONS.—Describe the other Courts of Lower Canada. What is said of final appeal? Mention the principal subjects of Chapter xix. What is said of the latent resources of L. C.? Give a sketch of her early enterprise.

self-reliance and energy of Frontenac and his successors, is still felt where he and they so long maintained in the New World the honour and glory of France. La Verandrye, in the years 1642-43, followed the course of the Saskatchewan, and reached the Rocky Mountains 60 years before Lewis and Clarke.

3. *Material Progress.*—Of public works, the most important in Lower Canada are the canals, railways, harbours, light-houses, and timber-slides. The annual value of her agricultural produce is now between fifty and sixty millions of dollars.

4. *Interesting Facts.*—The first Roman Catholic mission in Lower Canada was established by the Recollets, in 1615; and before the end of the same year, one of the Recollet fathers, who had accompanied Champlain, began to preach to the Wyandots, near Matchedash Bay. The first Roman Catholic bishop (Mgr. de Laval) was appointed in 1659-74; the first Protestant bishop (Dr. Jacob Mountain) in 1793; and the first regular Protestant Church service performed in Lower Canada, was in the Recollet Chapels, kindly granted by Franciscan Friars, to the Church of England in Quebec, and to the Church of Scotland in Montreal. The *Quebec Gazette* (still in existence) was first published in 1764; the *Montreal Gazette*, in 1778; the *Quebec Mercury*, in 1805; the *Quebec Le Canadien*, in 1806; the *Montreal Herald*, in 1811; the *Montreal La Minerve*, in 1827. Forty years ago there were but five newspapers published; now there are upwards of fifty. The Seminary at Quebec (now the Laval University) and the Industrial Schools, were founded by the munificence of Bishop Laval, in 1663.

5. *Recent Ameliorations.*—The Seigniorial Tenure has recently been abolished; municipal government introduced; and primary, collegiate, and university education placed within the reach of the entire population.

2. PROGRESS OF UPPER CANADA.

6. *French Posts.*—Lower Canada had already introduced civilization, and planted her trading-posts on the upper lakes, when the Province was divided, and Upper Canada settled by the loyalists from the United States, under Governor Simcoe.

7. *Public Improvements.*—Immediately after the removal of the seat of government from Newark to York, the energetic Simcoe constructed the great lines of road leading northward and westward from his infant capital. The Welland Canal

QUESTIONS.—Mention the most important public works of Lower Canada. Give a sketch of the interesting facts mentioned. What recent social ameliorations have taken place? Describe the progress of Upper Canada.

essors, is
the New
ye, in the
wan, and
d Clarke.

important
irs, light-
r agricul-
of dollars.
mission in
615; and
t fathers,

ch to the
n Catholic
; the first
d the first
er Canada,

Franciscan
he Church
ll in exist-
te, in 1778;
n, in 1806;
Minerve, in

apers pub-
minary at
al Schools,
n 1663.

re has re-
ntroduced;
ced within

ntroduced
per lakes,
settled by
or Simcoe.
removal of
energetic
northward
and Canal

Lower Ca-
ccent social
er Canada.

was projected by the Hon. Wm. H. Merritt, in 1818-24; the Rideau Canal in 1826; and the Kingston Marine Railway in 1827. The St. Lawrence Canals, the Great Western and Grand Trunk Railways, and other important works, have since followed.

8. *Interesting Facts.*—The first Assessment Act was passed in 1793, and slavery abolished in the same year. Municipal institutions were introduced in 1841, and greatly enlarged and popularized in 1849. The *Upper Canada Gazette* was first published at Niagara, in 1793; the *Brockville Recorder*, in 1820; the *Toronto Christian Guardian*, in 1827; the *Kingston British Whig* and the *Perth Courier*, in 1834: now Upper Canada has upwards of one hundred and fifty newspapers. Legislative provision was first made for public education in 1807, it was extended in 1816, and greatly increased in 1841. In 1846-50, the foundation of the present admirable system of popular education was consolidated and enlarged.

CHAPTER XX.

SKETCH OF THE MUNICIPAL SYSTEM OF CANADA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

The Municipal Institutions of Canada.

1. Early Municipal Institutions.—2. Introduction of the Municipal System.—3. Extent of the Municipalities.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 161.]

1. *Early Municipal Institutions.*—Municipal corporations were first created in England, by royal charter, as early as 1100. They were, however, only granted as special favours to particular cities and towns, and were then made subject to a variety of tests, oaths, and conditions, which were not done away with until 1828. Nor was it until 1835 that a general law was passed regulating the municipal system of England. A similar law for Ireland was not passed until 1840. Up to that time, there was no municipal system in Canada. Special acts were passed for incorporating the cities and larger towns, but the rural parts of the country were left destitute of local representative bodies. To the Quarter Sessions, or Board of

QUESTIONS.—Sketch the public improvements of U. C. Mention the principal interesting facts given. To what does Chapter xx relate? Name the principal subjects of it. What is said of the municipal institutions?

Commissioners, was entrusted the management of purely local affairs, while Parliament reserved to itself the care of the roads and bridges, canals, and other important public works.

2. *Introduction of the Municipal System.*—Immediately after the union of the Provinces, in 1840, an act was passed by the united Legislature, establishing elective Municipal Councils in townships, counties, towns, and cities in Upper Canada, and in 1847 a similar Act was passed for Lower Canada; while in the larger villages elective Boards of Police were established. To these bodies was entrusted the general management of all local affairs, including the care of the public highways and bridges, the licensing of taverns, the regulation of markets, the maintenance of jails, &c., with power to assess and collect rates to defray all municipal expenses. In 1855 the municipal system in Upper and Lower Canada was greatly extended and improved. With the further ameliorations which it has since undergone, as the result of a extensive experience in various localities, it is considered one of the most practical and comprehensive municipal systems in the world.

3. *Extent of the Municipalities.*—A village is the smallest of the municipal divisions. To entitle it to an act of incorporation, it must contain at least 1,000 inhabitants. A town must contain at least 3,000 inhabitants, and a city 10,000. A township is generally an extent of country from six to ten miles square, intersected generally at right angles by roads, called concession-lines and side-lines. Village and township corporations consist of a reeve, deputy-reeve, and a councillor for each ward or division of the township, or village. Town corporations consist of a mayor and town-councillors; and city corporations of a mayor, aldermen, and common-councilmen. Counties embrace various townships and villages. County councils are made up of the Reeves and deputy-Reeves of townships and villages, who elect their own chairman, or warden. The members of township and county councils are entitled to a *per diem* allowance for the time during which they attend the meetings of their respective councils. Councillors for cities, towns, or villages, however, receive no such allowance. All the members of these corporations are elected annually, by the assessed ratepayers, about the beginning of January of each year.

QUESTIONS.—When were municipal institutions first introduced into Up. and Low. Canada? Give a sketch, &c., of these institutions and their powers. Describe the extent and population of the various municipalities.

CHAPTER XXI.

SKETCH OF THE EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS OF CANADA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Educational Progress—Universities, Colleges, and Schools.

1. Early Educational Efforts in Upper Canada.—2. Subsequent Educational Efforts and Progress.—3. Universities.—4. Colleges.—5. Collegiate Seminaries.—6. Grammar Schools.—7. Academies.—8. Common Schools.—9. Educational Department.—10. Early Educational Efforts in Lower Canada.—11. Subsequent Educational Efforts and Progress.—12. Universities.—13. Colleges.—14. Academies.—15. Common Schools.—16. Educational Department.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1.—OF UPPER CANADA.

1. *Early Educational Efforts in Upper Canada.*—In 1798—six years after the settlement of Upper Canada—a memorial was presented to Lord Dorchester, the Governor-in-Chief, requesting him to establish a public school in some central place such as Frontenac (Kingston). In compliance with this request, a portion of wild lands was set apart for the endowment of such a school, or schools. No school was, however, established, nor was anything realized from the land set apart. In 1796, Lieut.-Governor Simcoe, through the Protestant Bishop of Quebec,* urged upon the home government the necessity of establishing such a school. In 1787, the Legislature of Upper Canada addressed a memorial on the subject to King George III. In reply to this memorial, the king, through the Colonial Secretary, in 1798, directed an endowment to be created out of the proceeds of the sales of wild lands to be set apart for that purpose, for the establishment of free grammar schools, colleges, &c., in the Province. The funds from this endowment not being sufficient, it was not until 1806–7, that the Legislature established a grammar, or high school, in each of the eight districts into which Upper Canada was then divided. In 1816, common schools were first established; but, although efforts were from time to time made to improve both

* The Right Rev. Jacob Mountain, D.D., was born in England, in 1751; consecrated first Protestant Episcopal Bishop of Quebec, in July, 1793, and continued in that office for thirty-two years. As a laborious and excellent man, he was greatly esteemed. He died in 1825, aged 75 years.

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter xxi relate? Mention the principal subjects referred to in the chapter. Trace the educational progress of U. C. Give a sketch of the Rt. Rev. Dr. Mountain, Episcopal Bishop of Quebec

classes of schools, it was not until 1841 that practical legislation was directed to the subject. In that year the first systematic outline of a school system was sketched out.

2. *Subsequent Educational Efforts and Progress.*—In 1846-50 the whole system of Common schools was thoroughly revised and reconstructed, under the direction of the Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Chief Superintendent of Education. In 1847, aided by a Council of Public Instruction, he established the Normal school. In 1853 he also reorganized the County Grammar schools. In the meantime the Provincial university was remodelled by the Legislature. With a little further modification of that university, the public educational system of Upper Canada may be said to be both comprehensive and complete.

3. *Universities.*—There are four Universities in operation in Upper Canada, viz.: The University of Toronto and of Trinity College, at Toronto; of Victoria College, at Cobourg; and of Queen's College, at Kingston.

4. *Colleges.*—University College, Upper Canada College; Knox, and St. Michael's Colleges, at Toronto; Regiopolis, at Kingston; St. Joseph's, at Ottawa; Huron, at London; and the Wesleyan Female College, at Hamilton.

5. *Collegiate Seminaries.*—The Episcopal Methodists have established a Collegiate Seminary at Belleville, and the Baptists a Collegiate Literary Institute at Woodstock.

6. *Grammar Schools.*—One hundred have been established in various parts of Upper Canada, or one or more in each county. They connect the common school with the university, and are managed by local boards of trustees, but are inspected by a provincial officer. They report to the Chief Superintendent, and receive aid through his department. The senior County schools are Meteorological stations.

7. *Academics*, superior schools, chiefly for young ladies, are established in the cities and principal towns of Upper Canada.

8. *The Common Schools* are aided by the Legislature, and are each managed by trustees, chosen by the people, and inspected by a local superintendent. About 4,500 of them, including 120 Roman Catholic separate schools, have been established in Upper Canada. All the teachers are licensed by local boards, except those trained and licensed from the Upper Canada Normal school, Toronto.

9. *The Educational Department*, situated at Toronto, is

QUESTIONS.—Mention the educational efforts and progress of U. C. Name each of the universities of U. C.—the colleges—collegiate seminaries. What is said of the grammar schools—academics—common schools?

ical legis-
the first
out.

In 1846-50
ly revised
. Ryerson,
led by a
al school.
r schools.
emodelled
on of that
r Canada

eration in
of Trinity
g; and of

a College;
opolis, at
don; and

lists have
the Bap-

established
e in each
s, but are
the Chief
ent. The

adies, are
r Canada.
ature, and
ople, and
of them,
ave been
e licensed
from the

ronto, is

s of U. C.
te semina-
n schools?

presided over by a Chief Superintendent of Education appointed by the Crown, and aided by a Council of Public Instruction. To him is confided the administration of the laws relating to grammar and common schools. He also distributes the legislative school grants, and issues a monthly *Journal of Education* for the public schools.

2.—LOWER CANADA.

10. *Early Educational Efforts in Lower Canada.*—In 1632 the first school was opened at Quebec, by Father Le Jeune, chiefly for the education of Indian youth. In 1635 he also founded the "*Seminary of the Hurons*," (subsequently the Jesuits' college). In 1639 Madame Lapeltrie established the Convent of the Ursulines at Quebec for the education of Indian girls. In 1662 the Seminary of Quebec was founded by Mgr. de Laval, first R. C. Bishop of Quebec. The College of St. Sulpice at Montreal, and various other institutions, were also early established in Lower Canada. In 1787, Lord Dorchester appointed a Commissioner to inquire into the subject. In 1801 the Royal Institution was established to promote elementary education, but it failed to accomplish much. Various efforts were subsequently made, with a similar object; but, as in Upper Canada, the present common school educational system was only established in 1841.

11. *Subsequent Educational Efforts and Progress.*—In 1845-9 various improvements were effected in the public school system of Lower Canada; but, in 1856, the whole system of superior and elementary education underwent a comprehensive revision and improvement, under the direction of the Hon. Dr. Chauveau, the Superintendent of Education for Lower Canada.

12. *Universities.*—There are three universities in Lower Canada, viz.: McGill College, Montreal; Laval College, Quebec; and Bishop's College, Lennoxville. There are also six Special Roman Catholic Theological Schools, besides the Congregational Theological College of British North America.

13. *Colleges.*—There are eleven Classical colleges and fifteen Industrial colleges in Lower Canada.

14. *Academies* are established in all the principal towns of Lower Canada. There are sixty-three for boys and mixed, and sixty-six for girls,—aided by the Legislature. There are also one hundred and thirty Model schools, and two Deaf and Dumb institutions.

QUESTIONS.—What are the functions of the Educational Department? Trace the early educational progress of Lower Canada. Name the Universities of Lower Canada. What is said of the Colleges and Academies?

15. *Common Schools*, there are about 3,330 primary and 210 secondary schools in Lower Canada. They are subject to the oversight of twenty-seven Inspectors. Three Normal schools have been established to train teachers,—French (Jacques Cartier), English (in connection with McGill University), and French (Laval). The first two are at Montreal, and the last at Quebec. The three are under the direction of the Superintendent of Education.

16. *The Educational Department* of Lower Canada is presided over by a Chief Superintendent, who divides among the colleges, academies, and common schools the annual legislative grants, and generally administers the school laws. Two *Journals of Education*—one French, the other English—are published by the Educational Department of Lower Canada.

CHAPTER XXII.

THE CLIMATE AND NATURAL PRODUCTS OF CANADA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

The Climate and Natural Products of Canada.

1. Climate of Upper Canada.—2. Mineral Products of Upper Canada.—3. Vegetable Products.—4. Climate of Lower Canada.—5. Mineral Products of Lower Canada.—6. Vegetable Products.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1.—UPPER CANADA.

1. *The Climate of Upper Canada*, though inclined to be extreme in winter and summer, is singularly tempered by the influence of the great lakes, which occupy an area of 90,000 square miles. It is milder than that of Lower Canada, or than that of many of the American States in the same latitude. The dryness and clearness of the atmosphere render Upper Canada healthy and agreeable as a place of residence. The Indian summer, which generally occurs in October, is a delightful time of the year. The sleighing season, in winter, is also a pleasant period. Rains are abundant in spring and autumn. Fogs are rare. The hottest months of summer are July and August, and the coldest months of winter are January and February.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the Common Schools of L. C.?—of the Educational Department? To what is Chapter xxii devoted? Mention the principal subjects of it. Give a sketch of the climate of Upper Canada,

y and 210
ject to the
ul schools
(Jacques
sity), and
d the last
he Super-

da is pre-
among the
ul legisla-
aws. Two
lish—are
Canada.

ADA.

a.

Canada.—
5. Mineral

III, p. 170.]

ed to be
ed by the
of 90,000
nada, or
ame lati-
e render
esidence.
ber, is a
a winter,
ring and
summer
nter are

?—of the
Mention
Canada,

2. *Mineral Products of Upper Canada.*—In Upper Canada, as stated by Sir Wm. Logan, the Laurentian system occupies the north, while the more horizontal surface on the south is underlain by Silurian and Devonian deposits. The Huronian is interposed between them and the Silurian. They consist of sandstones, silicious slates, and conglomerates, of which the pebbles are quartz, jasper, syenite, and gneiss. They abound in copper ores, with which are associated those of iron, lead, zinc, nickel, and silver; and they afford agates, jasper, amethysts, and other hard stones capable of ornamental application. Like the Laurentian, these rocks are without fossils. The economic minerals of the Silurian and Devonian series are freestone and limestone, for building; marble, lithographic stone, hydraulic cement, and gypsum. The drift formation is accumulated to a great thickness over the harder rocks in the level part of Upper Canada. The drift produces clay for red and white bricks and for common pottery; and supports patches of bog iron-ore, fresh water shell-marl, and peat; while petroleum, in some places, oozes up to the surface, from bituminous rocks beneath, and gives origin to beds of asphalt.

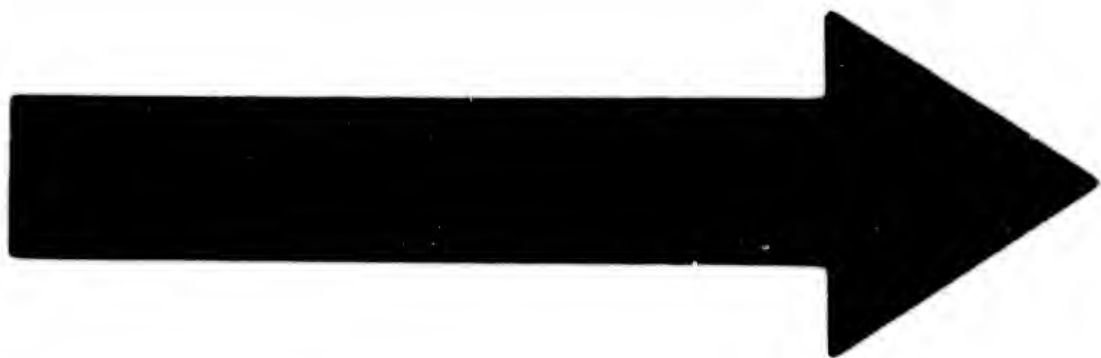
3. *Agricultural Products.*—Wheat is the staple product; barley, oats, rye, peas, buckwheat, Indian corn, and all other domestic vegetables, are raised in abundance. Hemp, flax, hops, and tobacco are easily cultivated in the western parts of Upper Canada. Maple sugar, Canada balsam, lobelia, gentian, ginseng, &c., also deserve notice. [An estimate of the value of the agricultural products of Canada will be found on page 187.]

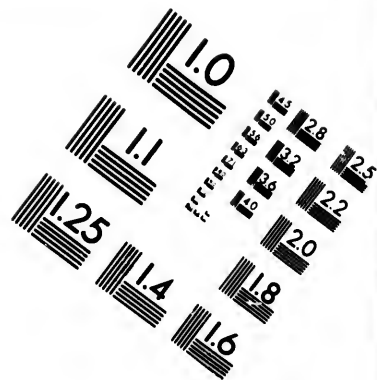
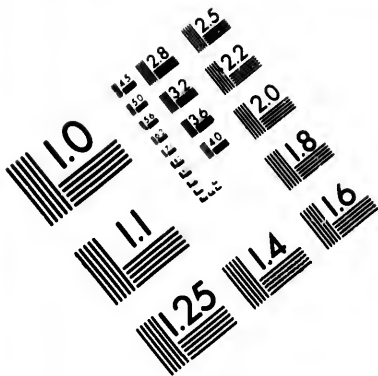
2. LOWER CANADA.

4. *The Climate of Lower Canada,* although similar to that of Upper Canada, is more severe and steadily fine in winter, and warmer in summer. Spring bursts forth in great beauty, and vegetation is rapid. Winter is always a gay and agreeable season, owing to the fine social qualities of the people.

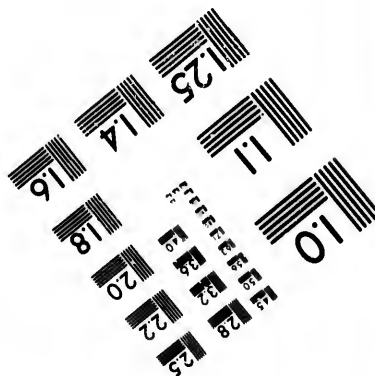
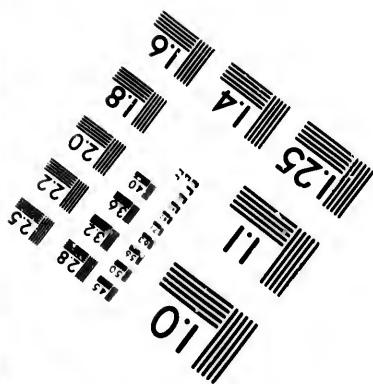
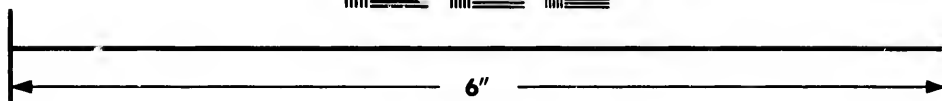
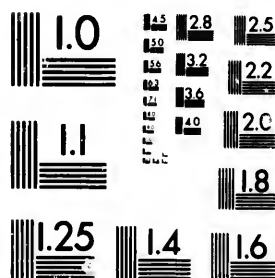
5. *Mineral Products of Lower Canada.*—The Laurentian system of rocks in Lower Canada is stated by Sir William Logan to constitute the oldest series known on the continent of America, and are supposed to be equivalent to the iron-bearing rocks of Scandinavia. They abound in iron ore; and among the economic minerals belonging to them are found ores of

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the mineral products of Upper Canada. What is said of the vegetable or agricultural products? Describe the climate of Lower Canada. Give an account of the mineral products of L. C.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.0
1.25
1.5
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0

1.0
1.25
1.5
1.8
2.0
2.2
2.5
2.8
3.2
3.6
4.0
4.5
5.0
5.6
6.3
7.1
8.0
9.0
10.0

lead and copper, phosphate of lime, barytes, plumbago, mica, and labradorite marble. The southern range consists of Silurian and Devonian rocks, in an altered condition, and they afford a mineral region yielding serpentine and variegated marbles, potstone, soapstone, granite, and roofing-slates, with the ores of chromium, iron, copper, and gold. The economic minerals of the flat country are limestones, building-stones, sandstone for glass-making, clay for common bricks and common pottery, fullers' earth, moulding-sand, bog iron ore, fresh-water shell-marl, and peat.

6. *The Agricultural Products of Lower Canada* are similar to those of Upper Canada. (See pages 185 and 187.)

CHAPTER XXIII.

SUMMARY OF THE TRADE AND COMMERCE OF CANADA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Trade—Commerce—Agricultural Products—Manufactures—Revenue and Expenditure.

1. Early Trade and Commerce of Canada.—2. Exports of Lumber and Grain.—3. Value of Agricultural Products.—4. Commercial Facilities.
5. Present Trade and Commerce of Canada.—6. Chief Imports.—7. Chief Exports.—8. Manufactures.—9. Revenue and Expenditure.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *The Early Trade and Commerce of Canada* consisted chiefly in the purchase of furs from various Indian tribes and their shipment to Europe. The return cargoes were principally imports of merchandise and military stores. Gradually seal-oil, wheat, flour, and timber, took the place of furs and skins, while the imports from Europe remained nearly the same. This species of trade continued to increase, and to extend to various countries, until further facilities for its development were provided, and laws passed to regulate it.

2. *Exports of Lumber and Grain.*—The shipping of lumber and grain—which now form the chief staple of Canadian exports—was in the early history of this country very insignificant. At the period of the conquest of Quebec, in 1759, the value of the timber shipped from that port did not reach \$40,000; fifty years later, in 1808, it had increased ten-fold,

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the vegetable products of Upper Canada? To what does Chapter xxiii relate? Mention the principal subjects referred to in it. Give a sketch of the early trade and commerce of Canada.

go, mica, consists of ion, and variegated ates, with economic ng-stones, and com- pre, fresh- e similar)

CANADA.

ures—

umber and al Facilities. Imports.—7. nditure.

III, p. 170.]

ted chiefly and their principally ually seal- and skins, me. This to various t were pro-

of lumber Canadian very insig- e, in 1759, not reach d ten-fold,

per Canada? subjects re- of Canada.

and was valued at \$400,000; at the end of another half-century, in 1863, it had increased in a still greater ratio, and was valued at \$10,000,000. In addition to the facilities of open lakes and rivers for reaching a seaport, timber-slides are constructed at the rapids, or other obstructions in the inland rivers, where timber-berths exist. It is estimated that at least 25,000 men are engaged in the lumber-trade of Canada. The value of the exports of grain is double that of the value of timber exported. In 1793, the number of bushels of wheat exported was about 500,000, and of flour 10,000 barrels; in 1802 about 1,000,000 bushels of wheat were exported, and about 30,000 barrels of flour; in 1853, about 6,300,000 bushels of wheat, flour, and bran were exported, valued at nearly \$7,500,000; while in 1862 nearly 9,000,000 bushels of wheat were exported from Canada, at an estimated value of about \$10,000,000.

3. *Estimate of Agricultural Products.*—The total quantity of wheat produced yearly in Canada is about 30,000,000 bushels; of oats about 35,000,000; rye, 1,500,000; barley 4,000,000; peas 15,000,000; buckwheat 4,000,000; Indian corn 5,000,000; potatoes 20,000,000; turnips, 25,000,000; flax or hemp, about 4,000,000 pounds; tobacco 1,500,000 pounds; and maple sugar nearly 10,000,000 pounds. The value of occupied farms in Upper and Lower Canada is about \$425,000,000, and of farm-stock about \$80,000,000.

4. *Commercial Facilities.*—In addition to the magnificent lakes and extensive rivers which the province possesses, the Legislature has still further increased her facilities for internal communication and trade, by promoting the construction of numerous canals, railways, and telegraph lines. Steamboats and other lake-vessels are now numerous. In 1809 the first steamer built in Lower Canada was launched at Montreal, by the Hon. John Molson, and named the *Accommodation*. On her first trip she left Montreal on the 1st of November, 1809, and reached Quebec on the morning of the 4th. The return trip occupied a week. The first steamer built in Upper Canada was launched at Ernestown in 1816, and named the *Frontenac*. Her first trip took place on the 30th of May, 1817. Her route extended first from Prescott (and afterwards from Kingston) to Toronto, and thence to Burlington Bay and Niagara. The postal system is also efficient. Canada has reciprocity arrangements, for the free exchange of natural

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the exports to various countries of lumber and grain from Canada. What estimate is given of the extent, &c., of her agricultural products? What commercial facilities does she possess?

productions, with Great Britain, the British North American Colonies, and the United States (to cease in 1866); and has also a silver coinage and a decimal currency.

5. *The Present Trade and Commerce of Canada* are extensive. In 1764 the number of vessels which reached Quebec was only 67, with a tonnage of 5,500; while about one hundred years later the number of vessels which entered Canada, inwards from the sea, had increased to 2,500, with an aggregate tonnage of 2,100,000. In 1862, the total number of times which Canadian vessels and steamers passed up and down the canals, engaged in the internal trade and commerce of the country, was 28,000, with an aggregate tonnage of upwards of 2,600,000; exclusive of 5,000 times which American vessels and steamers, with an aggregate tonnage of 1,050,000, passed through the same canals. The grand total aggregate tonnage of vessels engaged in trade in Canadian waters is about 8,500,000. The number of vessels propelled by steam on the Canadian lakes is nearly 400; with an aggregate tonnage of about 150,000, and a value of upwards of \$6,000,000. Of this number of vessels 100 are Canadian; their aggregate tonnage 32,000, and their valuation about \$1,500,000.

6. *The Chief Imports* into Canada are woollens, cottons, silks, iron, tobacco, tea, wine, sugar, &c. Their annual value is from \$40,000,000 to \$50,000,000. In 1862 it was \$48,600,000, and yielded a revenue duty of \$4,653,000; in 1863 it was nearly \$46,000,000, yielding (the duties having been raised) a duty of \$5,170,000.

7. *The Chief Exports* from Canada include products of agriculture, the forest, the sea, and the mine, animals and their products, ships, domestic manufactures, &c. Their annual value is from \$30,000,000 to \$40,000,000. In 1861, 1862, and 1863 they were as follows:

Article.	Year 1861.	Year 1862.	Year 1863.
Produce of the mine,.....	\$463,118	\$702,906	\$871,549
Produce of the fisheries,.....	663,700	703,896	789,913
Produce of the forest,.....	9,572,645	9,482,897	13,543,926
Animals and their products,....	3,681,468	3,923,590	5,502,633
Agricultural productions,.....	18,236,476	15,041,002	13,472,134
Manufactures,.....	289,130	415,327	868,782
Coin and bullion,.....	244,513	173,997	1,685,463
Other articles,.....	154,718	242,062	325,649
Short returns at inland ports,...	1,896,947	1,917,080	2,483,642
Value of ships built at Quebec,..	1,411,480	988,428	2,287,901
Grand total,.....	\$36,614,195	\$33,596,125	\$41,831,532

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the present trade and commerce of Canada. What are the chief imports into Canada? Mention the chief exports—from whence derived—and their estimated value in 1861-2, and 3.

American and has

are extended Quebec one hundred Canada, an aggregate of times and down the upwards of can vessels 000, passed tonnage about 8,500, in the Cana- ge of about . Of this ate tonnage

ottons, silks, al value is \$48,600,000, 1863 it was en raised) a

ducts of agri- als and their Their annual 61, 1862, and

2.	Year 1863.
3	\$871,549
5	789,913
7	13,543,926
0	5,502,633
2	13,472,134
7	868,782
7	1,685,403
2	325,649
0	2,483,642
8	2,287,901
25	\$41,831,532

nd commerce of ention the chief e in 1861-2, and 3.

In 1863 the exports and imports into Canada were as follows:

Countries.	Value of Exports.	Value of Imports.
Great Britain - - - -	\$17,463,718	\$20,177,572
British N. A. Colonies - -	935,196	510,713
British West Indies - - -	57,542	132,195
United States of America -	22,534,074	23,109,362
Other Foreign Countries -	841,002	2,034,651
Grand total - - - -	\$41,831,532	\$45,964,493

Showing that the aggregate annual value of the commerce of Canada is upwards of \$85,000,000.

8. *The Manufactures* are principally woollen, iron, glass, India rubber, cabinet-ware, soap, candles, &c., for domestic use.

9. *The Revenue and the Expenditure* are about \$11,250,000 each. The direct debt of the province is about \$67,000,000; indirect debt about \$9,000,000 more; total, \$76,000,000. The principal assets are: East India debentures, \$7,300,000; canals, harbours, light-houses, public buildings, and various provincial works, \$25,000,000; loans to incorporated companies, \$42,000,000; miscellaneous, \$2,700,000; total assets, \$77,000,000.

CHAPTER XXIV.

SOME OF THE PUBLIC IMPROVEMENTS IN CANADA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Canals--Railways--Steamers--Telegraph--Post Offices.

1. Public Improvements of Canada.—2. Canals of Canada.—3. Railways of Canada.—4. Ocean Steamers.—5. The Telegraph.—6. Post Offices.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *The Public Improvements of Canada* consist of her canals, railroads, public buildings, harbours, light-houses, roads and bridges, &c., the aggregate cost of which amounts to about \$50,000,000. The most important of these improvements consist of the canals and railroads.

2. *The Canals of Canada* are extensive and important, and have been constructed at a cost of about \$21,000,000. Their total length is 235 miles. They are as follows:

QUESTIONS.—What was the estimated value of the chief exports and imports of Canada in 1863? Mention the principal manufactures. Give the revenue and expenditure of Canada. To what does Chapter xxiv relate?

The Welland connects Lakes Erie and Ontario, and thus overcomes the Niagara Falls. The length of its main trunk is 28 miles, and of its feeder about $22\frac{1}{2}$ miles. It has 28 locks, and surmounts an aggregate of 354 feet. The locks are from 150 to 200 feet in length, by $26\frac{1}{2}$ in width, and have 10 feet water on the mitre-sills. Total cost about \$7,000,000.

The Rideau connects Lake Ontario with the River Ottawa. It is $126\frac{1}{4}$ miles long, has 47 locks, and surmounts an aggregate elevation of 457 feet, viz., 165 from Kingston up to Lake Rideau, and 292 from Lake Rideau down to the Ottawa. Its locks are 134 feet by 34, with 5 feet water on the mitre-sills. It was constructed by the Imperial Government for military purposes, and cost \$4,380,000.

The St. Lawrence consists of a series of canals, in all $40\frac{1}{2}$ miles in length, extending from near Prescott to Montreal, and surmounting an aggregate of $204\frac{3}{4}$ feet of rapids. The 27 locks are 200 feet by 45 each, and have from 9 to 16 feet water on the mitre-sills. Total cost, \$8,550,000.

The Ottawa, a series of $10\frac{1}{2}$ miles between Ottawa City and the St. Lawrence, at Lake St. Louis, surmounts an aggregate of $88\frac{7}{8}$ feet. Total cost, about \$1,500,000.

The Chambly, on the Richelieu river, extends from St. Johns to Chambly, $11\frac{1}{2}$ miles. With the St. Ours lock, it completes the navigation from the St. Lawrence to Lake Champlain. Cost, \$550,000.

The Burlington connects Burlington Bay at Hamilton with Lake Ontario. Total cost, about \$310,000.

The Desjardins connects the town of Dundas with Burlington Bay. Total cost, about \$250,000.

3. *Railways of Canada.*—In 1850 there were only two short railways. There are now *fourteen*, with an aggregate length of nearly 2,000 miles, constructed at an aggregate cost of over \$100,000,000. The two principal railways in Canada are the Grand Trunk and the Great Western. The Grand Trunk line extends to 1,092 miles, and includes the celebrated Victoria Tubular Bridge, of nearly two miles in length. (*See illustration, on page 166.*) The Suspension Bridge over the Niagara River connecting the New York Central and Great Western lines of railway, is a wonderful structure.

4. *Ocean Steamers.*—A Canadian mail-line of steamships, and four other lines, running to England, Ireland, and Scotland,

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects mentioned in Chap. xxix. What is said of the public improvements of Canada? Mention the names and extent of the principal canals. What chief places do they connect?



from
(Ma
5
the
6
ada
and
In
pos
thre
Mor
600
and
had
in 1
7,60
3,50
incr
due

Qu
the C
duce

and thus
in trunk
28 locks,
are from
e 10 feet

Ottawa.
an aggre-
to Lake
wa. Its
tre-sills.
military

all 40½
Montreal,
The 27
o 16 feet

City and
aggregate

from St.
lock, it
to Lake

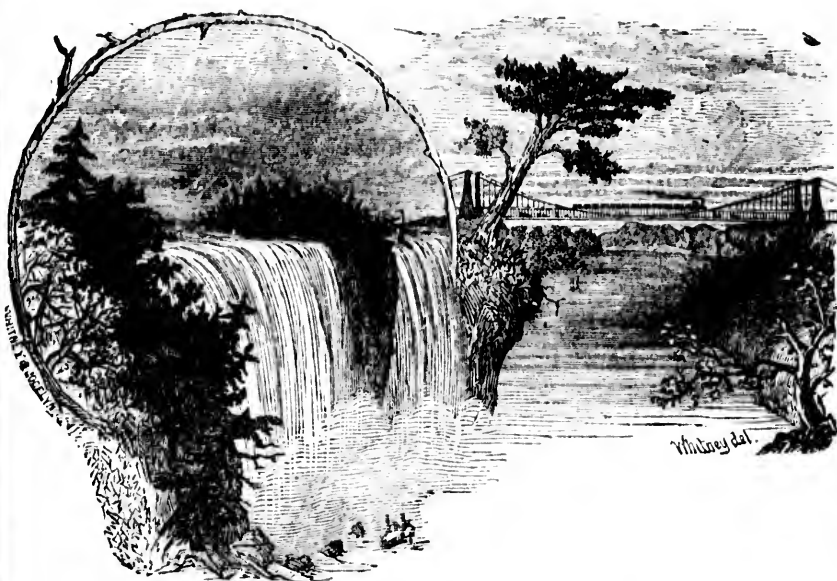
ton with

Burling-

two short
ce length
st of over
a are the
d Trunk
ated Vic-
th. (See
over the
nd Great

hips, and
Scotland,

chap. xxix.
the names
connect?



Part of the Falls of Niagara, and the Great Western Railway Suspension Bridge.

from Montreal and Quebec in summer, and from Portland (Maine, in the United States) in winter, have been established.

5. *The Telegraph* was introduced in 1847, and extends to all the principal places in Canada, the Eastern Provinces, &c.

6. *Post Offices* are established in above 2,000 places in Canada. The post routes extend to an aggregate of 16,000 miles, and the number of miles actually travelled is about 6,000,000. In 1766, when the celebrated Benjamin Franklin was deputy postmaster-general of British North America, there were only three post-offices in Canada, and 170 miles of post-route, from Montreal to Quebec. In 1791 there were ten post-offices, and 600 miles of post-route; in 1830 there were 150 post offices, and 2,500 miles of post-route; in 1840 the number of offices had been increased to 405, and miles of post-route to 5,737; and in 1850 the number of offices was 600, and miles of post-route 7,600. The number of letters carried in 1850 was about 3,500,000, revenue \$230,000; while in 1864 this number had increased to 11,500,000, revenue \$800,000. This is doubtless due to the uniform postage-rate of five cents introduced in 1851.

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the railways of Canada? What is said of the Canadian lines of ocean steamers? When was the telegraph introduced? How many post-offices are there, and what is said on the subject?

PART V.

Historical Sketches of the other British Possessions.

INTRODUCTORY.

1. *Maritime British Provinces.*—The maritime provinces of British North America, which lie to the east and south-east of Canada, are :

- | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. NOVA SCOTIA & CAPE BRETON. | 3. PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND. |
| 2. NEW BRUNSWICK. | 4. ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND. |

Their united area is about 106,500 square miles, and their population about 1,150,000, or nearly one half that of Canada.

2. *Other British Possessions.*—The remaining British possessions in North America are :

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 5. { HUDSON BAY TERRITORY. | 6. { BRITISH COLUMBIA. |
| { RED RIVER SETTLEMENT. | { VANCOUVER ISLAND. |

These possessions stretch from Hudson Bay to the Pacific Ocean, and are ultimately destined to become important portions of the British Empire.

CHAPTER XXV.

I. General Introductory Sketch of the Eastern Provinces.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Present Extent and Condition of the Eastern Provinces.

1. Acadie divided into two Provinces.—2. Communication between the Provinces.—3. Historical Sketch of the Maritime Provinces.

1. *Acadie divided into two Provinces.*—What are at present the Provinces of Nova Scotia (including Cape Breton) and New Brunswick, (with part of the State of Maine,) was formerly that outlying portion of New France which was known as Acadie. The boundaries and extent of these outskirts of New France were, to a late date in colonial history, left indefinite; and many a fierce dispute, ending in deadly strife, took place in the efforts which were made by the rival French and English colonists to define these boundaries. Although nomi-

QUESTIONS.—Point out the several Maritime Provinces. What is their united area and population? Name the other B. N. A. Possessions. Give the principal subjects of Chapter xxv. What is said of Acadie?



sessions.

provinces of south-east

ISLAND. FOUNDLAND.

, and their of Canada. British pos-

BIA. LAND.

the Pacific important por-

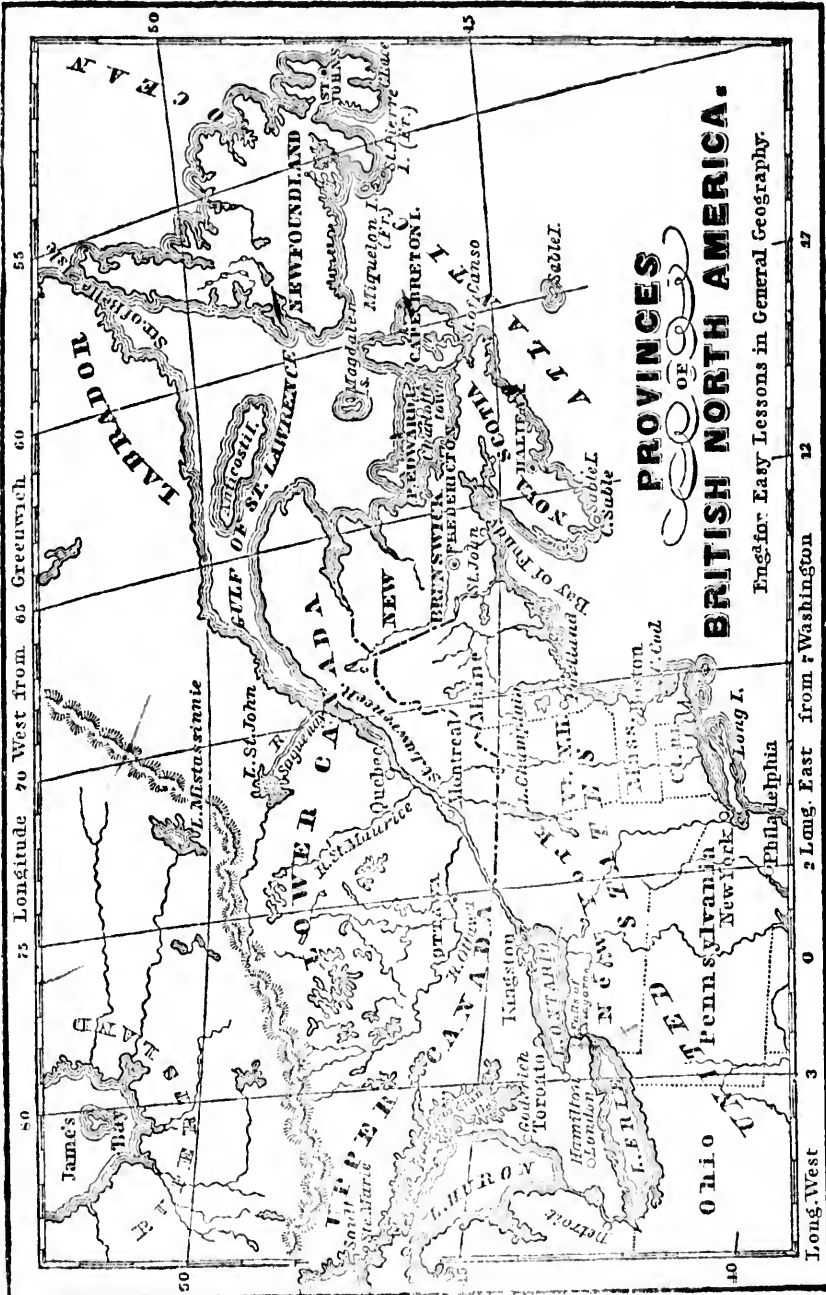
Provinces.

provinces.

a between the provinces.

re at present (Breton) and was formerly s known as skirts of New t indefinite; e, took place ch and Eng- ough nomi-

What is their A. Possessions. f Acadie?



Eng' for Easy Lessons in General Geography. Eng' for Easy Lessons in General Geography. Eng' for Easy Lessons in General Geography.

Long. West 3 0 2 Long. East from Washington 12 47

Drawn by T.C. SCOTT, Toronto C.W.

QUESTIONS.—Point out the relative position of each of the B. N. A. Provinces.

N

nally under French dominion, Acadie was, for a long time after its discovery, too vast a wilderness to be of any practical value either as a place of colonization or of trade, except at some points on the sea-coast. These places were, however, selected for settlement with the usual sagacity of the early French explorers; and they are to this day important central points of trade and commerce in the respective provinces. As the trading-posts of France and England in those early times gradually expanded themselves into colonial settlements, particular places in these settlements, often distant from each other, were selected either for purposes of trade or for military objects. Thus Port Royal (Annapolis), and Ste. Croix, on the opposite shores of the Bay Française (Fundy), with undefined boundaries running between them, from being originally in the same French colony in Acadie, came, in after-times, to be separate settlements, in the two after-provinces of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Physical causes, no less than the absence of easy modes of communication between outlying portions of Acadie, determined no doubt, from time to time, the present divisions of this part of New France.

2. *Communication between the Provinces.*—At present the principal mode of communication between the provinces is by water. And this must necessarily continue to be so between the islands themselves and with the main land. Railroads exist within two of the provinces; but as yet the intercolonial railroad, so long talked of, has not been constructed. Each of the three provinces concerned has constructed a portion of this road in the settled portions of the country within its own boundaries, but, owing to various causes, that portion lying between Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, and that between New Brunswick and Canada, remain yet to be constructed. The surveyed railroad distance between Halifax and Quebec is 635 miles: of this distance 205 miles have

QUESTIONS.—How were these eastern provinces first settled? At what two places were trading-posts established? What is said of communication between the provinces? Mention the railroads already constructed.

already been constructed, viz., 114 by Canada, from Quebec to Rivière du Loup; 30 by New Brunswick, being part of the line of 107 miles from Shediac to St. John; and 61 by Nova Scotia, from Truro to Halifax. The cost of the remaining 430 miles has been estimated at \$40,000 per mile, or about \$18,000,000. Should the proposed Confederation between the Provinces take place, it is expected that the road will be built.

3. *Historical Sketch of the Maritime Provinces.*—The Eastern or Maritime Provinces of British North America include Nova Scotia, New Brunswick, and the Islands of Newfoundland and Prince Edward (formerly called St. Jean). Newfoundland is the oldest British colony in America, having been discovered by Sir John Cabot in 1497, and taken possession of, in Queen Elizabeth's name, by Sir Humphrey Gilbert, in 1583. Acadia (now Nova Scotia and New Brunswick) was first ceded to Great Britain in 1713, and again, finally, in 1748. Cape Breton Island (formerly called Isle du Cap and Isle Royale), after the capture of the fortress of Louisbourg, its capital, was also ceded to Great Britain in 1748, and was united to the government of Nova Scotia in 1820.

(For size, general area, and statistical information in regard to these Provinces, see pages 34 and 35.)

PART VI.

CHAPTER XXVI.

History of Nova Scotia, including Cape Breton.

(Nova Scotia was so called by the first settlers, who originally came from Scotland; and "Breton" from Brittany,—Breton being the name of an inhabitant of Bretagne, or Brittany, in France.)

Size, one fourth less than New Brunswick, or equal to a square of 140 m.

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—2. Position and Extent.—3. Physical Features.

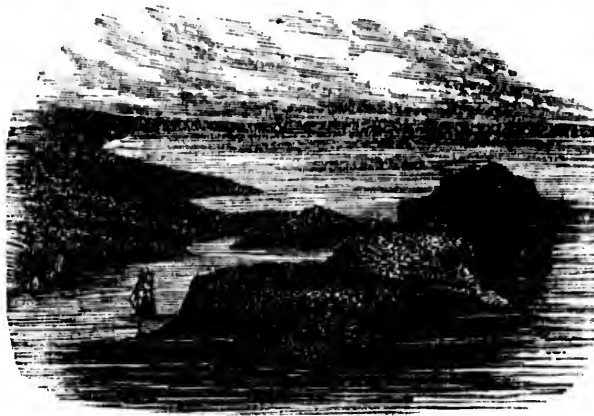
1. *Noted For.*—Nova Scotia is noted for its coal, iron, gold,

QUESTIONS.—What part of the proposed Intercolonial Railroad remains to be constructed? Give a historical sketch of the Maritime Provinces. How did Nova Scotia obtain its name? Give its size? For what is it noted?

and other minerals; its fisheries; and its extensive line of sea-coast and good harbours.

2. *Position and Extent.*—The Province of Nova Scotia includes the peninsula of Nova Scotia and the Island of Cape Breton, which lie to the south-east of New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island. They have been since 1820 united under one government and legislature.

3. *Physical Features.*—The peninsula of Nova Scotia is somewhat triangular in shape, and is connected with New



Appearance of Nova Scotia, &c., from a Balloon.

Brunswick by a short isthmus sixteen miles in length. Its surface is undulating and picturesque, and is dotted over with many small but beautiful

lakes. In the interior are several ranges of hills, of which the Co-bequid are the most important. On the coast, the capes, bays, and harbours are numerous. No part of Nova Scotia is more than thirty miles from the sea. A belt of rugged rocks, averaging 400 feet in height and from twenty to sixty miles in width, extends along the Atlantic coast from Cape Canso to Cape Sable, and along the Bay of Fundy coast.—The island of Cape Breton is nearly severed in two by Bras d'Or Lake and St. Peter's Bay. The island is rich in minerals, well wooded, and fertile. The surface is undulating, and the scenery generally beautiful. Sydney is the capital of the island.

QUESTIONS.—Point out the position and extent of the Province of Nova Scotia. Describe its appearance and physical features. What is peculiar about the coast-line of Nova Scotia? What is said of Cape Breton Island?

CHAPTER XXVII.

I. HISTORY OF ACADIE, (OR ACADIA) FROM ITS DISCOVERY UNTIL ITS FINAL CESSION TO ENGLAND, IN 1713.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Discovery—Settlement—Intercolonial Wars—Louisbourg.

1. Indian Tribes.—2. Discovery.—3. Settlement.—4. Vicissitudes of Port Royal.—5. English Efforts to Settle Acadie.—6. Capture from and Cession to France.—7. Cromwell's Expedition against Acadie.—8. New England Expedition.—9. First Capture of Louisbourg.

1. *Indian Tribes.*—When first discovered, Nova Scotia was inhabited by a tribe of Indians called the Micmacs, which was scattered over Acadie from Port Royal (Annapolis) to Miramichi. The Micmacs belong to the great Algonquin family, and were called Souriquois (or salt-water men) by the French. They greatly harassed the English colonies during the intercolonial contests; but, in 1761, after the government was firmly established, they finally submitted. In that year they were reduced to 3,000; and now they are only about half that number.

2. *Discovery.*—Nova Scotia—or Acadie, as it was called by the French—originally included the adjoining British Provinces and Maine. The name, however, is now confined to the peninsula alone. It was supposed to have been visited by the Cabots, during their first voyage to America, in 1497. As early as 1504–6, some fishermen, from Basque and Bretagne in France, while engaged in the cod-fishery off Newfoundland, reached the promontory of an island to the south-west of that island, to which they gave the name of Cape Breton,—after their own people in France. The name was subsequently extended to the whole island. In 1518, Baron de Léry proposed to found a French settlement in Acadie; but, owing to adverse circumstances, the expedition was abandoned. In

QUESTIONS.—To what does Chapter xxvii relate? Mention its principal subjects. Name the Indians inhabiting Nova Scotia on its discovery. What was the French name of Nova Scotia. When was it first discovered?

1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert took formal possession of Newfoundland and adjacent countries in the name of England; and, in 1590, Cape Breton was resorted to by the English. In 1598 an attempt was made to colonize Nova Scotia by the French, under Marquis de la Roche. His settlers being convicts, he feared they might be lawless, if set free on the main land. He, therefore, left forty of them on Sable Island, an inhospitable spot off the coast. Returning from the main land to the island, his ship was driven off the coast by a storm until it reached France. Here, on landing, he was imprisoned by a partisan in the then civil war, and was not able for five years to apprise Henri IV of his unfinished effort in founding the colony. The King, on learning the facts of the case, at once sent Chetodel, De la Roche's pilot, to the island to bring back the convicts to France. On their return, the King, being touched with the miserable condition of the twelve survivors, pardoned them, and gave each of them fifty crowns.

3. *Settlement of Port Royal.*—The traffic in furs having attracted the attention of traders, Sieur Dupont-Gravé,* and Chauvin, a master-mariner, succeeded to the rights of the Marquis de la Roche, and dispatched an expedition to the new world. Chauvin having died, Dupont-Gravé induced De Chatte, governor of Dieppe, to join him in the enterprise. With his aid, a company of Rouen merchants was formed; and an expedition was fitted out and sent to New France in 1603, under command of Champlain. On De Chatte's death, Sieur de Monts, governor of Pons, and a Huguenot, succeeded him. On the return of the expedition, Henri IV, being interested in the scheme, extended the privileges of the company, and another expedition was sent out in 1604. Part of the expedition went to Tadoussac, but De Monts preferred to stop at Acadie. He landed at a place on the south-east side of the coast, where

* Or Pontgravé. He was a rich merchant of St. Malo.

QUESTIONS.—Who first attempted the settlement of Nova Scotia? What was done by Sir H. Gilbert and by Marquis de la Roche? Describe the settlement of Port Royal? Who was Dupont-Gravé? What did he do?

he found a Frenchman named Rosignol trading for furs with the Indians without license. The harbour is now called Liverpool. Having confiscated Rosignol's ship, De Monts coasted in a south-westerly direction; he then turned to the north, and entered a large sheet of water, which he named La Baie Française.* Having reached a fine basin on the inland coast, Baron de Poutrincourt, a companion of De Monts, and also a Huguenot, was so pleased with the scenery that he obtained a grant of the place,—the first ever made in America,—and which was afterwards confirmed by the king. He at once formed a settlement, which he named Port Royal. De Monts continued his voyage round the bay, and, on the festival of St. John the Baptist, discovered the fine river known to the Indians as Ou-an-gon-dy, but which he named St. John. Entering another river, which, with its tributaries, was shaped like a cross, he named it Ste. Croix.

4. *Vicissitudes of Port Royal.*—On an islet at the mouth of the Ste. Croix, De Monts landed, erected a fort, and formed his settlement. The little colony, however, suffered great hardships during that winter. In the spring he left the islet and coasted southwards, visiting in succession Penobscot, Kennebec, Casco, Saco, and Malabarre (which latter place in 1602 had received the name of Cape Cod, from Gosnold, an English mariner). He soon, however, returned to Acadie, where he found that Dupont-Gravé had just arrived with a number of emigrants. Both colonies were then united at Port Royal. Under the guidance of the celebrated Lescarbot,† and of Poutrincourt, who acted as governor, the colonists set about consolidating their little settlement. De Monts and Dupont-Gravé shortly afterwards returned to France; Poutrincourt and

* Now Fundy,—from the words *Fond de la Baie*, in old French maps.

† Marc Lescarbot was a French lawyer, and a friend of Poutrincourt. He was the author of a History of New France.

QUESTIONS.—Describe the voyage of De Monts. What land-grant was first made in America? Mention the settlement of Port Royal and Ste. Croix. By what name was the Bay of Fundy known? Who was Lescarbot?

Champlain visited Ste. Croix, and coasted as far as Cape Cod; while Lescarbot explored the coast mountains along the Bay of Fundy. Shortly afterwards a marauding party of Dutchmen from the New Netherlands, hearing, through a traitor colonist, of the stores of peltry at Acadie, suddenly appeared, and rifled even the graves in search of beaver-skins. Scarcely had they recovered from this intrusion, when the intrigues of the merchants of St. Malo so far succeeded as virtually to destroy the protection in the fur-traffic which the Rouen company had enjoyed. The colonists at once determined to return to France. This they did in 1607. Nothing daunted, however, and with the help of some Dieppe traders, Poutrincourt collected a number of new colonists, and, in 1610, returned to Port Royal. Here he found everything untouched by the natives, as he had gained their confidence and regard. The violent death of *Héni IV* shortly afterwards, and the religious dissensions about the colony between the Huguenots and the Jesuits which followed, brought it a second time to the verge of ruin. The Jesuits determined to found a colony of their own, and an expedition left France for that purpose. They reached Port Royal in 1613, and took on board the Jesuit fathers there. Proceeding towards the river Pentagoet (Penobscot), misty weather compelled La Saussage, the leader, to land at the island of Monts-Desert. Here the colony of St. Sauveur was formed. The English, who claimed all this region, sent Capt. (Sir Samuel) Argall from Virginia to dispossess the French. This was soon done, as the colony was defenceless. Argall returned to Virginia, and, having shown to Sir Thomas Dale,* the governor, La Saussage's commission, which disclosed the colonization intentions of the French, Sir Thomas determined to drive them out of Acadie. Three armed vessels

* Sir Thomas Dale succeeded Lord Delaware as Governor of Virginia in 1611. Sir Samuel Argall was appointed Deputy-Governor in 1617.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the vicissitudes which these original colonies underwent. What did Poutrincourt do? Under what circumstances was the colony of St. Sauveur founded? What befel it? Who was Sir T. Dale?

pe Cod ;
the Bay
atchmen
tor colo-
red, and
ceely had
es of the
o destroy
company

return to
however,
ourt col-
urned to
d by the
rd. The
religious
s and the
the verge
y of their
e. They
he Jesuit
t (Penob-
eader, to
ony of St.
is region,
ossess the
fenceless.
r Thomas
hich dis-
r Thomas
ed vessels

of Virginia
n 1617.

al colonies
stances was
Sir T. Dale?

under Argall were sent against Port Royal in 1613. He soon took it, destroyed the settlement, and dispersed the colonists. Thus was Port Royal, after a three-fold disaster, for the time totally destroyed; and thus, by virtue of Cabot's visit and discovery, and Gilbert's act of possession, Nova Scotia was claimed and conquered by the Virginia colonists, under Sir Samuel Argall, in 1613. This was the first hostile act which occurred between the French and the English on the Continent of America.

5. *English Efforts to Settle Acadie.*—After the capture of Port Royal, the English forces left Acadie, although laying claim to it nominally. By virtue of this claim, King James I, in 1621, granted a patent to Sir William Alexander (afterwards the Earl of Stirling) authorizing him to settle the colony, and for that purpose conveyed to him that part of French Acadie which lay to the eastwards of a line drawn from the river Ste. Croix to the St. Lawrence. In the patent the name Acadie was changed to Nova Scotia. In order to promote its settlement, the king founded in 1624 the order of (150) Knights-Baronets of Nova Scotia. Each baronet was to receive 16,000 acres of land, and was required to fit out and send there six settlers, or in default to pay 2,000 marks. In 1625, Charles I renewed the patent, and even included in the grant the whole of the country stretching from the St. Lawrence to California.

6. *Capture from and Cession to France.*—In 1627 a large fleet of transports with cannon for Port Royal was taken by the English in the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Next year, 1628, Port Royal itself was captured by Sir David Keock, and in 1629, Quebec was captured by him; but the French, having lost it for a time, still held possession of Cape Sable, as well as other places in the south of Acadie. In 1629–30, Sir William Alexander conveyed part of his territory to Claude (afterwards Sir Claudius) de la Tour, who had been taken prisoner on board

QUESTIONS.—Why did Argall expel the French from Acadie? What is said of it? Mention the efforts made by the English to settle Acadia. Were they successful? What is said of the capture and cession of Acadie?

the transports, and brought to England, where he married an English lady. De la Tour was sent to take Acadie from the French; but his son, who held one of the forts, refused to give it up, although entreated to do so by his father. He then used force to effect its capture, but without effect. Finally De la Tour desisted in his attack, but remained in Acadie in a house erected outside of the fort by his son. At length, in 1632, Charles I, by the treaty of St. Germain-en-Laye, ceded the entire colony to the French. They divided it into three provinces, and placed them under as many proprietary governors, viz., De Razillai, young De la Tour, and M. Denys. On De Razillai's death, his brothers ceded their rights to the Chevalier de Charnisay. Charnisay came out from France to take possession of his province, and removed the colony of his predecessor from La Hève to Penobscot. In the territorial disputes which now arose between himself and young De la Tour, Louis XIII at length interfered and defined the boundaries of each disputant. To De la Tour was given the whole of Acadie west of a line drawn from the centre of the Bay of Fundy to Canseau; to Charnisay was given the country east of that line, including La Hève, or La Have, and Port Royal. De la Tour, who had already erected a fort on the St. John river, refused to accept these boundaries, and Charnisay was ordered to arrest him. De la Tour applied to Governor Winthrop for succour, which was granted, and Charnisay was compelled to retreat, and was even pursued by De la Tour as far as his fort at Penobscot. Charnisay objected to this interference; and Winthrop, on behalf of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Haven, and Plymouth, offered to make a friendly treaty, and to enter into trading relations with him. This treaty took effect in October, 1644. Charnisay now felt himself relieved from English interference, and, in the absence of young De la Tour, commenced his attack on De la Tour's fort.

QUESTIONS.—How did Claude de la Tour obtain part of Acadie? What led to the unnatural contest between father and son for the possession of Acadie? How did they end? Who was Charnisay? What is said of him?

De la Tour's wife, with great spirit, made an heroic defence. Being betrayed by a Swiss on Easter Day, Madame de la Tour, from her refuge in the works, resisted Charnisay so bravely, that he offered to agree to her terms. Mortified to find her force so small, he dishonourably repudiated his word, and with ineffable cowardice hung all but one of Madame de la Tour's brave defenders, and even compelled this noble woman, with a halter round her neck, to witness his own breach of faith. She did not long survive this inhuman act, but sank under its infliction, and died soon after. Charnisay, as a just retribution, did not long survive her; and De la Tour, then engaged in the fur-trade in Hudson Bay, on Charnisay's death returned to Nova Scotia in 1651, and, shortly afterwards, married Charnisay's widow. Charnisay's sister also bequeathed her claim to De la Tour. On the strength of this triple title, young De la Tour claimed Nova Scotia as his right.

7. *Cromwell's Expedition against Acadie.*—Under these circumstances, Cardinal Mazarin, who had no confidence in De la Tour, instigated a creditor of Charnisay, named La Borgne, to dispossess him and the other proprietary governors. M. Denys, of Chedabucto, was surprised; the settlement of La Hève was burnt; and at the time when La Borgne thought he had De la Tour in his power, suddenly a new antagonist appeared upon the scene, who settled the quarrel by driving both disputants off the field, and possessing himself of the entire colony. Taking advantage of the strife among the French colonists of Acadie, Oliver Cromwell, then Lord High Protector of England, despatched a force from England, under Colonel Sedgewick, who defeated De la Tour at the St. John, and La Borgne at Port Royal, and re-took the colony. Charnisay's fort at Pentagoet (Penobscot) was also taken without difficulty. The English, however, only held possession of Port Royal, and the French continued their settlements in the interior. In 1656, Cromwell

QUESTIONS.—Describe the disgraceful conduct of Charnisay. What is said of Madame de la Tour? Where was her husband? What did he do after her death? Describe the expedition sent against Acadie by Cromwell.

confirmed Charles De la Tour's claim, and granted to him, as well as to Sir Thomas Temple and William Crowne, the chief part of Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Temple and Crowne purchased De la Tour's share, and expended \$80,000 in repairing the defences of the fort. In 1667, England again ceded the colony to France, by the treaty of Breda.

8. *New England Expedition.*—The French, having concerted a plan to attack and capture several places in the English colonies, these colonies united in a scheme of vigorous retaliation upon the French settlements. In doing so, Sir Wm. Phipps was sent from Massachusetts, in 1690. He took Port Royal, which he dismantled, Chedabucto, and P'isle Percée, and then returned to Boston. Villebon, the French governor of Acadie, soon recaptured them; and from his fort at Natchwack, on the St. John, the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the colonists of New England. D'Iberville having arrived from Quebec, it was resolved to effect the reduction of Pemaquid. Having taken an English vessel, Villabon and D'Iberville were joined at Penobscot by Baron de St. Castine * and two hundred Indians. Fear of the Indians induced the commandant of the fort to capitulate; but that did not save them from the fury of the Indians. Villebon was afterwards taken and sent to Boston. Massachusetts retaliated, and sent Col. Church, who took all the forts in Acadie, with the exception of that of Villebon on the St. John. By the treaty of Ryswick, in 1696, however, England again restored Nova Scotia to France. Massachusetts having soon afterwards suffered from the attacks of the Acadian French, another New England expedition, under Colonel Marck, sailed from Nantucket for Port Royal, in 1707, but failed to do more than destroy pro-

* This gentleman, from Oberon in Berne, lived among the Abenakis Indians for twenty years. He married a squaw, and adopted the Indian habits. He had great influence with the aborigines, and was looked upon as their tutelary deity.

QUESTIONS.—How did Cromwell settle De la Tour's claim to Nova Scotia? Who purchased De la Tour's share? What led to an attack from New England? Give an account of it. What of the Baron St. Castine?

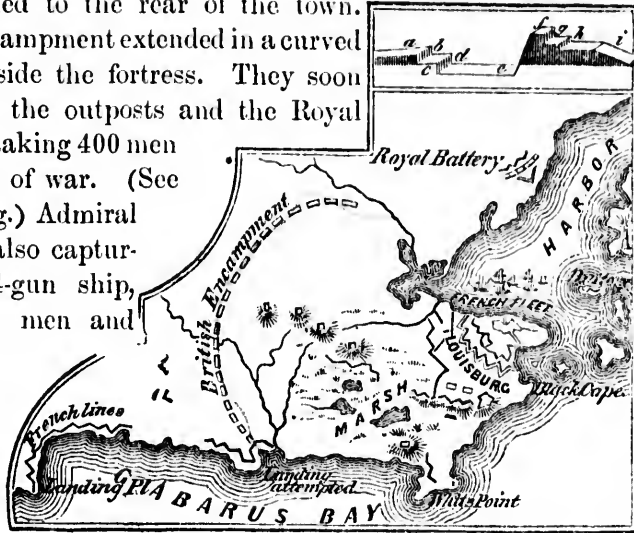
perty of considerable value outside the fort. Again, in 1710, an armament, under General Nicholson, left Boston for Port Royal. He captured the place, and changed its name to Annapolis, in honour of Queen Anne. In 1713, by the treaty of Utrecht, Acadie was finally ceded to England, and the name Nova Scotia confirmed.

9. *First Capture of Louisbourg.*—Cape Breton, called Isle du Cape by Verazzano, and Isle Royale by the French, was, although frequented by French fishermen, not taken possession of by the government until 1714. Having lost Nova Scotia, the French colonists now turned their attention to this island as a great fishing-station, and in 1720 commenced the fortifications of Louisbourg. They were completed at a cost of \$5,500,000. From this stronghold the French harassed the English settlements of Nova Scotia and New England. At length France declared war against England, in 1744. Louisbourg being a strong naval arsenal, French privateers against the commerce of New England were fitted out and took refuge there. This led to active measures against Cape Breton; and, in 1745, Shirley,* the Governor of Massachusetts, proposed the capture of Louisbourg, but he only carried the measure in the Legislature by a majority of one vote. Rhode Island, New Hampshire, and Connecticut joined and furnished troops; New York, artillery; and Pennsylvania, provisions. The command of the expedition (3,200 strong) was entrusted to Gen. Pepperrell. At Canseau they were joined by some English ships, under the command of Admiral Sir P. Warren, with 800 men. They reached Gabarus Bay on the 9th May,

* General Sir William Shirley emigrated from England to Massachusetts in 1733. He was appointed royal governor in 1741, and remained until 1756, when he was succeeded in that office by General Abercrombie. In 1745 he took part in the expedition against Niagara; and in 1755 promoted the scheme for the capture of Louisbourg. He died in Massachusetts in 1771.

QUESTIONS.—What did Gen. Nicholson accomplish in Acadie in 1710? What did his conquests there result in? Trace the chief events leading to the first capture of Louisbourg. Give a sketch of Gen. Sir Wm. Shirley.

and landed to the rear of the town. Their encampment extended in a curved line, outside the fortress. They soon captured the outposts and the Royal battery, taking 400 men prisoners of war. (See engraving.) Admiral Warren also captured a 74-gun ship, with 500 men and military stores. To reach the fort, cannon had to be dragged



Capture of Louisbourg in 1745.*

on sledges across the marsh; and, on the 21st of May, the siege was commenced. Other ships soon afterwards arrived, and it was then decided to attack the place. But, despairing of a successful resistance, the French capitulated on the 28th June, 1745, and were allowed to march out of the garrison with all the honours of war. The stores and prizes captured amounted to \$5,000,000. The island of St. Jean (now Prince Edward) was also at the same time claimed by the victors. To mark his sense of the importance of the capture, the King rewarded Governor Shirley and Gen. Pepperrell

* EXPLANATION OF THE UPPER PART OF THE MAP.—*a*, Glacis, or extreme outside slope of the defences; *b*, Banquette, or step, upon which the soldiers stand to fire over the parapet (*f*); *c*, Covered way into the fort, under the banquette; *d*, Counterscarp, a bank or wall, outside the ditch (*e*); *e*, The ditch or trench; *f*, The parapet, or protection for men and guns inside; *g*, The inner banquette; *h*, Ramparts, or most solid embankments of the fort; *i*, Talus, or last slope inside the fort.]

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the siege of Louisbourg. How was it conducted? Point out in the engraving the position of the opposing forces. Explain the principal terms relating to the upper part of the sketch?

with baronetcies. In 1746, the Duke D'Anville was sent with a French fleet to retake the island, as well as Annapolis, Boston, and other New England cities; but storms and disease wasted his forces, and the enterprise was abandoned. The duke died of chagrin, and his successor put an end to his life in despair. In 1748, the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle restored Cape Breton to the French, against the wish of the New England captors (whose expenses, of upwards of a million of dollars, were, however, repaid by England); but the same treaty confirmed the cession of Nova Scotia to the British Crown.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA FROM ITS CESSION, IN 1748, UNTIL ITS FIRST UNION WITH CAPE BRETON, IN 1820.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Halifax—Old French War—Settled Government—Political and Social Progress—Governors.

1. Frontier Commission—Exodus of Acadians.—2. Halifax Founded.—3. Colonial Government established.—4. Expulsion of the Acadians. 5. Old French War.—6. First Capture of Louisbourg.—7. System of Government from the Conquest.—8. Settled System of Government.—9. Various Interesting Facts.

1. *Frontier Commission—Exodus of Acadians.*—Soon after the treaty was signed, disputes arose as to the new boundaries of French and British America, especially in the valley of the Ohio river and in Acadie. Col. Mascarene, the British governor of Nova Scotia, maintained that the boundaries of Nova Scotia, or Acadie, as ceded to Britain, extended at least as far westward as the mouth of the Penobscot river, thence north to the St. Lawrence, including the peninsula of Gaspé, and the whole of the Nova Scotian peninsula. La Galissonnière, the French governor of New France, or Canada, insisted that

QUESTIONS.—How were the victors rewarded? What steps did the French take to re-capture the island? Give the principal subjects of it. What does Chapter xxviii relate to? What occurred after the treaty?



of May, the
ds arrived,
nt, despair-
ated on the
of the gar-
and prizes
of St. Jean
elaimed by
of the cap-
Pepperrell

-a, Glacis, or
, upon which
way into the
, outside the
tion for men
or most solid
rt.]

How was it
the opposing
of the sketch?

Acadie only extended to the Bay of Fundy (Française) and Minas Basin, and did not include either the isthmus or the Cobequid-Chiegnecto peninsula. In order to support his views, and to prevent further encroachments upon New France, he induced about three thousand Acadian French to migrate from the south to the north shore of the Bay of Fundy, and to the isle St. Jean (Prince Edward). La Jonquière, who succeeded La Galissonnière, hesitated to adopt the policy of his predecessor; but the French government directed La Corne, a military officer, to erect forts on the disputed territory. The British governor Cornwallis despatched Major Lawrence to resist La Corne, and also to erect forts on the same territory. This done, the proceedings of the French and English officers in those matters were reported to their respective governments; and a joint commission was appointed in 1794 to define the boundaries of both colonies.

2. *Halifax Founded.*—In the meantime, at the urgent request of the New England colonies, the British government offered free grants of land to such of the military as might choose to settle in Nova Scotia. A free passage was also offered, as well as tools, arms, and rations for a year. In consequence of this liberality, nearly 4,000 disbanded soldiers, under Governor Cornwallis, arrived in Chebucto Harbour on the 21st of June, 1749, and on its shores commenced the settlement of a town, which, in honour of the then Lord President of the English Board of Trade and Plantations, who had taken an active interest in the project of settlement, they named "Halifax."

3. *Colonial Government established.*—On the 14th of July, 1749, Cornwallis established the government of the colony, and appointed six members of council to aid him. In 1752, Cornwallis returned to England, and was succeeded by Governor Thomas Hobson. In the following year, nearly 1,500 Germans joined the colony, and settled in the county of Lunenburg.

QUESTIONS.—What disputes occurred about the Acadian boundary, and with what result? Give the particulars of the founding of Halifax. When and by whom was a settled government established in Nova Scotia?

4. *Expulsion of the Acadians.*—In the harassing disputes which arose between the French and English in regard to the boundaries of Nova Scotia, the Acadian French, although called neutrals, incited the Indians, and took part with them against the English colonists. They also assisted La Corne in his attack on Bay Verte in 1750. Fearing that they would aid their countrymen in invading Nova Scotia, the English colonial authorities, on the 10th of September, 1755, collected the Acadian population at various points, on pretence of conferring with them, and then cruelly forced them, young and old, innocent and guilty, on board several ships, which conveyed them to New England, New York, Virginia, and Georgia. About 7,000 were thus exiled, and their lands and cattle were confiscated. Their places were filled chiefly by New England colonists. After the peace of 1763, many of the exiles returned to Nova Scotia, and settled in the interior.

5. *Old French War.*—The great war of 1756–63, called the old French and Indian war, which ended in the cession of Canada, originated chiefly in the territorial disputes between the French and English colonists on the banks of the Ohio to which we have referred (see page 79), but it was also doubtless hastened by the harsh treatment and unfeeling expulsion of the Acadians in the previous year.

6. *Final Capture of Louisbourg.*—In 1756 the first blow was struck in this memorable seven years' war. In May of that year, a force under Colonel Winslow was despatched from Boston to attack the French forts in the disputed territory on the north shore of the Bay of Fundy. These forts, being weak, were soon reduced, and garrisoned by British troops. In the same year, an unsuccessful attempt was made against Louisbourg; but in 1758, after a vigorous defence for two months, it was finally taken from the French, by a force of nearly 40,000 men, under Generals Amherst,

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the expulsion from Nova Scotia of the French Acadians. What gave rise to the old Indian and French war? Give an account of the final capture of Louisbourg.

Wolfe, and Admiral Boscawen. Its fortifications were destroyed, and the inhabitants of the place were sent to France.

7. *System of Government from the Conquest.*—The government of Nova Scotia was, from its conquest in 1713 until 1719, vested solely in the governor as commander-in-chief. In that year a council of twelve, appointed by the crown, was associated with him in the administration of public affairs. In cases of emergency, the governor was required to place himself under the direction of the governor of Virginia. Thus the governor and council contained within themselves the three-fold functions of the legislature, the judiciary, and the executive. This system continued until 1749, when the seat of government was removed from Annapolis Royal to the new town of Halifax; and Governor Cornwallis was directed to establish three courts of law in the colony.

8. *Settled System of Government.*—In 1758, a constitution was granted to Nova Scotia by England; and, on the second of October in that year, its first Provincial Parliament was convened, under the auspices of Governor Lawrence. The Legislature consisted of the Governor, and of an Executive and Legislative Council combined, of twelve members, appointed by the Crown, together with a House of Assembly of twenty-two members, elected by the rate-payers. Although a want of harmony existed between the House of Assembly and the Executive Council, many good laws were nevertheless passed during the first session. In order to promote the settlement of the colony, liberal grants of land were authorized to be made to settlers in the colony, and a promise was made to them of military protection. The Legislature was prorogued in April, 1759; and, in October of that year, the colony sustained a great loss in the death of Governor Lawrence. He was deeply lamented; and a monument was erected to his memory in Halifax. In the same month George II died; and

QUESTIONS.—What became of Louisbourg? Sketch the system of government in Nova Scotia from the conquest to 1759. Trace the events occurring from 1758 to 1760. What two noted deaths took place in 1759?

ns were de-
t to France.
The govern-
3 until 1719,
ief. In that
was associa-
rs. In cases
place himself
Thus the gov-
the three-fold
he executive.
at of govern-
new town of
d to establish

a constitution
on the second
arliament was
wrence. The
Executive and
ers, appointed
ably of twenty-
hough a want
embly and the
theless passed
the settlement
horized to be
e was made to
was prorogued
he colony sus-
awrence. He
erected to his
ge II died; and

the system of gov-
Trace the events
ok place in 1759?

a re-election of a House of Representatives became necessary. In July, 1761, the new Legislature met at Halifax; and while it was in session, the Indians of the colony entered into a formal treaty of peace with the Governor, and their chief formally buried the hatchet in the presence of the Governor and Legislature. In 1763, Cape Breton was annexed to Nova Scotia, and in 1765 it was formed into a county. In 1770, Prince Edward Island was separated from the government of Nova Scotia. In 1775-76 much sympathy was expressed in some parts of Nova Scotia with the American revolutionists; in consequence of which, the members representing the disaffected districts were not permitted to take their seats in the House of Assembly.

9. *Various Interesting Facts.*—After the peace of 1763, many of the disaffected Acadian French who were exiled in 1755 returned to Nova Scotia. In 1764, captains of the King's ships in Halifax were appointed magistrates *ex officio*. In 1765, contributions were made at Halifax, at the request of General Murray, Governor-General of Canada, to aid the sufferers by fire in Montreal. After the American revolution, about 20,000 of the exiled Royalists settled in Nova Scotia; and in 1784, Cape Breton was erected into a separate government, with a capital at Sydney; but in 1820 it was again re-united to Nova Scotia, and authorised to send two members to the Legislature. In 1784 New Brunswick was separated from Nova Scotia. In that year, the Nova Scotia House of Assembly consisted of thirty-six members, who were returned from eight counties and one city. In 1787, Prince William Henry (then serving in the navy), afterwards William IV, was entertained by the Executive Council and House of Assembly. In 1792, the great Pictou road was opened. In 1806 the militia was organized. In 1816 a stage-coach line was established between Halifax and Windsor. In 1814,

QUESTIONS.—What occurred in 1761—in 1763—in 1765—in 1778? What was the state of feeling in Nova Scotia in 1775 in respect to the American Revolution? Give a sketch of the most interesting facts from 1763 to 1814.

\$10,000 were granted by the Nova Scotia Legislature to aid the sufferers by the war in Canada, and in 1827 nearly \$20,000 were collected in Nova Scotia to aid the sufferers by the great fire in Miramichi, New Brunswick.

CHAPTER XXIX.

HISTORY OF NOVA SCOTIA AND CAPE BRETON, FROM THEIR UNION, IN 1820, UNTIL 1864.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

1. Political and Commercial Progress.—2. Present Period.—3. Governors of Nova Scotia.

1. *Political and Commercial Progress.*—In 1820, efforts were first formally made to protect the English fisheries on the coast. In 1823 the Roman Catholics were admitted to the full enjoyment of equal civil privileges with other denominations. In 1824, an act was passed authorizing the construction of the Shubenacadie canal, designed to connect Halifax with Cobequid Bay. In 1828, \$1,500 per annum were granted to establish a line of stages between Halifax and Annapolis.

2. *Present Period.*—In 1838, the Executive-Legislative Council was dissolved. An Executive Council of nine members, and a Legislative Council of nineteen members, appointed by the Crown, was substituted in its place. In the same year, a deputation from Nova Scotia was sent to confer with Lord Durham (Governor-General of British North America), at Quebec, on a proposed change in the constitution. A confederation of the provinces was also a subject of consideration at that time, as it was with the Duke of Kent in 1814; in Canada in 1849, and between all the provinces in 1864. In 1848, a system of government, responsible to the Legislature, as in Canada, was introduced. In 1851 the public statutes were revised and consolidated. In the same year further efforts were made to protect the fisheries; and, in 1852, a Provincial

QUESTIONS.—What did the Nova Scotia Legislature do in 1814, and in 1827? Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxix. Give a sketch of the general progress made from 1820 to 1828—and from 1833 to 1852?

ature to aid
early \$20,000
by the great

FROM THEIR

1.—3. Governors

1820, efforts
h fisheries on
e admitted to
other denomi-
g the construc-
nnect Halifax
n were granted
d Annapolis.

gislative Coun-
nine members,
s, appointed by
the same year,
nfer with Lord
a America), at
ution. A con-
of consideration
nt in 1814; in
1864. In 1848,
egislature, as in
e statutes were
e further efforts
52, a Provincial
e do in 1814, and in
ix. Give a sketch
om 1833 to 1852?

force, auxiliary to the Imperial, was placed under the direc-
tion of the British Admiral for that purpose. Since then,
a fishing treaty and a reciprocity treaty have been effected with
the United States and Canada. In 1860 His Royal Highness
the Prince of Wales visited Nova Scotia, while on his tour
through British North America, and was enthusiastically re-
ceived by all classes of the inhabitants. In addition to the
other valuable minerals, gold was discovered in 1861. In
1864 Nova Scotia united with the other colonies in the consid-
eration of a scheme for the confederation of all the provinces
of British North America under one government. With that
view, a meeting of delegates from each province was held at
Charlottetown, Halifax, and Quebec. Peace and prosperity
now prevail within the borders of Nova Scotia.

3. *Governors of Nova Scotia.*—Now including Senior Coun-
cillors who acted as Lieutenant-Governors during the absence
or death of that officer, the following is a list of the French
and English Governors of Acadie, or Nova Scotia:

1. FRENCH GOVERNORS OF ACADIE AT PORT ROYAL.

M. de Poutrincourt.....	1604	M. de Villebon	1687
Isaac de Ruzillai.....	1633	M. de Brouillon	1700
Charles de Charuisay	1647	M. de Subercase	1706
Charles de la Tour	1652	Baron St. Cistine.....	1710
M. Manival.....	1685		

2. ENGLISH GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA AT PORT ROYAL.

Col. Vetch	1710	Lawrence Armstrong, Esq....	1725
Francis Nicholson, Esq.....	1714	Paul Mascarene, Esq.....	1740
Richard Philips, Esq.....	1719		

3. ENGLISH GOVERNORS OF NOVA SCOTIA AT HALIFAX.

Edward Cornwallis, Esq.....	1749	Edward Fanning, Esq.....	1783
Peregrine T. Hobson, Esq.....	1752	John Wentworth, Esq.....	1792
Charles Lawrence, Esq.....	1754	Sir George Prevost.....	1808
Hon. Robert Monckton	1756	Sir John Coape Sherbrooke...	1811
Jonathan Belcher, Esq.....	1761	Earl of Dalhousie.....	1819
Montague Wilmot, Esq.....	1763	Sir John Kempt	1820
Michael Francklin, Esq. 1722 & 1766		Sir Peregrine Maitland	1828
Lord William Campbell 1766 & 1772		Sir Colin Campbell.....	1834
Francis Legge, Esq.....	1773	Lord Falkland.....	1840
Mariot Arbutnot, Esq.....	1776	Sir John Harvey.....	1846
Richard Hughes, Esq.....	1778	Sir J. G. LeMarchant.....	1852
Sir Andrew S. Hammond.....	1781	The Earl of Mulgrave.....	1858
John Parr, Esq.....	1782	Sir Richard Graves Maedonell	1864

QUESTIONS.—What was done in 1832 to protect the fisheries? Name the
notable event which occurred in 1860. What important political step was
taken in 1864? Name the chief governors of Acadie, and of Nova Scotia.

CHAPTER XXX.

SKETCH OF THE CIVIL INSTITUTIONS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Civil Government—Judiciary—Municipal System.

1. Constitution.—2. System of Government.—3. Legislature.—4. Judiciary.—5. Municipal System.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

[NOTE.—The explanations and remarks on the political constitution of Canada, in Chapter XVIII, pages 170-172, apply also to Nova Scotia.]

1. *The Constitution* is founded upon Treaties, Orders in Council, Royal Instructions, and Imperial and Colonial Acts. Nova Scotia, then called Acadie,* was settled by the French, under De Monts, in 1604; ceded to England in 1713; colonized in 1748-9; a Constitution was granted in 1758; in 1784 it was modified; Responsible Government (as in Canada) was introduced in 1848; and the public statutes were revised and consolidated in 1851. Cape Breton was taken from France by England in 1758; ceded in 1763; annexed to Nova Scotia in the same year; separated from it in 1784, and re-annexed again in 1819.

2. *The System of Government* is, like that in Canada and the other provinces, monarchical in its most popular form, and is modelled after that of Great Britain. The Governor-in-Chief is nominally subordinate to the Governor-General of Canada, and is the special representative of the Queen in the province. He is assisted in his duties of government by an Executive Council, consisting of nine members, who must have seats in either branch of the Legislature, and who form the heads of the various executive departments of the government.

3. *The Legislature* consists (1) of the Governor-in-Chief; (2) of the Legislative Council, of twenty-one members, appointed by the Queen for life; and (3) of the House of Assembly, or Representatives, of fifty-five members, elected every four years. The powers of the Legislature are identical with those of the Legislature of Canada,—which see, pages 170-172.

* So called from the first settlers, who were from La Cadie in France.

QUESTIONS.—To what does chapter xxx relate? Mention the principal subjects of it. Give a sketch of the constitution of Nova Scotia. Describe the system of government established in Nova Scotia. Sketch the Legislature.

SCOTIA.

stem.

ce.—4. Judi-

XVIII, p. 170.]

Constitution of
Nova Scotia.]

Orders in
Colonial Acts.
the French,
1713; colon-
58; in 1784
(Canada) was
revised and
from France
Nova Scotia
and re-annexed

Canada and
ular form, and
Governor-in-
or-General of
Queen in the
rnnment by an
s, who must
nd who form
s of the gov-

rnor-in-Chief;
members, ap-
use of Assem-
elected every
identical with
pages 170-172.

adie in France.

tion the principal
otia. Describe the
h the Legislature.

4. *The Judiciary* consists of (1) the Supreme Court, presided over by a Chief Justice and four Puisné Judges. It is the highest court in the province, and holds its sittings twice a year in each of the counties, for the adjudication of civil and criminal cases. It also sits twice a year in Halifax as a Court of Chancery, or Equity. (2) The Court of Error takes cognizance of all appeal cases involving judgments for \$1,200. (3) The Court of Vice-Admiralty for British North America, which includes all the provinces, has its seat at Halifax. It takes cognizance of all maritime cases. (4) The Court of Marriage and Divorce takes cognizance of all cases relating to these matters. (5) The Court of Probate has to do with wills and estates of deceased persons. (6) The General Sessions Court for the management of county business by magistrates and other officials. (7) Justices Courts are the ordinary magistrates' courts for the trial of causes coming within its jurisdiction.

5. *The Municipal System* is yet in its infancy in Nova Scotia. The affairs in each county are chiefly managed by Quarter Sessions.

CHAPTER XXXI.

SKETCH OF THE EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS OF NOVA SCOTIA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Education—Colleges—Grammar and Common Schools.

1. First Educational Efforts.—2. King's College, Windsor.—3. Dalhousie College, Halifax.—4. Other Colleges and Academics.—5. Grammar Schools.—6. Common Schools.—7. Deaf and Dumb Institution.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *First Educational Efforts.*—The earliest public effort made in Nova Scotia on behalf of education was in 1780, when a grant of \$6,000 was made by the Legislature to erect a building for a Superior School at Halifax, with a further grant of \$100 per annum for a master, and \$200 for an usher, whenever the number of scholars should exceed forty.

2. *King's College, Windsor.*—In 1787, George III directed the Governor to recommend the House of Assembly "to make due provision for erecting and maintaining schools, where

QUESTIONS.—Mention the names of the principal courts. What is said of the municipal system? What are the principal subjects referred to in chapter xxx? What is said of the first educational efforts in Nova Scotia?

youths may be educated in competent learning, and in the knowledge of the Christian religion." The House, in compliance with this recommendation, provided for the establishment of an academy at Windsor, and recommended the erection of a college there. (In the following year 1788), the House made a grant of nearly \$2,000 to the Academy. In 1789, the College at Windsor having been projected, the House of Assembly made a grant to it of about \$1,800 per annum. Next year (1790), the Imperial Parliament made a grant of £1,000 sterling, or about \$4,800, towards the erection of the Church of England College, and, in 1795, a further grant of \$2,225, to complete it. In 1802, the College was incorporated by Royal Charter. In 1803, the College was formally opened, and the Imperial Parliament endowed it with a grant of £1,000 sterling per annum. In 1813, the College was further endowed by a grant of 20,000 acres of land in Nova Scotia. In 1833, the Imperial endowment of £1,000 sterling was reduced to £500, and in a few years it ceased altogether. In 1851, the Provincial endowment of £400 sterling per annum (first made in 1788) was reduced to \$1,000, which sum it has continued to receive up to the present time. It has now six professors and masters, and is attended by about fifty students. It still remains under the control of the Church of England, and has in connection with it a Collegiate School.

3. *Dalhousie College, Halifax.*—In 1817, the Legislature, on the recommendation of the Governor (the Earl of Dalhousie), granted \$39,000, out of the Baron de Castine fund, for the endowment of a college at Halifax, in connection with the Church of Scotland, but open to all denominations.* In 1818, part of the Parade-ground was given as a site for the proposed college. In 1819, the Legislature made a grant of \$8,000 for the erection of the new institution on the Parade, to be named Dalhousie College. In 1820, the college was incorporated, and, in 1821, the Legislature made a further grant of \$4,000 towards the erection of the building. Owing to various causes, but chiefly to the existence of several rival institutions in Nova Scotia, Dalhousie College was not successfully put into operation until 1863, when various denominations united to support it, as a literary institution. In the meantime, the Castine endowment

* Out of the same fund the Legislature also appropriated \$4,000 for the establishment of a public library in the same city.

QUESTIONS.—Give an historical sketch of King's College, Windsor. What is its present condition? When and by whom was Dalhousie College founded? What was the object of its establishment? Give an account of it.

fund, created in 1817, had by skilful management increased to \$60,000, which enabled the governors to appoint six professors to the various chairs in the institution.

4. *Other Colleges and Academies.*—In 1815 the trustees of an Academy established by the Presbyterians at Pictou, were incorporated. In 1837, the House of Assembly granted \$800 to an Academy at Annapolis. In the public accounts of this year the cost of the new Academy at Windsor is set down at about \$20,000. The Academy was first opened in 1819. In 1840, Acadia College, established by the Baptists at Wolfville, was incorporated. The Horton male and female Academies are in connection with this College. In 1841, St. Mary's College, established by the Roman Catholics at Halifax, was incorporated. In 1847, the Free Presbyterian Church established a Theological College at Halifax, and attached to it an Academy. They had also a Classical College at Truro, which is now incorporated with the College at Halifax. Goreham Congregational College, which was established by Mr. Goreham at Liverpool (Queen's County), having been burned, has not been revived. The remaining Colleges and Academies in Nova Scotia are: St. Xavier's Roman Catholic College at Antigonish, Cape Breton; Arichat Roman Catholic Academy at Isle Madame, C. B.; and the New Glasgow Academy in the County of Pictou, besides a Ladies' Academy and other female schools in Halifax. In addition to the Academies named, the Legislature has appropriated \$600 to each of the remaining counties for the establishment of a County Academy. The Legislature of Nova Scotia also pays \$1,000 a year to the Wesleyan Academy at Sackville, New Brunswick.

5. *Grammar Schools.*—In addition to the Grammar School and the Royal Acadian School at Halifax, and the Collegiate School at Windsor, there are forty-five others in the Province, attended by about 1,800 pupils—1,000 of which are in the classics and mathematics. The cost of these schools is about \$14,000 per annum, including nearly \$10,000 granted by the Legislature for their support.

6. *Common Schools.*—In 1811, an Act was passed by the Legislature of Nova Scotia, providing for the payment of \$100 in aid of a school or schools in any settlement of not less than thirty families in which \$200 were raised by assessment for school purposes. In 1826, the Province was divided into

QUESTIONS.—Mention the names of the other colleges and academies of Nova Scotia. Give a brief account of them. With what religious persuasions are they connected? What is said of Grammar and Common Schools?

school districts, and the rate-payers were authorised to appoint trustees for the establishment and maintenance of Common Schools, under the control of Boards of Commissioners. Various subsequent School Acts were passed up to the year 1849, when Dr. Dawson (now Principal of McGill University, Montreal) was appointed Superintendent of Education for the Province. Under his management the character of the schools was greatly improved, and the numbers increased. On the retirement of Dr. Dawson in 1854, another School Act was passed, and a Normal School was established at Truro. In 1855, Rev. Dr. Forrester was appointed Superintendent of Education and Principal of the Normal and Model Schools. Under his management the condition of the schools has been further improved. The establishment of the Normal School, which trains about 60 teachers a year, has given a great impetus to education, and has very materially elevated the character of the schools and the profession of teaching in the Province. In 1864, the School Act was revised, and many of the provisions of the Upper Canada School Act incorporated in it, including the substitution of school sections for school districts, and vesting in the rate-payers the right to determine annually how the schools should be supported during the year, &c. The number of schools, as well as the attendance of pupils, has nearly doubled since 1840. At present there are about 1,400 Common Schools, attended by nearly 40,000 pupils, and supported at a cost of nearly \$185,000, including a legislative grant of about \$50,000. The total number of Educational institutions of all grades in the Province is about 1,500, attended by upwards of 43,000 students and pupils, and supported at a cost of nearly \$225,000 per annum, including a legislative grant of about \$62,000.

7. *A Deaf and Dumb Institution* has been established in Halifax since 1858. It has been highly successful, and is attended by about fifty pupils from Nova Scotia and New Brunswick. Its total cost is only about \$4,000 per annum, part of which is granted by the Legislature of Nova Scotia, and part by that of New Brunswick, in proportion to the number of pupils attending the school from each Province.

8. *Private Schools*.—There are several private schools of an excellent description for both boys and girls in various parts of the Province. They receive no aid from the Legislature.

QUESTIONS.—What has been done for the establishment of public schools in the province? Who have been superintendents? What is said of the Normal School—of the Deaf and Dumb Institution—Private Schools?

CHAPTER XXXII.

SKETCH OF THE CLIMATE AND NATURAL PRODUCTS AND
COMMERCE OF NOVA SCOTIA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Climate—Products—Railways—Commerce.

1. Climate.—2. Products.—3. Railways, Canals, &c.—4. Manufactures.—5. Commerce.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *Climate*.—Nova Scotia, being in nearly the same latitude as Canada, has a climate somewhat similar to it. Within the influence of the Mexican gulf-stream, and being nearly surrounded by water, the climate of Nova Scotia is more equable, and less liable to the extremes of heat and cold, than Canada. Halifax harbour is very rarely closed in winter. The autumn is an agreeable period of the year.

2. *Products*.—The Province is rich in coal, iron, gold, and gypsum. In Nova Scotia there are three principal coal-fields, and in Cape Breton about the same. The agricultural products and fisheries of Nova Scotia are abundant. At the head of the Bay of Fundy, the alluvial deposits, thrown up by the high tides and enclosed by dykes, render the soil very productive.

3. *Railways, Canals, &c.*—A railway runs from Halifax to Truro, with a branch to Windsor. The Shubenacadie Canal connects Halifax with Cobequid Bay. There are about 1,500 miles of electric telegraph in Nova Scotia, connecting every county with Halifax, and Halifax with the other Provinces and the United States. Post and Way offices, about 400.

4. *Manufactures* in domestic articles, as well as ship-building, are carried on to a considerable extent.

5. *Commerce* is greatly promoted by 1,200 miles of sea coast, and about 50 ports of entry. The annual value of imports in 1763 was only about \$20,000; while a hundred years afterwards, in 1863, it was estimated at \$10,200,000; the exports in the same year at about \$8,500,000. The revenue, which in 1806 was only \$100,000, had increased in 1863 to about \$1,300,000; public debt in the same year \$5,000,000.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxxii. Give an account of the climate of Nova Scotia. What are its chief products? What is said of the railways and canals—of commerce and manufactures?

PART VII.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

PROVINCE OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

(So called from the German seat of the Royal House of Brunswick in Europe.)

Size, about the same as Bavaria, or equal to a square of 165 miles.

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—2. *Position and Boundaries.*—3. *Physical Features.*

1. *Noted For.*—New Brunswick is noted for its compact shape, its numerous rivers, its fine timber, and its extensive ship-building.

2. *Position and Boundaries.*—This Province (in shape an irregular square) lies south of the Gaspé peninsula, and is bounded on the north by the Bay of Chaleurs and Lower Canada, on the east by the Gulf of St. Lawrence and Nova Scotia, on the south by the Bay of Fundy, and on the west by the State of Maine.

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface of New Brunswick is agreeably diversified with hill and dale, mountain and valley, picturesque lakes and noble rivers. Its forests are well wooded, and the soil along the rivers and in the valleys is rich and fertile. The fine bays are well adapted for commerce.

HISTORY OF NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM ITS DISCOVERY UNTIL ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA, IN 1784.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Discovery and Settlement—Indian and Intercolonial Wars—Separation from Nova Scotia.

1. Aboriginal Indians.—2. Discovery.—3. Extent of Acadie.—4. Original Grants.—5. Disputes and Seizure.—6. Compromise of Claims.—7. Madame de la Tour.—8. Indian Inroads.—9. Capture and Cession.—10. Local Contests.—11. Settlement and Early Privations.

[NOTE.—As New Brunswick formed a part of the French Province of Acadie, or the British Province of Nova Scotia, for 250 years, from its dis-

QUESTIONS.—From what place was New Brunswick named? Mention its size? For what is it noted? Give its position and boundaries. Describe its physical features? Mention the principal subjects of chap. xxxiii.

covery in 1534 until its separation from Nova Scotia in 1784, its history is necessarily blended with that of the early French and English Acadian colonies of those times. We have, therefore, only inserted the following brief *resumé* of the preceding history of Acadie and Nova Scotia up to 1784, with some local references, as being also the history of New Brunswick up to that date. From 1784 New Brunswick has a separate history of its own, and as such we have given it in this chapter.]

1. *Aboriginal Indians.*—When Europeans first visited New Brunswick, three Algonquin nations occupied Acadie, then including New Brunswick and Maine, viz. : The Micmacs, or Souriquois (salt-water men), who occupied the country from Gaspé Bay to the river Ste. Croix; the Etchemins, or Malicetes, (canoe-men,) from the Ste. Croix to the Penobscot river; and the Abnaquis, or Kaunibas, whose hunting-grounds extended from the Penobscot to the Kennebec river. These three nations became afterwards more closely united, and were known by the French under the name of the “Nations Abnaquises.” The Malicetes frequented the river St. John, while the Micmacs kept to the sea-side. These Indians do not now number more than 1,500.

2. *Discovery.*—Jacques Cartier made his first voyage to the New World in 1534; and on the 9th of July entered a deep bay, which, from the intense heat he experienced there, he named the “Baie des Chaleurs.” He was pleased with the country, and experienced kind treatment from the inhabitants. In 1604, De Monts was commissioned by Henri IV to make further discoveries; and after visiting Port Rosignol (now Liverpool), Nova Scotia, he entered a bay which he named La Baie Française, since known as the Bay of Fundy. Coasting along this bay, with his companion, Poutrincourt, the latter selected a spot on a spacious basin for settlement, and named it Port Royal. De Monts hastened on; and, on the festival of St. John the Baptist (24th June), reached the grand river Ou-an-gou-dy, which he named St. John river. Entering another river, he erected a fort; and from the

QUESTIONS.—What is said in the note about the early history of New Brunswick? Give the names of the Indian tribes of the country, and say where they were found. Give a sketch of the discovery of N. Brunswick.

VII—1604

swick in

miles.

atures.

compact
extensive

shape an
a, and is
and Lower
and Nova
the west

swick is
and valley,
are well
ys is rich
nerce.

UNTIL ITS

7 Wars—

4. Original
Claims.—7.
1 Cession.—

Province of
from its dis-

? Mention
daries. De-
hap. xxxiii.

cross-shaped configuration of the stream and its tributaries, he named it *Ste. Croix*. This was abandoned, in 1605, for *Port Royal*, which, for three years, flourished greatly under the guidance of *Poutrincourt* and *Lescarbot*.

3. *Extent of Acadie*.—At this time the entire country extending from *New England* to the *Bay of Chaleurs*, including the islands and peninsula, was called *Acadie*. The English claimed it by virtue of the discoveries of *Cabot*, and the French from actual possession. The chief French settlements were *Port Royal (Annapolis)* and *Ste. Croix*,—which last was afterwards abandoned for *Port Royal*, as above.

4. *Original Grants*.—In 1621, *James I* of England granted to *Sir W. Alexander*, afterwards the *Earl of Stirling*, the whole of *Nova Scotia*, *New Brunswick*, and *Prince Edward Island*. With this grant he instituted the order of the *Baronets of Nova Scotia*, on condition that these baronets would colonize the country. In 1625, *Charles I* renewed the grant, and included in it the whole of the country from the *St. Lawrence* to *California*.

5. *Disputes and Seizure*.—Failing to gain possession himself, *Sir William*, in 1627, despatched *Sir David Kertk* and his brother forcibly to expel the French. They soon captured *Port Royal*, *Ste. Croix*, and *Pem-a-quid*, or *Pen-ta-go-et (Penobscot)*. They also made a prisoner of *Claude de la Tour*, to whom the French king had made a grant of a tract of country on the *St. John*.

6. *Compromise of Claims*.—In England, *De la Tour* and *Lord Stirling* agreed to compromise their claims, each to receive a part. *De la Tour* was sent to *Acadie* to carry out this arrangement; but *De la Tour's* son (*Charles*), who was in command of a French fort at *Cape Sable* (about 75 miles from *Sable Island*), refused to give it up to his father, who acted as the representative of the English claimants; but in 1632, *Charles I* ceded

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was *Ste. Croix* discovered and settled? Mention the extent of *Acadie*. To whom was the original grant made? What disputes followed? How were the claims compromised?

ntaries, he
5, for Port
under the

country ex-
s, including
he English
the French
ments were
st was after-

and granted
g, the whole
ward Island.
Baronets of
ould colonize
e grant, and
St. Lawrence

ssion himself,
ertk and his
oon captured
go-ct (Penob-
le la Tour, to
act of country

our and Lord
h to receive a
t this arrange-
n command of
Sable Island),
he representa-
Charles I ceded

covered and set-
he original grant
compromised?

the whole country to Louis XIII, and granted Lord Stirling £10,000 (about \$50,000) as indemnity.

7. *Madame De la Tour*.—Charles De la Tour, son of Claude, erected a fort at Gemsee, on the St. John river, after he had taken possession of his portion; but his success excited the jealousy of the French Governor, Charnisay. In 1638, Louis XIII defined the territory of the disputants. Nevertheless, the dispute continued; and Charnisay, having received orders from Louis XIII in 1644 to arrest De la Tour, laid siege to his fort. De la Tour, aided by Gov. Winthrop of Massachusetts, compelled Charnisay to raise the siege. Afterwards, in 1645, in the absence of Charles de la Tour, he again laid siege to Fort de la Tour, near the site of the present city of St. John. Madame de la Tour, an heroic lady, gallantly defended the Fort, and thrice repulsed him. Again he made the attempt; and Madame de la Tour, being betrayed by a Swiss, capitulated. Charnisay, mortified to find that he had been so long resisted by so small a force, had the barbarity to hang all the survivors, and even compelled this noble lady, with a halter round her neck, to witness their execution. She did not long survive the mental agony to which she had been thus exposed. Charnisay himself died in 1651.

8. *Indian Inroads*.—In 1639, French settlements were made on the Bay of Chaleurs; and in 1672, on the river Miramichi, and at other places on the eastern coast. The English colonists who settled in the colony after the successive conquests or partial conquests suffered much from the Indians, and were involved in the contests between the Mohawks and the Miamaes. The Mohawks were victorious; but in 1692, the Miamaes, under their chief, Halion, attacked the whites, burned their houses, and compelled them to fly. To allay this enmity, bounties were offered to such colonists as would marry Indian wives,—but this plan did not succeed.

QUESTIONS.—Who was Charles de la Tour? What dispute had he with Charnisay? Give an account of the heroic conduct of Madame de la Tour in the defence of the fort. What Indian contests took place?

9. *Capture and Cession.*—In 1652, Chas. De la Tour married Charnisay's widow, and succeeded to his estates. Le Borgne, a creditor of Charnisay, attacked De la Tour in St. John; but Cromwell having directed Colonel Sedgewick in 1654 to recover Nova Scotia from the French, he defeated De la Tour at St. John, and Le Borgne at Port Royal, and took the whole of Acadie. (See also History of Nova Scotia.) In 1667, the colony was again ceded to France, by Charles II. In 1690, Sir Wm. Phipps took Port Royal and other places. Villebon, the French governor, however, soon recaptured them; and from Fort Villebon, or Natchwack, (near the site of Fredericton,) on the river St. John, the Indians were supplied with arms to attack the English colonies in New England. The people of Massachusetts retaliated; and Col. Church took some posts in Acadie, and then returned to Boston. In 1696, the country was again ceded to France, by the Treaty of Ryswick. In 1704, Col. Church attacked St. John, Minas, and two other posts, but failed. In 1704 another unsuccessful expedition, under Col. Marck, was sent against Acadie. In 1710, however, Gen. Nicholson captured Port Royal, the chief port in Nova Scotia, which he named Annapolis; and in 1713, by the Treaty of Utrecht, the whole of Nova Scotia, including what is now New Brunswick, was ceded to Great Britain. In 1758 the first Parliament of the Colony met at Halifax.

13. *Local Contests.*—From 1713 until 1763, contests with the Micmac Indians and attacks from the French, who endeavoured to regain the country colonized by their countrymen, harassed the English settlements. But by the treaty of 1763, which followed the capture of Louisbourg and Quebec, France renounced all claim to either Acadie or Canada.

14. *Settlement and Early Privations.*—In 1761, some settlers in the county of Essex, Massachusetts, obtained a grant of an area of country about twelve miles square on the

QUESTIONS.—Give a further account of Charnisay's dispute with De la Tour. How was it ended? Mention the provisions of the treaty. What local contests took place? What is said of settlements and early privations?

our married
Le Borgne,
John; but
4 to recover
Tour at St.
e whole of
, the colony
0, Sir Wm.
llebon, the
; and from
erickson,) on
th arms to
e people of
some posts
the country
k. In 1704,
er posts, but
under Col.
ever, Gen.
Nova Scotia,
e Treaty of
what is now
753 the first

ontests with
who endea-
countrymen,
aty of 1763,
ebec, France

, some set-
ined a grant
are on the

ute with De la
treaty. What
rly privations?

St. John river. Next year they left Essex, and after some delay settled at Mangerville, in Sunbury; others settled near Carlow, at the head of the Bay of Fundy. Justices of the peace were appointed for the first time, and a court held there. In 1764, emigration from Great Britain flowed into New Brunswick; and during the American revolution many settlers came in from the adjoining colonies. William Davidson, from Scotland, formed a settlement at Miramichi, which in 1777 was nearly destroyed by the Indians, who had declared in favour of the American revolutionists. Privateers also pillaged the settlement. In 1783, peace was proclaimed; and great numbers of the disbanded troops and of the United Empire Loyalists settled in New Brunswick. In this year also a newspaper was first published in the Province. The loyalists had to seek shelter in log and bark huts; and, from having left comfortable houses, they had, for a length of time, to suffer more than the usual hardships and privations incident to a settler's life in the wilderness. For the first year the British government supplied them with provisions, clothing, and some farming implements.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

NEW BRUNSWICK, FROM ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA
IN 1784, UNTIL 1864.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Civil Government Established—Fires—Ashburton Treaty—
Responsible Government—Governors.*

1. A Separate Province.—2. Fire in New Miramichi Woods.—3. Fire in St. John.—4. Revenue Surrendered.—5. Ashburton Treaty, &c.—6. Responsible Government.—7. Governors and Presidents of New Brunswick.

1. *A Separate Province.*—In 1784-5, New Brunswick (then the County of Sunbury) was detached from Nova Scotia and

QUESTIONS.—What settlements were made in New Brunswick? Where did the colonists come from? What courts were established? Give an account of the U. E. loyalists. Name the principal subjects of chap. xxxiv.

became a separate Province. A town was built at the mouth of the St. John (now the important commercial city of St. John), and another at St. Anne's Point, called Fredericton. This last place became the capital of the new Province. Two military posts were established up the St. John,—one at Presqu'Isle, eighty miles from Fredericton, and the other at



Grand Falls, on the St. John River.

the Grand Falls, a hundred and thirty-two miles from Fredericton. A constitution was also granted to New Brunswick by royal charter, and Thomas Carleton, Esq., appointed governor. During his administration, of nearly twenty years, the country prospered greatly. From a rude, uncultivated wilderness, peopled chiefly by warlike Indians, he left it with many comfortable settlements, and with a regular government and local courts established, together with other evidences of permanent growth and stability. After he had departed for England, the government was administered, until 1817, by officers styled

QUESTIONS.—When did New Brunswick become a separate Province? What towns were soon after built? How was the constitution granted? What is said of Governor T. Carleton and of his administration of affairs?

the mouth
city of St.
Fredericton.
nce. Two
—one at
other at

Presidents. In 1809, the British Parliament imposed a duty upon timber coming from the Baltic into England, while that from New Brunswick and other colonies was admitted free. This continued to give a great impulse to the timber-trade of the country, until, in 1825, from over trading, a reaction took place. It again recovered, and, although subject to fluctuation, the timber-trade and commerce of New Brunswick has continued to flourish. At the close of the American war, in 1815, New Brunswick received a large number of military colonists, disbanded from the British army then in America. In 1817, Major-General G. S. Smyth was appointed to succeed Governor Carleton. He died in 1823; and in 1824, Major-General Sir Howard Douglas was appointed Governor.

2. *Fire in Miramichi Woods.*—In 1825, an exceedingly hot summer occurred, and a great fire devastated the entire east coast of Miramichi, covering an area of 6,000 square miles. 500 lives were lost, and property to the amount of a million of dollars destroyed. \$200,000 were collected in various places for the sufferers. In 1831, Sir Howard Douglas, who had successfully governed the Province for fourteen years, retired, and was succeeded by Sir Archibald Campbell, in 1832.

3. *Fire in St. John.*—In 1837 a destructive fire visited the city of St. John. 115 houses, and property to the value of \$1,000,000, were destroyed.

4. *Revenue Surrendered.*—In 1837, the revenues of the Province were surrendered to the local government on condition that the payment of the salaries of certain civil officers, amounting to \$58,000 per annum, should be granted to Her Majesty. In 1838, Sir John Harvey was appointed Governor.

5. *Ashburton Treaty, &c.*—In 1842, the Ashburton Treaty between Great Britain and the United States was negotiated by Lord Ashburton. By it the disputed boundary between Maine and New Brunswick was settled. This territory contained

QUESTIONS.—What title had the early governors? How was the timber-trade fostered? Did prosperity last? Name the governors. What calamities occurred in 1825 and 1837. What permanent change was made in 1837?

from Fred-
unswick by
d governor.
the country
wilderness,
many com-
t and local
permanent
England, the
icers styled

ate Province?
tion granted?
tion of affairs?

12,000 square miles, or 7,700,000 acres. Maine received 4,500,000 acres, and New Brunswick 3,200,000. Before the boundary dispute was settled, great discontent was felt by the inhabitants in the disputed territory, and collisions took place between them. The boundary-line between Canada and New Brunswick was afterwards peaceably settled. Reciprocity treaties and arrangements with the United States and Canada and other Provinces, have since been effected. In 1845, commissioners were appointed to survey a railway-route from Halifax to Quebec across New Brunswick; and in 1862-4 the project of this great Intercolonial railway was again revived.

6. *Responsible Government*, similar to that of Canada, was introduced in 1848. Since then the Province has increased in wealth, population, and importance; and now equally with the other North American colonies enjoys the protection of Great Britain, and the fullest exercise of political freedom compatible with the maintenance of that cordial and happy connection which subsists between New Brunswick and the mother country. In 1860 His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales visited New Brunswick, and was very cordially received by the inhabitants. In 1864 delegates from the Province united with the delegates of the other Provinces to consider a scheme of Confederation for the whole of the British North American Provinces.

7. *The Governors and Presidents of New Brunswick* have been as follows :

Thomas Carleton, Esq., Governor-in-Chief.....	1784	Hon. J. M. Bliss, President...	1826
Hon. G. G. Ludlow, President..	1786	Gen. Sir Howard Douglas, Governor.....	1829
Hon. E. Winslow, President...	1803	Hon. W. Black, President....	1822
Col. G. Johnston, President...	1808	Gen. Sir A. Campbell, Gov....	1832
Gen. M. Hunter, Governor....	1809	Gen. Sir John Harvey, Gov....	1837
Gen. W. Balfour, President...	1811	Col. Sir W. M. G. Colebrooke,	
Gen. G. S. Smyth, President..	1812	Governor.....	1841
Gen. Sir J. Saumarez, Pres....	1813	Sir E. Walker Head, Governor	1850
Col. H. W. Hailes, President..	1816	Hon. J. H. T. Manners Sutton,	
Gen. G. S. Smyth, Governor..	1817	Governor.....	1854
Hon. Ward Chipman, Pres....	1823	Hon. A. Gordon, Governor...	1862

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal divisions made of the disputed territory under the Ashburton Treaty. What state of feeling existed on the subject? What occurrences have taken place since? Who were governors?

received
 Before the
 elt by the
 ook place
 and New
 ocity trea-
 d Canada
 845, com-
 ute from
 862-4 the
 revived.
 nada, was
 creased in
 ually with
 otecton of
 al freedom
 and happy
 ck and the
 Prince of
 ordially re-
 m the Pro-
 nces to con-
 the British
 wick have
 sident... 1826
 glas, Go-
 1829
 dent.... 1829
 Gov.... 1832
 , Gov... 1837
 ebrooke,
 1841
 Governor 1850
 s Sutton,
 1854
 ernor... 1862

the disputed
 existed on the
 re governors ?

CHAPTER XXXV.

SKETCH OF THE CIVIL INSTITUTIONS OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Civil Government—Judiciary—Municipal System.

1. The Constitution.—2. The System of Government.—3. The Legislature.
4. The Judiciary.—5. The Municipal System.

[NOTE.—The explanations and remarks on the political constitution of Canada, in Chapter XVIII, pages 170-172, apply also to New Brunswick.]

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *The Constitution*, as in Canada, is founded upon treaties, acts of Imperial Parliament, and acts of the local Legislature. In 1713, the Province, being part of the French colony of Acadie, was, by treaty, ceded to the British Crown. This treaty was finally confirmed by another treaty with France in 1763. In 1785, New Brunswick was, by an act of the Imperial Parliament, separated from Nova Scotia, and erected into a distinct Province. It was named New Brunswick, after Brunswick in Lower Saxony, in Germany, the original place of residence, up to 1714, of the present royal family of England, when George I, Elector of Hanover and Duke of Brunswick, ascended the British throne.

2. *The System of Government* is monarchical in its most popular form, and is modelled after that of Great Britain. The Governor-in-Chief is nominally subordinate to the Governor-General of Canada, and is the special representative of the Queen in the Province. He is assisted in his duties of government by an Executive Council, consisting of nine members, who must have seats in either branch of the Legislature, and who form the heads of the various executive departments of the government.

3. *The Legislature* consists (1) of the Governor-in-Chief; (2) the Legislative Council, of twenty-one members, appointed by the Crown for life; and (3) of the House of Assembly, of forty-one members, elected every four years. Its powers are identical with those of the Legislature of Canada,—which see, pages 170-172.

QUESTIONS.—To what does chapter xxxv relate? Mention the principal subjects of it. What is said in the first note? What is said of the constitution—system of government - and Legislature of New Brunswick?

4. *The Judiciary* consists of the following superior courts, viz.: 1. The Supreme Court, presided over by a chief justice and assistant judges. It has jurisdiction over all criminal cases, all civil suits in equity, common or statute law, involving a sum of not less than \$20, except in appeal cases from the Justices' Courts. The court sits at Fredericton, but its judges hold assizes in each county every year. (2) The Vice Admiralty Court has one judge, who sits in St. John, and has jurisdiction in all maritime cases. (3) The court for the trial of Piracy has jurisdiction over all offences committed at sea, and consists of the Lieutenant-Governor, Chief Justice, and other judges of the Superior Court, the Vice-Admiralty Judge, the Provincial Secretary and Provincial Treasurer, and the chief officers and commanders of ships on the station. (4) The Marriage and Divorce Court consists of the Lieutenant-Governor, his Executive Council, and one or more judges of the Superior Court. (5) The Court of Probate, presided over by Surrogate Judges, has equity jurisdiction over wills and the estates of persons dying intestate, or without wills. The inferior courts are: (6) The Court of Common Pleas and General Sessions of the Peace, or Quarter Sessions, has jurisdiction in *civil* matters over cases not involving titles to land in which the sum in dispute exceeds \$20. In *criminal* matters these courts take cognizance of larcenies and petty offences not involving capital punishment. They also exercise municipal functions in unincorporated counties, and levy taxes, appoint officers, and audit accounts, in such counties and parishes. (7) The Justices' Court takes cognizance in civil matters of suits for sums less than \$20 (not involving land-titles), subject to an appeal to the Superior Court. In criminal cases two justices of the peace preside and decide petty cases of crime.

5. *The Municipal System* is modelled after that of Canada, and provides, at the discretion of each county, for the election of a warden and councillors to manage the local affairs of the county. As yet, few counties have become incorporated under the Act; but provision is made for each parish to elect township officers. This election, to be legal, must be confirmed by the Court of Justices in session. Cities and towns have from time to time received their own special acts of incorporation, as their population increased or other circumstances warranted.

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Judiciary of New Brunswick. How many kinds of law courts are established? What is said of the Municipal system? What is peculiar about the election of the township officers?

CHAPTER XXXVI.

SKETCH OF THE EDUCATIONAL PROGRESS OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Efforts and Progress—Parish and Grammar Schools—Colleges and Academies—Educational Department.

1. Educational Efforts and Progress.—2. Common or Parish Schools.—3. Grammar Schools.—4. University of New Brunswick.—5. Colleges and Academies.—6. The Educational Department.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *Educational Efforts and Progress.*—In New Brunswick, as in Canada, the efforts to provide education were for many years spasmodic, and took nearly the same direction.

2. *Common or Parish Schools.*—Little was permanently done in early times for elementary education. In 1833, a general School Act was passed, authorizing the rate-payers to appoint three trustees in each parish for the purpose of dividing it into school sections or districts, and to examine and employ teachers. Provided the inhabitants contributed £20 for a male, and £10 for a female teacher, with board, and the schools were kept open for at least six months in each year, the Legislature contributed an equal sum to aid in supporting the schools. In 1837 another more comprehensive act was passed, providing for the establishment of a County Board of Education for the examination of teachers. In 1840 this act was supplemented by one which raised the stipend of teachers. In 1847 the whole of the preceding acts were, with some modifications, embraced in one statute. In 1837 the entire system of public instruction was under revision and improvement. A new act was passed, and provincial and local superintendents or inspectors were appointed to give it effect. A normal or training and model schools were also established at St. John. In 1854 this act was supplemented by one which raised the salaries of teachers. There were about 850 common schools in operation in New Brunswick in 1863, besides about 25 superior schools (a grade between common and grammar schools), and 20 denominational and Madras schools.

3. *Grammar Schools* have been established in nearly all the counties of New Brunswick. Each grammar school receives

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxxvi. What was the nature of the early educational efforts in New Brunswick? What is said about the early establishment of the common or parish schools there?

£100 per annum from the Legislature, and, in addition, is supported by fees and subscriptions. King's College Collegiate School is the Grammar School for York County.

4. *New Brunswick University.*—In 1800 the Legislature passed an Act incorporating an Educational Institution for the Province, under the name of the College of New Brunswick, at Fredericton. In 1828, this name was changed to that of King's College by royal charter, and endowed with \$800 yearly, and a grant of 6,000 acres of land. Its income is now about \$13,500 per annum. In 1854 a commissioner from Canada (Rev. Dr. Ryerson, Chief Superintendent of Education), one from Nova Scotia (J. W. Dawson, Esq., LL.D., (now Principal of McGill University, Montreal), and three from New Brunswick (Hon. Messrs. Gray, Saunders, and Brown), were appointed by the Lieutenant-Governor to devise a scheme for increasing the usefulness of the institution. In 1860, an Act was passed by the Legislature reorganising the institution in the manner suggested by the commissioners. Each county in the Province is entitled to a yearly scholarship for one student, valued at sixty dollars, besides gratuitous instruction.

5. *Other Colleges and Academies.*—In 1836 the Baptists of the Province established a seminary for higher education, in Fredericton. This institution receives a grant of \$1,000 per annum from the Legislature. In 1843 the Wesleyan Methodists, partly by the liberality of C. F. Allison, Esq., erected the Allison Academy for higher education, at Sackville. In 1854 the Wesleyans also established a Female Academy at Sackville. These institutions receive an annual grant of \$2,400 from the Legislature of New Brunswick, and \$1,000 from the Legislature of Nova Scotia. The Presbyterians have a college at Woodstock, and an academy at Chatham; the Roman Catholics have also an academy at Chatham, as well as St. Basil's Academy, which receive grants from the Legislature. There are also other academies. The total of the Parliamentary grant in aid of education in New Brunswick is nearly \$150,000 per annum.

6. *The Educational Department,* at Fredericton, is presided over by a Chief Superintendent of Education, aided by a Board of Education for the Province. This officer administers the school laws, receives reports, apportions the legislative grant, and makes an annual educational visit to the various counties. The present chief superintendent is J. Bennett, Esq.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of grammar schools? Give a sketch of the history of the New Brunswick University. What is said of the other colleges and academies? and of the Educational Department of New B.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

SKETCH OF THE CLIMATE, NATURAL PRODUCTS, AND COMMERCE
OF NEW BRUNSWICK.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Climate—Products—Commerce—Railways—Manufactures.

1. The Climate.—2. Chief Products.—3. Commerce.—4. Principal Exports.
—5. Railways.—6. Telegraphs.—7. Post-Offices.—8. Manufactures.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 179.]

1. *The Climate*, though subject to great extremes of heat and cold, is less severe than that of Lower Canada, and is very healthy. Fogs come from the Bay of Fundy, but rarely extend any distance inland. Autumn is generally a beautiful season of the year.

2. *The Chief Products* are agricultural; but coal, iron, asphalt, lead, granite, marble, and other valuable minerals are abundant.

3. *Commerce*.—The fine rivers, bays, and extent of sea-coast give New Brunswick great commercial facilities. There are about 1,000 vessels, large and small, engaged in trade, fishing, &c. New Brunswick has now, like Canada, a decimal currency and a silver coinage.

4. *The Principal Exports* are timber, ships, grain, fish, iron, coal, lime, and gypsum; annual value in 1863 nearly \$9,000,000, including \$3,000,000 for ships alone; revenue \$1,000,000; debt about \$6,000,000. The imports in 1863 were valued at about \$7,800,000.

5. *Railways* extend (1) from St. John to Shediac, 108 miles; (2) from St. Andrews to Woodstock, 90 miles. Others are projected, including the interoceanic railroad. A great turnpike road extends from St. John to Canada; another extends from the State of Maine, through St. John, to Nova Scotia, Shediac, and Pestigouche.

6. *Telegraphs*.—There are at present nearly eight hundred miles of telegraph lines in New Brunswick, extending from Sackville to Calais, and from St. John to Fredericton and Woodstock. The first line was built in 1848.

7. *The Post-Offices* of New Brunswick first came under the

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxxvii. Give an account of the climate—the chief products—commerce—principal exports—railway lines—telegraphs—and post-offices of New Brunswick.

addition, is
lege Colle-
ty.

ure passed
or the Pro-
ns-
swick, at
to that of
800 yearly,
now about
m Canada
(ation), one
(now Prin-
from New
rown), were
scheme for
860, an Act
stitution in
ach county
for one stu-
struction.

he Baptists
gher educa-
a grant of
1843 the
F. Allison,
ducation, at
ed a Female
e an annual
ns-
wick, and
e Presbyte-
cademy at
cademy at
ich receive
academies.
ducation in

is presided
aided by a
er adminis-
the legisla-
the various
ennett, Esq.

sketch of the
of the other
of New B.

control of its Legislature in 1850. There are now about 400 offices, with a mail-route of nearly 3,000 miles, maintained at a cost of about \$75,000 per annum.

8. *The Manufactures* include articles for domestic use. About 150 ships are built annually. The first vessel launched in New Brunswick, the schooner *Moneguash*, was built by Mr. Jonathan Leavitt in 1770. Another, the *Miramichi*, was built on the Miramichi river, in 1773, by Mr. William Davidson, the first British settler on that river. There are upwards of 600 saw-mills, and nearly 300 grist-mills.

PART VIII.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

THE ISLAND OF PRINCE EDWARD.

(So called from Prince Edward, Duke of Kent, Queen Victoria's father.)

Size, about equal to a square of 46 miles.

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—2. *Position and Extent.*—3. *Physical Features.*

1. *Noted For.*—Prince Edward Island is noted for its fertility, and for its comparatively salubrious climate.

2. *Position and Extent.*—This crescent-shaped island, 130 miles long by about 34 wide, occupies the souther. portion of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is 30 miles from Cape Breton, 15 from Nova Scotia, and 9 from New Brunswick, and follows the curve of their coast-line. The Northumberland Straits separate it from the mainland.

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface is slightly undulating. A chain of hills extends nearly westward of Richmond Bay, but in no place do they reach a high elevation. The land is very level. The indentations along the coast are numerous; the chief of which are Hillsborough and Richmond Bays. These penetrate the island from opposite directions, and divide it into three separate peninsulas.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of manufactures and ship-building? From whom did Prince Edward Island receive its name? For what is it noted? Mention its size—its position—extent—and describe its physical features.

HISTORY OF ST. JEAN, OR PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND 1497-1770.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Discovery—Original Grants—Survey and Settlement.

4. Discovery.—5. Original Grant.—6. Captures.—7. Settlement.

4. *Discovery.*—Sebastian Cabot, in his voyage from Bristol to the New World, is believed to have discovered this island on St. John's day, 1497. From this circumstance, it was called by Champlain (the founder of Quebec), in his sketch of New France, Isle St. Jean, or St. John,—a name which it retained until 1800. Verazzani is also supposed to have visited the island in 1524.

5. *Original Grant.*—The Indians found on the island belonged to the Micmac and Abenaki tribes of Acadie and New England. They were left in undisturbed possession of it for nearly two centuries after Cabot's visit; although, with Cape Breton, the island had long been included in that part of the territory of New France called Acadie. At length, in 1663, with the Magdalen Islands, it was granted by the French king to Sieur Doublet, a French naval captain, for fishing purposes. In 1715, two years after the Treaty of Utrecht, many French families removed to the island from Nova Scotia, and a few from Cape Breton.

6. *Captures.*—In 1745 Louisbourg, Cape Breton, was taken by the New Englanders; and they also laid claim to this island; but it was restored to the French, in 1748, by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle. In 1758, it was again captured; and Col. Lord Rollo, with a detachment of troops, took possession of it, by Lord Amherst's directions. Many of the French inhabitants, fearing expulsion, left the island shortly afterwards. At length, by the treaty of 1763, it was, with Cape Breton, finally ceded to the British Crown, and attached to the government of Nova Scotia.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxxviii. Give an account of the discovery of P. E. I. When and to whom was the island originally granted? What noted captures were made in 1745 and 1758?

7. *Survey and Settlement.*—In 1764-6, the island was surveyed by Capt. Holland. Lord Egmont's plan, among others, to erect it into feudal baronies, was not approved; but, as advised by the Board of Trade and Plantations, it was, by order of King George III, divided into townlands (or townships), of about 20,000 acres, and in 1767 distributed, by Lord Wm. Campbell, the governor, by lottery, among army and navy officers, and others who had claims upon the government, on certain prescribed conditions of settlement, and the payment of a quit-rent. Only a small portion of the island (6,000 acres) was reserved for the king, and 100 acres in each township for a minister, with 30 acres for a school-master, besides a breadth of 500 feet running along the coast for the purposes of free fishery. The settlement of the island progressed very slowly under this mortmain system.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

HISTORY OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, FROM ITS SEPARATION FROM NOVA SCOTIA UNTIL THE PRESENT TIME, 1770-1864.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Constitution—Quit Rents—Immigration—Political Progress.

1. Separate Government.—2. Constitution granted.—3. Washington and the Islanders.—4. Duke of Kent and the Islanders.—5. Quit-Rents Composition.—6. Increased Immigration.—7. Progress of Events from 1770 to 1835.—8. Progress of Events from 1835 to 1850.—9. Progress of Events from 1850 to 1860.—10. Governors.

1. *Separate Government.*—The proprietors having petitioned the King, and promised to bear part of the necessary expenses, His Majesty, in 1770, erected St. John (or Prince Edward) Island into a separate government, and appointed Walter Paterson, Esq., the first governor.

2. *Constitution Granted.* In 1773, a constitution, similar to those of the other North American Provinces, was granted;

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was the island surveyed? What plan of settlement was adopted? Mention the principal subjects of chapter xxxix. When was the government established, and a constitution granted?

island was sur-
among others,
proved; but, as
it was, by order
or townships),
by Lord Wm.
army and navy
government, on
the payment of
d (6,000 acres)
ch township for
esides a breadth
urposes of free
sed very slowly

ITS SEPARATION
ME, 1770—1864.

Political Progress.

Washington and
ers.—5. Quit-Rents
ress of Events from
850.—9. Progress of

having petitioned
essary expenses,
Prince Edward)
ppointed Walter

stitution, similar
es, was granted:

veyed? What plan
subjects of chapter
stitution granted?

and in that year the first meeting of the legislature took place. The government consisted of a Lieutenant-Governor, aided by a combined Executive and Legislative Council, and a House of Assembly of 18 members. Of the Executive Council, three were members of the Legislative Council, and one of the House of Assembly. This constitution was modified in 1851.

3. *Washington and the Islanders.*—In 1775, two American cruisers, taking advantage of the defenceless state of the island, attacked and plundered Charlottetown, carrying off the acting governor and two other civil officers. The matter having been reported to General Washington, he reprimanded and dismissed the captains of the cruisers, restored the plundered property, and set the governor and his officers free, with many courteous expressions of regret for their sufferings.

4. *Duke of Kent and the Islanders.*—The Duke of Kent (father to the Queen), who for ten years resided, at different times, at Halifax, as commander-in-chief, paid great attention to the state of its defences. He had batteries erected for the protection of Charlottetown; and organised the militia for the protection of the island during the revolutionary war. He returned to England in 1800; and, as a mark of esteem for their protector, the House of Assembly changed the name of the island from St. John to Prince Edward.

5. *Quit-Rents Composition.*—In 1797, the proportion of rents paid by the proprietors not being sufficient to defray the expenses of government, the British Parliament, upon the representation of the House of Assembly, made an annual grant for that purpose. In 1802, the arrears of quit-rents amounted to \$300,000. To relieve the proprietors of this heavy burthen, the Imperial government accepted a liberal composition for the debt.

6. *Increased Immigration.*—The effect of this generous step was at once perceptible in the increased prosperity of the

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the government. What is said of Washington and the islanders? How did the Duke of Kent act? Mention the important financial changes which were made in 1797. Describe their effect.

island. In 1803, the Earl of Selkirk (who afterwards colonised Red River settlement), took over 800 Highlanders: their numbers were afterwards increased to 4,000.

7. *Progress of Events from 1770 to 1833.*—Governor Patterson, being accused of impeding by monopoly, the settlement and cultivation of the island, was succeeded by Governor Fanning; who, during his nineteen years' service, did little to promote the interests of the island. He was succeeded by Governor Desbarres, who was more successful during his eight years' stay. A brother of Sir Sidney Smith became governor in 1813. His tyrannical conduct, however, in refusing to call the Legislature together for four years, and in seeking the arrest of Mr. Stewart, who had been sent to England to represent the grievances of the colony to the king, caused so much agitation, that he was recalled in 1824, and Colonel Ready appointed in his place. During his administration, a census of the inhabitants was taken, and the Roman Catholic disabilities removed. By his excellent qualities, he endeared himself to the inhabitants. He was succeeded by Col. Young, who was appointed in 1830. During his administration the agitation for a separation of the Executive and Legislative Councils, and for responsible government, commenced.

8. *Progress of Events from 1834 to 1850.*—Governor Young, having died in 1835, was succeeded by Sir John Harvey in 1836. Sir John, having been transferred to New Brunswick, was succeeded by Sir Charles Fitzroy in 1837. During his administration, the Legislative Council was remodelled. A separate Executive Council, of nine members, was formed, and a Legislative Council of twelve appointed, exclusive of the Chief Justice, who retired from it. Sir Charles having been appointed to the West Indies, Sir H. V. Huntley succeeded him in 1841. In that year a census was taken. In 1842, education was greatly promoted. In 1834 the Colonial Building was commenced;

QUESTIONS.—What is said of immigration? Give a sketch of the progress of the principal events which took place from 1770 to 1833—and also from 1834 to 1844. Who were the island governors during those years?

wards colonised
landers: their

Governor Pat-
the settlement
by Governor
e, did little to
succeeded by
during his
Smith became
ever, in refus-
and in seek-
to England to
ng, caused so
and Colonel
ministration, a
man Catholic
he endeared
Col. Young,
ministration the
Legislative
ended.

Governor Young,
urvey in 1836.
nswick, was
g his admin-

A separate
and a Legis-
Chief Justice,
ointed to the
in 1841. In
was greatly
commenced;

ch of the pro-
1833—and also
those years?

and in 1846 a geological survey of the island was made. Governor Huntley having retired, Sir Donald Campbell was appointed in 1847. In that year the House of Assembly passed an address to Her Majesty, praying for the introduction into the Province of Responsible Government. In 1848 a census was taken. Further contests took place with the Legislature on the subject of responsible government, in the midst of which Governor Campbell died, and was succeeded by Sir Alexander Bannerman in 1850.

9. *Progress of Events from 1850 to 1864.*—In 1851, during Governor Bannerman's administration, responsible government was fully introduced into the island. In 1852 an important Act establishing free education was passed. In 1853, an act establishing universal suffrage was passed. Governor Bannerman having been removed to the Bahamas, he was succeeded by Sir Dominick Daly (formerly Secretary of Canada) in 1854. In that year an Act was passed to give effect to Lord Elgin's Reciprocity Treaty with the United States. In the same year the members of the House of Assembly were increased from twenty-four to thirty members. In 1856 a Normal school was established. In 1857 an agitation commenced on the question (which was decided in the affirmative in 1860) of regulating the introduction of the Bible into common schools. Governor Daly having retired, he was succeeded by Governor Dundas in 1859. In 1860, the members of the Legislative Council were also increased from twelve to seventeen. Three acts were passed during this year for improving education in the island. The memorable visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales also took place in 1860, and he was everywhere greeted with demonstrations of joy. An important Commission was appointed this year to inquire into the state of the land-question, with a view to suggest a fair and equitable mode of converting the leaseholds into free-

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the progress of the principal events which occurred in Prince Edward Island from 1844 to 1850—and from 1850 to 1860. What occurred in 1857, and what event took place in 1860?

holds. In 1861, the Commissioners presented a minute and valuable report on the subject, which has not yet been fully acted upon. In the meantime, general prosperity has since prevailed, and every effort is now made to develop the intellectual and physical resources of the island. In 1864, a meeting of delegates from each of the several British Provinces was held at Charlottetown to consider the expediency of uniting all the Provinces under one Confederation. Great unanimity on the subject prevailed. Subsequent meetings were held by the delegates at Halifax and Quebec in the same year.

10. *The Governors of Prince Edward Island have been as follows :*

<i>While part of Nova Scotia.</i>		Col. J. Ready	1824
Montague Wilmot, Esq.	1763	Sir A. W. Young	1831
Lord William Campbell	1765	Sir John Harvey	1836
<i>As a separate Province.</i>		Sir C. A. Fitzroy	1837
Walter Patterson, Esq.	1770	Sir H. V. Huntley	1841
Gen. E. Fanning	1786	Sir Donald Campbell	1847
Col. J. F. W. Desbarres	1805	Sir Alexander Bannerman	1851
Charles D. Smith, Esq.	1813	Sir Dominick Daly	1854
		George Dundas, Esq.	1859

CHAPTER XL.

SKETCH OF THE CIVIL INSTITUTIONS AND EDUCATION OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Civil Government—Courts of Law—Education.

1. Civil Government.—2. The Judiciary.—3. Education.—4. Progress of Education.—5. Population Returns.

(See remarks as to the functions of each branch of the Government and Legislature, in Chapter XVIII, on pages 170-172.)

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *Civil Government.*—While attached to Nova Scotia, Prince Edward Island was under the government of that Province. After its separation from Nova Scotia, in 1770, it had a government of its own. The Governor was appointed by, and represented the Sovereign. He was aided in his administration

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the progress of events from 1860 to 1844. Mention the names of the principal governors of Prince Edward Island. To what does chapter xl relate? What notes are referred to in the heading?

minute and
 yet been fully
 ity has since
 o the intellec-
 64, a meeting
 rovinces was
 of uniting all
 unanimity on
 e held by the
 .
 have been as

.....	1824
.....	1831
.....	1836
.....	1837
.....	1841
.....	1847
erman....	1851
.....	1854
.....	1859

ICATION OF

ation.

—4. Progress of

Government and
 (172.)

r XVIII, p. 170.]

Scotia, Prince
 nat Province.
 had a govern-
 y, and repre-
 dministration

from 1860 to 1844.
 Edward Island.
 o in the heading?

by an Executive and Legislative Council of six members, appointed by the Crown for life, and by a House of Assembly (first elected for seven years in 1773) of 18 members. In 1833 the term for which members of the House of Assembly were elected was reduced from seven to four years. In 1839 the Executive and Legislative Council ceased to be one body. From this time the Executive Council appointed to aid the Governor in the execution of the laws consisted of not more than nine members, and the Legislative Council of twelve, exclusive of the Chief Justice, who now ceased to hold a seat in the Council. In 1851, Responsible Government was introduced. Under this system the members of the Executive Council became responsible to the Legislature in which they had seats, on the official acts of the Governor. They also administered the affairs of the various departments of the government under his direction. In 1856 the members in the House of Assembly were increased from twenty-four to thirty, and in 1859 the members of the Legislative Council were increased from twelve to seventeen.

2. *The Judiciary* consisted of the Court of Chancery. The Governor is *ex officio* Chancellor, but the Master of the Rolls is the Judge of the Court. 2. The two Courts of Vice-Admiralty—one for the settlement of civil marine suits, and the other for the trial of criminal cases. 3. The Supreme Court for the trial of the higher class of civil and criminal cases. 4. Court of Marriage and Divorce. 5. Court of Probate for the settlement of cases arising out of disputed wills, or when no wills have been made. 6. Small Debts Court presided over by commissioners for the settlement of debts not exceeding \$100.

3. *Education*.—On the first distribution of the lands in the island, thirty acres were reserved in each township for a schoolmaster. No public school was, however, opened until 1821, when a National School was opened in Charlottetown. Some years afterwards the Board of Education was appointed for the island, and in 1836 a central academy was also opened in Charlottetown. In the following year (1837) a visitor or superintendent of schools was appointed for the island. In 1848 a visitor was appointed for each county; and in 1852 a free education Act was passed, and gave a great stimulus to education in the island. In 1853 a visitor for the schools of the whole

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the Civil Government of Prince Edward Island—and of its Judiciary. How many courts are there? Mention the first efforts which were made to introduce education into the island.

island was again appointed. In 1856 a normal school was established at Charlottetown, and in 1857 an agitation arose as to the use of the Bible in the public schools. In 1860 the Legislature passed an Act to improve the condition of public schools, and to authorise the use of the Bible in them. It also passed an Act to establish the Prince of Wales' College in honour of His Royal Highness' visit to Prince Edward, in that year.

4. *The Progress of Education* has been as follows :

Year.	Schools.	Pupils.
In 1837 there were in the island	51	attended by 1,650
In 1841	121	" 4,356
In 1851	135	" 5,366
In 1855	268	" 11,000
In 1861	302	" 115,000
In 1863	305	" 122,005

5. *The Population Returns* give the following results :

Year.	Population.	Increase.	Year.	Population.	Increase.
In 1797	4,000		In 1841	47,034	14,740
In 1827	23,266	19,266	In 1848	62,678	15,644
In 1833	32,294	9,028	In 1861	80,856	18,178

CHAPTER XLI.

CLIMATE, PRODUCTS, COMMERCE, AND MANUFACTURES OF PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND.

1. Climate.—2. Products.—3. Commerce.—4. Manufactures.—
5. Post Offices.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *Climate*.—The climate is remarkably healthy, and milder than that of the adjoining continent. The air is dry and bracing. Fogs are rare ; and winter, though cold, is agreeable. Summer, owing to the insular character of the country, is tempered by the sea-breezes. The autumn is beautiful.

2. *Products*.—The soil is free from rock, easy of tillage, and very productive. Agriculture is the chief occupation of the inhabitants. The fisheries are productive.

3. *Commerce*.—The Commerce of the island consists in the exchange of its agricultural produce, timber, ships, and fish, for British and American products. Annual value of exports

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the educational progress of Prince Edward Island from 1856 to 1863. To what does chapter xli relate? Give a sketch of the climate—of the products—of the commerce of the island.

l school was
 gitation arose
 c. In 1860
 condition of
 Bible in them.
 Vales' College
 e Edward, in

ws :

Pupils.

by 1,650
 4,356
 5,366
 11,000
 115,000
 122,005

results :

tion. Increase.

4 14,740
 3 15,644
 3 18,178

ES OF PRINCE

ctures.—

XVIII, p. 170.]

y, and milder
 is dry and
 is agreeable.
 country, is
 utiful.

f tillage, and
 ation of the

nsists in the
 ps, and fish,
 e of exports

of Prince Ed-
 elate? Give a
 the island.

nearly \$7,100,000; imports \$1,500,000; annual revenue about \$200,000; public debt about \$250,000.

4. *Manufactures.*—The manufactures are chiefly for domestic use. Ship-building is prosecuted with considerable enterprise. The fisheries are very valuable.

5. *Post Offices.*—The island is 130 miles long by about 34 wide, and there are about ninety post-offices established. The inland rate of postage is two pence sterling; revenue about \$10,000. There are about fifty miles of telegraph,—connecting the island with New Brunswick and Newfoundland.

PART IX.

CHAPTER XLII.

THE PROVINCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

(So called from being the first land "found" in the New World by Sir John Cabot.)

Size, less than one-third that of Upper Canada, or equal to a sq. of 245 m.

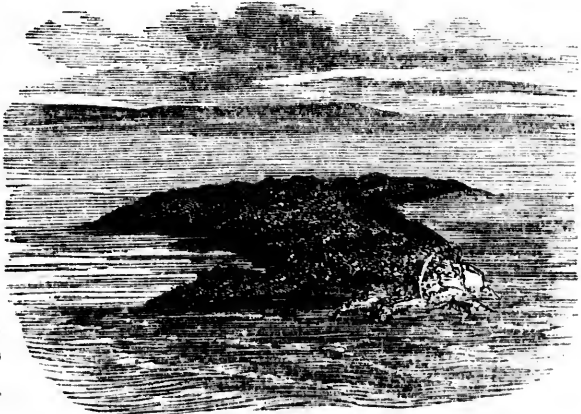
1. *Noted For.*—2. *Position.*—3. *Physical Features.*

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—Newfoundland is noted for its fisheries, and for being the first British colony established in America.

2. *Position.*—This island is the largest in the North American seas, and

lies at the entrance to the Gulf of St. Lawrence. It is triangular in shape, and is about 1,200 m. in circumference. Its length is 400 m., its greatest width 300.



Appearance of Newfoundland from a Balloon.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the revenue and debt of Prince Edward Island. What is said of the manufactures and post-offices? To what does Part IX relate? How did Newfoundland receive its name? What is its size, &c.?

3. *Physical Features.*—The coast-line is pierced by many fine bays and harbours. The surface is much diversified by numerous hills, rivers, lakes, mossy marshes, and barren rocky ridges, especially along the western coast.

HISTORY OF THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Indians—Discovery—Fisheries—Expedition—Settlement—Government—Wars.

4. The Red Indians.—5. Northern Discovery.—6. Cabot's Discovery.—7. Cortereal's Visit.—8. Verazzani's Visit.—9. Cartier's Visit.—10. Gilbert's Expedition.—11. Guy's Expedition.—12. Whitbourne's Admiralty Courts.—13. Baltimore's Colony.—14. French Tribute.—15. Kertk's Settlement.—16. Substitute for Government.—17. Islanders Deported.—18. The War of 1692-8.—19. The War of the Succession.

4. *The Red Indians.*—The Algonquin tribe, called Bœothic, or Bethuck, with some Esquimaux Indians, occupied the Island of Newfoundland when Sebastian Cabot first visited it. Their food then was raw flesh. They resided chiefly in the vicinity of the Exploits river, but are now extinct. They were ruthlessly exterminated by the Micmac Indians and the whites, who waged perpetual warfare against them. From having painted their persons with the red ochre found in the island, they received the name of the "Red Indians." Their mode of capturing deer was ingenious. They cut down trees on either bank of a river, so as to form a brush fence, leaving openings, at intervals, through which the deer must pass—in doing which, these unsuspecting animals became an easy prey to the hunter. There are now very few Indians, if any, on the island.

5. *Northern Discovery.*—It is supposed that Newfoundland, or Helluland, was originally discovered by Biarne, son of Heriulf Bardson, a follower of Eric the Red, Earl of Norway,

QUESTIONS.—Describe the physical features of Newfoundland. Mention the principal subjects of chapter xlii. What is said of the Red Indians? Who are supposed to have first discovered Newfoundland in 986?

ed by many
diversified by
and barren

AND.

ettlement--

s Discovery.—
Visit.—10. Gil-
bourne's Admi-
Tribute.—15.
—17. Islanders
e Succession.

ed Bœothic,
ed the Island
d it. Their
the vicinity
y were ruth-
the whites,
rom having
n the island,
Their mode
wn trees on
nce, leaving
st pass—in
n easy prey
if any, on

vfoundland,
ne, son of
of Norway,

land. Men-
f the Red In-
dland in 986?

who, in the year 986, emigrated from Iceland to Greenland. Leif, son of the Earl, is said to have made a second visit in the year 1000, and to have gone as far south as Vinland (Massachusetts), "a place of grapes." Thorwold, brother of Leif, reached Vinland in 1002, but, returning home, fell in with the Skrelling, or Esquimaux Indians, and was killed. His brother Thorstein sought to recover his body, but failed. In 1004, Thorfinn, a person of illustrious lineage, is also said to have made a voyage to Helluland, Markland (Nova Scotia), and Vinland. These statements are disputed; but they are supported by various authorities.

6. *Cabot's Discovery.*—Columbus, having in vain applied to King Henry VII of England to become the patron of his great enterprise, was compelled at length to seek the aid of the King, and especially of the Queen, of Spain. After his famous discovery was known, Henry was chagrined at his own supineness, and he then resolved to retrieve his error. He therefore in May, 1497, despatched John Cabot and his sons on a voyage of discovery to the west. On the 24th June, they reached a point on the American coast, either Labrador, or more probably Newfoundland, to which, as the land first seen, they gave the name of Prima Vista. Owing to the quantities of cod-fish on the coast, they called the place Bac-ca-la-os (which was the local, as well as the Breton, name for cod-fish). (See page 24.) This name is still given to a small island off the northern point of the Avalon peninsula, which would seem to indicate the precise spot "first seen" by the Cabots. In the manuscript records of the payments out of Henry VII's "privy purse," preserved in the British Museum, is the interesting one of "£10," paid on the 10th of August, 1497, "to hym that found the New Isle." In 1498, Sebastian Cabot, who became a celebrated navigator, again visited the island, and sailed as far north as Hudson Bay.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the discoveries of the Northmen. What led to Cabot's voyage? Give an account of his discovery of Newfoundland. What places were visited? Mention the historical records of the discovery.

7. *Cortereal's Visit—First Fisheries.*—In 1500, Gasper Cortereal, a Portuguese, visited the island. He gave to Conception Bay and Portugal Cove the names they still bear. His account of the abundance of fish on the banks, induced the Portuguese, in 1502, to establish the fisheries, which have since become so famous and productive. The French, Spaniards, and English soon followed; and in 1517, there were 50 vessels engaged in the enterprise. In 1578 this number had increased to 400. The Portuguese soon after ceased to visit the coast, leaving the fisheries chiefly in the hands of the French and the English.

8. *Verazzani's Visit.*—In 1525, John Verazzani visited the island, and carefully examined 2,000 miles of the adjacent coast. Upon his examination and report, the French laid claim to the whole country, as forming part of New France.

9. *Cartier's Visit.*—In 1534, Jacques Cartier went partially around the island of Newfoundland, on his way to Canada; and so pleased was he with the scenery of the cape which he first saw, that he called it "Bonavista,"—a name it still bears. Sailing northwards of Newfoundland, he passed through the Strait of Belle Isle into the Gulf of St. Lawrence.



Sir Walter Raleigh.*

10. *Gilbert's Expedition.*—During the memorable reign of Queen Elizabeth, London, Bristol, and other English ports actively engaged in the Newfoundland fisheries. At this time the question of a north-west passage to India occupied public attention. Colonization too, had its ardent promoters. Among the most distinguished friends to this scheme in England was Sir Walter Raleigh,

* Sir Walter Raleigh was born in Devonshire in 1552. He was distin-

QUESTIONS.—Who followed Cabot in his discoveries? What did he do? What nations were engaged in the early fisheries? Mention the other visits made to the island. What led to Sir Humphrey Gilbert's expedition?

), Gasper Cor-
gave to Con-
ney still bear.
anks, induced
heries, which
The French,
17, there were
this number
after ceased
the hands of

ni visited the
the adjacent
e French laid
New France.

went partially
y to Canada;
e cape which
t name it still
, he passed
St. Lawrence.

Expedition.—
orable reign
eth, London,
English ports
in the New-
es. At this
a of a north-
ndia occupied
Colonization
nt promoters.
distinguished
eme in Eng-
lter Raleigh,

He was distin-
What did he do?
tion the other
t's expedition?

whose name is so memorable in the early history of the State of Virginia. With his halfbrother, Sir Humphrey Gilbert, he obtained a charter of colonization from the Queen. The first expedition which sailed met with disaster, and returned. Sir Walter was to have accompanied the second, but sickness in his ship prevented him. It sailed, however, for Newfoundland; and in August 1583, Sir Humphrey Gilbert landed, after a slight opposition, at St. Johns, and took formal possession of the island in the name of Queen Elizabeth. Collecting the masters, merchants, and artisans which he had brought with him, he read his commission, and afterwards promulgated several laws. On his return home, he was unfortunately shipwrecked and lost his life near the Azores.* In 1575 Martin Frobisher, the noted Arctic explorer, visited Labrador, and it is supposed Newfoundland also. In 1585, Sir Francis Drake made a voyage to Newfoundland, and captured some Portuguese ships there, which were laden with fish, oil, and furs.

11. *Guy's Expedition.*—In 1610, James I granted to Lord Bacon and forty others, a patent to colonize the island. They sent John Guy, from Bristol, who established a colony at Conception Bay. He undertook a survey of the coast, and

guished as a courtier, soldier, diplomatist, literary man, and traveller. He was a favourite with Queen Elizabeth, who knighted him. After her death, he was accused of high treason, and, by the king's orders, confined in the Tower of London for fifteen years. Here he wrote "The History of the World" and other books. At length, in 1616, he was released, and appointed to command an expedition to South America. Being unsuccessful, James I cruelly had him executed under his old sentence. He is said to have introduced tobacco and potatoes into Europe.

* The story of his death is a very touching one: He had transferred his flag to the "Squirrel," a little vessel of only ten tons. As he neared the Azores, a violent storm arose, which engulfed his vessel. When last seen by those on board his companion ship, he was sitting on the deck with a book before him. His last words heard were, "Cheer up, boys: we are as near to heaven by sea as by land!"

QUESTIONS.—Sketch Sir Walter Raleigh's career. Give an account of Sir H. Gilbert's expedition? What did he do on his arrival? Mention the incident connected with his death. What is said of Guy's expedition?

held friendly intercourse with the Red Indians; but after a while sickness compelled Guy and some of his party to give up the project and return to England.

12. *Whitbourne's Admiralty Courts.*—In 1614, permanent dwelling-houses were first erected in Newfoundland; and in 1615 Capt. Whitbourne was despatched to the island, by the Admiralty, to hold courts, empanel juries, and settle fishery disputes. Whitbourne also, in 1617, planted a Welsh colony at a place named Cambriol, now called Little Britain.

13. *Baltimore's Colony.*—In 1622, Sir George Calvert, afterwards Lord Baltimore, while Secretary of State, obtained letters patent from James I, granting to him the entire peninsula which is formed by the Bays of Placentia and Trinity. This extensive peninsula he erected into a province, and gave to it the name of Avalon—which was the ancient name of Glastonbury, where Christianity was first introduced into England. He appointed Capt. Wynne local governor, who fixed his residence at Ferryland. Lord Baltimore also resided there for some time; but finding the soil and climate unfavourable, and



Cecil, second Lord Baltimore.* allowed to the inhabitants in re-

the French inhabitants hostile, he went, in 1628, to Virginia; but not liking it, he selected a spot nearer to the sea-coast. Here, after his death, in 1632, a patent (from Charles I) was issued to his son, Cecil, second Lord Baltimore, under which was founded the colony of Maryland. In this Roman Catholic colony, the utmost toleration was

* Cecil, Second Lord Baltimore, succeeded his father's title in 1632. He appointed his brother Leonard first governor of Maryland. He died in 1676. The colony remained in the possession of the Calvert family until the American revolution.

QUESTIONS.—What occurred in 1614? What did Whitbourne do in 1615 and 1617? Mention the connection which Lord Baltimore had with the history of Newfoundland. Give a sketch of the second Lord Baltimore.

but after a party to give

, permanent and; and in land, by the settle fishery Welsh colony gain.

Halvert, after- tained letters re peninsula nity. This ad gave to it me of Glas- into England. xed his resi ed there for ourable, and nts hostile, o Virginia; e selected a e sea-coast. , in 1632, a) was issued econd Lord hich was Maryland. holic col- ration was ants in re-

title in 1632. d. He died lvert family

urne do in re had with Baltimore.

ligious matters, while in the New England colonies it was denied at the same time to all but the dominant party. The name Baltimore was given to the capital of the new colony.* Having abandoned his estates in Newfoundland during the Protectorate of Cromwell, they were restored to him in 1660. In 1754 (nearly a century afterwards) his heirs claimed the peninsula, but the claim was disallowed.

14. *French Tribute*.—In 1626, the French established a colony at Placentia, which led to many disputes; and in 1634, rather than relinquish the fisheries, they agreed, for the privilege of fishing, to pay five per cent. tribute on all the fish taken. The impost continued for forty years.

15. *Kertk's Settlement*.—In 1654, Sir David Kertk obtained a grant, and established a settlement. In 1663, there were fifteen British settlements, and about four hundred families on the island. They would have rapidly increased, but for the oppressive conduct of those who monopolized the fisheries.

16. *Substitute for Government*.—Newfoundland being regarded in early times as a mere fishing-station for various European navigators and traders, no system of government, or even of police, was established on the island. At length, in 1633, Charles I gave directions for the introduction of some system of government, in regard to the fisheries, crime, &c. Rules were laid down for the guidance of the trading fishermen; and the mayors of some of the English seaports were authorised to take cognizance of certain crimes committed on the island. In 1669, "Fishing Admirals," or such masters of convoy or fishing vessels as should first arrive on the coast in each season, were to have the power in such places to execute the law; but ignorance and partiality generally charac-

* In 1763-65 the boundary-line between Maryland and Pennsylvania was laid down by Charles Mason and Jeremiah Dixon—two English astronomers.—Ever since, the phrase "Mason and Dixon's line" has indicated the boundary between the Northern and Southern States.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the contrast in religious liberty between Virginia and New England. What is said of Mason and Dixon's line—of French tribute—and of Kertk's settlement? How was government established?

terised their decisions. Efforts were for a time made by the inhabitants to induce the King to appoint a governor for the colony; but the merchants connected with the fisheries, wishing to discourage settlement, steadily resisted this desire of the colonists. The contest for and against the appointment of a governor became at length so strong that the King directed that both parties should be heard by counsel. Nothing farther, however, was done; and the war with France and her encroachments in Newfoundland prevented any settled scheme from being adopted.

17. *Islanders Deported.*—In the meantime, the jealousy of the merchant fishing-traders against the settlements already formed in Newfoundland was so great, that orders were even sent out to break up the settlements on the island and remove the islanders; but Sir John Berry, one of the convoy captains, a humane man, remonstrated; and in 1676 the King ordered that the removals should cease. Further emigration was, however, forbidden.

18.—*The War of 1692-8.*—The continued recriminations between the rival colonies at length resulted in a mutual determination on the part of England and France to contest each other's power to gain entire possession of the island and its fisheries. The French post at Placentia was attacked in 1692; but the Governor made a spirited and successful defence. In retaliation, the French under Iberville (from Canada) and Brouillon, made two attacks upon St. Johns, in 1696, and burned it to the ground. All the other British settlements were destroyed, except those at Bonavista and Carbonear, which made a successful resistance. An attempt was made to dislodge the invaders, but with little success. At length, by the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, the French restored all the places they had taken during the contest, and thus ended the war for a time.

19. *The War of the Succession* revived hostilities in New-

QUESTIONS.—Mention the efforts which were made to establish a fixed government in the island. What is said of the attempted deportation of the islanders? What brought on the war of 1692-8—and the treaty of 1697?

made by the
ernor for the
heries, wish-
his desire of
appointment
at the King
sel. Nothing
ance and her
ttled scheme

ne jealousy of
ments already
ers were even
d and remove
vroy captains,
King ordered
migration was,

ecriminations
in a mutual
nce to contest
of the island
was attacked
and successful
berville (from

St. Johns, in
other British
Bonavista and
An attempt
little success.
7, the French
e contest, and

ilities in New-
establish a fixed
d deportation of
the treaty of 1697?

foundland. In 1702, Queen Anne sent out Sir John Leake, who made a successful attack upon the French settlements, and captured a number of vessels. In 1703, Admiral Graydon failed in his attacks upon the French. In 1705-8, Placentia having been reinforced from Canada, and further aid having arrived, the French retaliated with such vigour, that, with occasional reverses, they had acquired, in 1708, almost entire possession of the island. The brave fishermen of Carbonear (aided by Captain Underwood), and the fort at St. Johns, alone held out. St. Johns was, however, surprised and burnt; and the French held possession of it until 1713, when, by the treaty of Utrecht, Louis XIV ceded the whole of Newfoundland to England, retaining only the islands of St. Pierre and Miquelon, off the southern coast.

CHAPTER XLIII.

HISTORY OF THE ISLAND OF NEWFOUNDLAND FROM 1828 TO 1864.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

*Government Established—Seven Years' War—Revolution—
Conspiracy—War Again—Progress.*

1. Separate Province.—2. Courts Established.—3. Seven Years' War.—
—4. Labrador Annexed.—5. Palliser's Act.—6. American Revolution.
—7. Mutinous Conspiracy of 1800.—8. Disasters.—9. War Again.—10.
Social Progress.—11. Political Progress.

1. *Separate Province.*—In 1728, through the laudable exertions of Lord Vere Beauclerk, commodore on the station, Newfoundland was separated from the nominal government of Nova Scotia and made a distinct province. Captain Osborne was appointed its first Governor, under the new constitution, with power to appoint magistrates and organize a government. He divided the island into districts, and introduced several salutary reforms into the administration of the laws; not, however, without strong opposition from the trading merchants, who upheld the authority of the "fishing admirals."

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the progress of the contest from 1702 until the treaty of Utrecht in 1713. For what did that treaty provide? Mention the principal subjects of chapter xliii. What events occurred in 1728?

3. *Seven Years' War.*—So unprotected was the island left during this war, that in 1761 a merchant brig had to be equipped for its defence; and in 1762, a French fleet surprised and captured St. Johns. Capt. Graves, the new Governor, then on his way from England to Placentia, despatched a sloop to Admiral Lord Colville, at Halifax, for help. Lord Colville at once sailed from Halifax and recaptured St. Johns. The noble and patriotic conduct of Messrs. Carter and Garland, in provisioning, under great difficulties, the garrisons of Ferryland and Carbonear, and rendering other services during this war, was handsomely rewarded by the British Government. In 1763, the treaty of Paris, which confirmed the Utrecht treaty of 1713, again put an end to the war and its evils.

4. *Labrador Annexed.*—In 1763, the Labrador coast, from Hudson's Strait to the west end of Anticosti, including that island and the Magdalen Islands, were politically annexed to Newfoundland. They were, however, in 1773, restored to the government of Quebec; but, in 1809, re-annexed to Newfoundland. They are now attached to the government of Canada.* Cook, the celebrated navigator, took part, in 1762, in the re-capture of St. Johns from the French, and was afterwards employed until 1767 to survey the coasts of Newfoundland and Labrador.

5. *Palliser's Act.*—In 1764, Sir Hugh Palliser was ap-

* This interesting group of islands lies in about the middle of the Gulf of St. Lawrence. Amherst, the most important island, is about 50 miles from Prince Edward Island, 60 from Cape Breton, 120 from Newfoundland, and 150 from Canada. The other principal islands are: Entry, Grindstone, Allright, Grosse Isle, and Byron. The Bird Rocks lie 50 miles north of Amherst Isle. The Magdalen Islands were ceded to England by France in 1763, and granted to Admiral Sir Isaac Coffin (a native of Massachusetts) in 1798. They now belong to his nephew, Admiral J. T. Coffin. The population is nearly 3,000, made up chiefly of fishermen and their families. The annual value of the exports from the islands is nearly \$300,000. Schools have of late been established in the principal islands of the group.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal occurrences of the Seven Years' War. How was that war put an end to? What is said of the annexation of Labrador to the Magdalen Islands? Give an account of these islands.

pointed Governor. His administration was highly beneficial to the island, and his maritime regulations, with a little modification, were, in 1775, passed into a law. The British navigation laws were, in 1765, extended to Newfoundland, and a custom-house established on the island.

6. *American Revolution.*—In 1774, the Americans prohibited the exportation of food to Newfoundland, because the islanders would not aid their cause. By the greatest exertions on the part of England (then engaged in a war with France, Spain, and her revolted American colonies), the inhabitants were, however, saved from starvation. Being acquainted with the coast, the French and American privateers harassed the colonists and destroyed their property, when not protected by the English cruisers. But at length the treaty with the separated colonies, in 1783, restored peace to Newfoundland.

7. *Mutinous Conspiracy of 1800.*—For some time after the Irish rebellion of 1798, a spirit of lawless disaffection spread among the floating population of St. Johns, and extended even to a regiment of soldiers which had been raised in the island. Through the wise discretion of the Roman Catholic Bishop O'Donnell the plot was discovered and its ringleaders punished. So grateful were the principal inhabitants of the island to the good bishop for his loyal and successful efforts in aiding Gen. Skerret to frustrate the plot against their lives and property, that they united in a petition to the King to confer upon the bishop some act of royal favour. The petition was granted; and a pension of £50 sterling a year was conferred upon this excellent prelate during his life.

8. *Disasters.*—In 1775, the island was visited by a dreadful storm. The sea rose twenty feet; hundreds of vessels of all sizes were driven on shore, inland property was destroyed, and about 300 persons lost their lives. In 1812-13 a famine occurred, which was greatly mitigated by the arrival of wheat

QUESTIONS.—Describe Palliser's Act. What occurred in the island during the American Revolution? Give the particulars of the conspiracy of 1800. What is said of Bishop O'Donnell? Mention the chief disasters.

RT IX—1764.

and left dur-
be equipped
ed and cap-
then on his
to Admiral
lle at once
e noble and
n provision-
ryland and
his war, was
. In 1763,
ht treaty of

coast, from
cluding that
annexed to
stored to the
o Newfound-
of Canada.*
762, in the
s afterwards
ewfoundland

ser was ap-
le of the Gulf
about 50 miles
om Newfound-
s are: Entry,
cks lie 50 miles
ed to England
n (a native of
Admiral J. T.
fishermen and
the islands is
the principal

Seven Years'
ne annexation
these islands.

and flour from Canada; in 1816, St. Johns was nearly destroyed by fire; loss, \$500,000. In 1817, two other fires occurred in St. Johns, destroying property and provisions to the value of \$2,000,000. A great scarcity of food was the consequence. Many riots occurred. England sent relief, and the citizens of Boston freighted a ship with food for the sufferers, and thus almost wiped off the stain of 1774. In 1832, Harbour Grace was burned. In June, 1846, another destructive fire visited St. Johns, and about 2,000 houses were destroyed. England, as well as Canada, Nova Scotia, New Brunswick and Prince Edward Island, sent large contributions to relieve the suffering caused by this disastrous fire. In September, a furious hurricane ravaged the coast. Much property and many lives were lost.

9. *War again.*—In 1793, the French republic declared war against England, and, before it terminated, the American republic also declared war, in 1812. In 1796, the town at the Bay of Bulls was destroyed by the French vice-admiral; but the energy of the Governor, Sir James Wallace, and the loyalty of the inhabitants, prevented any further captures being made by him. The war was in other respects advantageous to the trade of Newfoundland. It was terminated in 1814, when treaties of peace were signed. Depression in trade immediately followed; but it revived again in 1818. In 1819, a fishery convention was concluded with the United States.

10. *Social Progress.*—In 1803, charity and Sunday schools were introduced and benevolent societies established by Governor Waldegrave, aided by the Roman Catholic Bishop and the Protestant clergy. In 1805, a post office was established at St. Johns; in 1806, a newspaper was issued—now there are nine; in 1808, volunteer militia were enrolled; in 1808–11, efforts were made to establish friendly relations with the native tribes, but fear on their part prevented it; in 1810, Governor

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the more important events which occurred from 1816 to 1846. How did the war of 1793 affect Newfoundland? Give a sketch of the social progress of the island from 1803 to 1810.

s nearly de-
other fires
provisions to
ood was the
at relief, and
or the suffer-
4. In 1832,
er destructive
re destroyed.
w Brunswick
ons to relieve
September, a
property and

ublic declared
the American
he town at the
e-admiral; but
and the loyalty
es being made
ageous to the
in 1814, when
le immediately
1819, a fishery
es.

Sunday schools
lished by Gov-
lic Bishop and
was established
—now there are
; in 1808–11,
with the native
1810, Governor

ant events which
affect Newfound-
from 1803 to 1810.

Duckworth made a tour as far as Labrador, with the same object; in 1822, an effort was made by W. E. Cormack, Esq., to explore the interior of the island. In 1824–6, an improved system of judiciary was introduced; in 1828, the St. Johns roads, first constructed by Governor Gower in 1806, were greatly improved; in 1830, a court-house and the government house were erected; in 1836, a banking-house was established; in 1839, a geological survey was undertaken; the Roman Catholic cathedral was commenced in 1841, and the Protestant Episcopal cathedral in 1843; in 1844, the first mail steam-packet entered the harbour of St. Johns; in 1845, gas-light was first used in the island; in 1846, an act required the houses on two principal streets, parallel to the harbour, to be built of brick or stone; in 1847, St. Johns was supplied with water, agriculture encouraged, a public library and mechanics' institutes founded; in 1858, the ocean telegraph was successfully opened, but in a few days afterwards, probably from injury to the submerged cable, it ceased to operate. Various improvements in the island have rapidly followed, and Newfoundland bids fair to enjoy peace and prosperity.

11. *Political Progress.*—In 1830, the civil disabilities of the Roman Catholics were removed. Want of harmony between the Council and the Assembly, established in 1832, as well as election contests, led to strong political dissensions, both between individuals and the local newspapers, and many acts of personal violence occurred in 1840. In 1856, England entered into a convention with France in regard to the fisheries. Before final ratification, the matter was, in 1857, referred to the Newfoundland Legislature for their consideration. The colonists having strongly objected to the proposed concessions to France, England declined to carry the fishery convention into effect. In 1860, after the visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales, a disagreement arose on a financial question, between Governor Bannerman and the

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal events of interest which occurred in the island of Newfoundland from 1822 to 1858. Give a sketch of the political progress of Newfoundland from 1830 to 1860. What occurred?

Colonial Secretary, and a new Executive Council was formed. During the election under its auspices in 1861, serious rioting took place between the Roman Catholics and Protestants. Lives were lost and property destroyed; but at length peace was fully restored. Thus has Newfoundland happily reached a period in her history that, under the paternal and powerful protection of Great Britain, she may enjoy the highest political and social prosperity. In communicating to the Governor of Newfoundland the articles of a proposed fishery convention with France in 1857, the British Government nobly and distinctly laid down the important principle, "that the consent of the community of Newfoundland is regarded by Her Majesty's government as the essential preliminary to any modification of their territorial or maritime rights." This principle applies to all the colonies alike. It is to be hoped that under the proposed Confederation of the Provinces, Newfoundland will continue to be a prosperous colony.

12. *Governors of Newfoundland.*—Newfoundland is the nearest to England of the North American Provinces, as well as the oldest of all her colonies. Many distinguished British naval captains have, from time to time, held the office of Governor of the island, as follows:

Captain Osborne.....	1729	Admiral Milbanke.....	1789
Captain Clinton	1729	Rear-Admiral Sir Rich'd King	1793
Captain Vanburgh	1737	Admiral Sir James Wallace ..	1794
Captain Lord J. Graham.....	1740	Vice-Admiral Waldegrave	
Captain Hon. J. Byng.....	1741	(Lord Radstock).....	1797
Captain Sir C. Hardy	1744	Vice-Admiral Pole.....	1800
Captain Rodney	1749	Vice-Admiral Gambier.....	1802
Captain Drake	1750	Admiral Sir E. Gower.....	1804
Captain Bonfoy	1753	Admiral Holloway	1807
Captain Dorrell	1755	Vice-Adm'l Sir J. T. Duckworth	1810
Captain Edwards	1757	Vice-Admiral Sir R. G. Keats	1813
Captain Webb	1760	Vice-Admiral Sir F. Pickmore	1817
Captain Graves	1761	Vice-Admiral Sir C. Hamilton	1818
Captain Sir Hugh Palliser....	1764	Captain Sir T. J. Cochrane ...	1825
Captain Hon. J. Byron	1769	Captain Prescott	1834
Com. Molyneux, Ld. Shuldham	1772	Major-General Sir J. Harvey..	1841
Commodore Duff.....	1775	Sir J. G. Le Marchant.....	1847
Rear-Admiral Montague	1776	Ker B. Hamilton, Esq.....	1852
Rear-Admiral Edwards	1779	Charles H. Darling, Esq.	1855
Vice-Admiral Campbell	1782	Sir Alexander Bannerman, ...	1857
Rear-Admiral Elliot.....	1786	Anthony Musgrave, Esq.....	1864

QUESTIONS.—Mention the events which occurred in 1860 to 1861. What important fishery concession was made to Newfoundland and the other colonies in 1837? Give the names of the principal governors of the island.

l was formed.
 serious rioting
 Protestants.
 length peace
 ppily reached
 and powerful
 ghest political
 e Governor of
 ry convention
 nobly and dis-
 the consent of
 Her Majesty's
 y modification
 ninciple applies
 nder the pro-
 land will con-

ndland is the
 vinces, as well
 uished British
 e office of Gov-

.....	1789
Rich'd King	1793
Wallace ..	1794
Waldegrave
.....	1797
.....	1800
bier.....	1802
wer.....	1804
.....	1807
Duckworth	1810
R. G. Keats	1813
F. Pickmore	1817
C Hamilton	1818
ochrane ...	1825
.....	1834
J. Harvey..	1841
ant.....	1847
Esq.....	1852
, Esq.	1855
erman,...	1857
, Esq.....	1864

60 to 1861. What
 d and the other
 ors of the island.

CHAPTER XLIV.

CIVIL INSTITUTIONS OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Civil Government—Law Courts—Education.

1. The Constitution.—2. Courts of Law.—3. Educational Progress.—
4. Higher Education.

(See remarks as to the general functions of the Government and Legislature, in Chapter XVIII, pages 170-172.)

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *The Constitution.*—From the first settlement of Newfoundland until 1728-9, there was no system of government or even of police established on the island, with the exception of the local jurisdiction exercised in certain matters by the "Fishing Admirals." It was not until 1729 that a governor was appointed for the island, with very limited powers. In 1832, a Legislative Council of nine, and a representative Assembly of fifteen members, was granted, and the island divided into nine electoral districts. In 1842, the Assembly was incorporated with the Council, and an amalgamated Assembly of 25 members instituted; in 1849, the union was dissolved, and the two houses met separately; in 1854, the electoral districts were re-arranged, and the number of members of the Assembly increased; the Executive and Legislative Councils were also separated in 1854, and responsible government fully established. At present the House of Assembly consists of twenty-nine members, the Legislative Council of twelve, and the Executive Council of five.

2. *Courts Established.*—In 1737, a Court of Oyer and Terminer was instituted; and in 1742, a Court of Admiralty; in 1789, a Court of Common Pleas; in 1792, a Supreme Court (both rendered permanent in 1808), and, in 1811, a Surrogate Court in Labrador. Sessions Courts were also held in the island. In 1826, a royal charter reorganized the judiciary, divided the island into circuits, and authorized the Supreme Court to admit barristers and attorneys. The other courts are the Stipendiary Magistrates' and the Justices' Courts.

3. *Educational Progress.*—In 1803, Governor Gambier, with

QUESTIONS.—To what does chapter xlv relate? Mention the principal subjects of it. Give a sketch of the civil constitution of the island. What principal courts have been established in Newfoundland, and at what time?

the concurrence of the Roman Catholic bishop of the island and the Protestant clergy, established a system of Charity and Sunday Schools. In 1823, the Newfoundland and British North American School Society established "free" schools. In 1836 the number of schools in Newfoundland was only 79. In 1843, the first act was passed providing for the education of the people. The island was divided into school districts, and a board of seven members appointed in each district to manage the schools. A Protestant or Roman Catholic Board was appointed when the numbers of either prevailed in the district. To aid in carrying out the act, \$25,500 were granted for the promotion of education. In 1844, \$15,000 were granted to establish an academy and library, &c., at St. Johns. In 1845 the number of schools had increased to 209, attended by 10,300 pupils. In 1857 there were 280 schools, with an attendance of 14,200 pupils. In 1859 the legislative grant for education was \$56,000. At present the island is divided into forty-one school districts;—of these, twenty-five are under the control of a general Protestant Board of Education, and the remaining sixteen under a Roman Catholic Board. There is a school inspector in connection with each board. The Legislature aids in the erection of school houses by contributing one half their cost in each case.

4. *Higher Education.*—There are three denominational Academies—Episcopalian, Wesleyan, and Presbyterian—and one Roman Catholic College (Bonaventure), at St. Johns. Each receives a legislative grant varying from \$750 to \$4,400 per annum. In addition, \$2,000 are divided among the Protestant Academies for the training of common school teachers, and \$1,750 to Bonaventure College for the training of Roman Catholic teachers. There is a good Grammar School at Harbour Grace, and ten commercial schools at various places throughout the island.

CHAPTER XLV.

SKETCH OF THE CLIMATE, NATURAL PRODUCTS, AND COMMERCE OF NEWFOUNDLAND.

1. The Climate.—2. Products.—3. Fisheries.

[NOTE TO THE TEACHER.—See note prefixed to Chapter XVIII, p. 170.]

1. *The Climate*, though severe, is healthy. Winter is

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the educational progress of Newfoundland from 1803 to 1863. What efforts have been made to promote higher education? To what does chapter xl relate? Mention the subjects of it.

stormy, and later than in Canada. Snow does not lie long on the ground. Spring is late, and summer short and warm. In May and June, dense fogs prevail on the Banks. Thunder and lightning are rare. The longevity of the inhabitants is notable.

2. *Products*.—Coal, gypsum, copper, silver, lead, iron, and other minerals are abundant. The products of the coast-fishery are also abundant.

3. *Fisheries*.—The cod is the staple fish, and abounds on the adjacent banks; also herring, salmon, mullet, mackerel, and caplin. The number of men employed in the Newfoundland fisheries is 25,000; and the French employ 13,000 more. Nearly 12,000 ships and boats are engaged in the Colonial fisheries. The annual value of fish of all kinds, seals, &c., which they catch, is about \$6,500,000; and the value of the French and American catch, including the bounty, is each about the same. Annual value of various exports \$6,000,000; imports \$5,500,000; annual revenue about \$500,000.

4. *Telegraph—Post Offices*.—There are 450 miles of telegraph, including 90 of a submarine line; and about 35 post offices.

PART X.

CHAPTER XLVI.

HUDSON BAY TERRITORY.

(After Henry Hudson, who discovered the Bay, and perished there.)

Size, about half that of British N. America, or equal to a square of 1,340 m.

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. Hudson Bay Territory, Noted For.—2. Position and Extent.—3. Labrador Peninsula Section, Noted For.—4. Position and Physical Features.—5. Prince Rupert Land (and East Main) Section, Extent.—6. Mackenzie and Great Fish Rivers Section, Extent, &c.—7. Northwest Indian Territories Section, Extent, &c.—8. Red River, Swan, and Saskatchewan Rivers Section, Extent, &c.—9. Physical Features.
10. Red River Country.—11. Climate.

1. *Noted For*.—The Hudson Bay Territory is noted for its great extent, its fur-trade, and its great bay or inland sea.

2. *Position and Extent*.—This vast territory includes nominally the following divisions: 1. Labrador; 2. Prince Rupert

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the climate of Newfoundland. What is said of its products—and fisheries? For what is Hudson Bay Territory noted? How did it get its name? To what does part x, chap. xlvi relate?

Land, and 3. Red River, Swan River, and Saskatchewan, which were granted in 1670, by the charter of Charles II, to the Hudson Bay Company; 4. Mackenzie River; and 5. the Northwest Indian Territories, leased by the Company in 1821; 6. Oregon (abandoned), and British Columbia and Vancouver Island (lease expired and a separate govt. established).

LABRADOR PENINSULA SECTION.

(Called by the Spaniards *Tierra Labrador*, it being less barren than Greenland.)

3. *Noted For.*—The Labrador Peninsula is chiefly noted for its valuable coast-fisheries, and its severe climate.

4. *Position and Physical Features.*—This extensive peninsula is the most easterly part of British North America. The country gradually rises into mountain highlands as it recedes from the coast. Near the centre, a range called the Wot-chish Mountains forms a water-shed for the rivers.

PRINCE RUPERT LAND (AND EAST MAIN) SECTION.

5. *Extent.*—This portion of the Hudson Bay Territory includes the whole of the country east, west, and south of Hudson Bay itself.

MACKENZIE AND GREAT FISH RIVERS SECTION.

(“Mackenzie,” so called from Sir A. Mackenzie, who in 1789 discovered the river which is now so named.)

6. *Extent, &c.*—This section extends along the Arctic Ocean to the interior waters of the Great Bear, Great Slave, Athabasca, and Pelly Lakes, including the Mackenzie, Coppermine, and Great Fish Rivers.

THE NORTH-WEST INDIAN TERRITORIES SECTION.

(So named from being inhabited by various North-West Indian tribes.)

7. *Extent.*—The territories extended nominally from the Mackenzie River Section to the Northern Saskatchewan, and

QUESTIONS.—Give the size, position, and extent, of Hudson Bay. What is said of Labrador—of Prince Rupert Land Section—of Mackenzie and Great Fish Rivers Sections—and of the N. West Indian Territories?

Saskatchewan,
Charles II, to
; and 5. the
Company in
bia and Van-
established).

barren than

efly noted for

ensive penin-
merica. The
as it recedes
the Wot-chish

SECTION.

Bay Territory
and south of

CTION.

1789 discovered

Arctic Ocean
Slave, Atha-
Coppermine,

SECTION.

Indian tribes.)

ally from the
Saskatchewan, and

f Hudson Bay.
n—of Mackenzie
an Territories?

include the indefinite areas drained by the Peace, Athabasca, and northern branch of the Saskatchewan Rivers.

RED RIVER, SWAN, AND SASKATCHEWAN RIVERS SECTION.

8. *Extent*.—This section includes the valley of the Assiniboine, Qu'appelle, the southern branch of the Saskatchewan, the northern part of Red River, and the Winnipeg Region.

9. *Physical Features*.—The valley of the Saskatchewan is an extensive tract of country, diversified by beautiful scenery and fertile plains. The Red River Country is covered with rich prairies and fine lakes. From the Lake of the Woods, a fertile belt of land extends westward to the Rocky Mountains.

10. *The Red River Country* was settled by Lord Selkirk in 1811. It comprises a strip of land some miles in width on either side of the Red River, and a similar strip a few miles up the Assiniboine from Fort Garry.

11. *Climate*.—Winter at Red River lasts about five months. On the Lower Saskatchewan the winters are comparatively short and mild. To the north, it is much colder.

CHAPTER XLVII.

HISTORY OF THE HUDSON BAY TERRITORY.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Discovery—Trade—Charter—Intercolonial Contests—North West Company—Divisions.

1. Discovery.—2. Other Voyages.—3. The Connection with Canada.—4. English Trade.—5. Charter to the Hudson's Bay Company.—6. French and English Conflicts.—7. Contests virtually closed—Treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht.—8. Northwest Company of Canada.—9. Northwest Company's Explorations.—10. Lord Selkirk's Colony.—11. The Rival Companies.—12. Territorial Divisions.—13. Exports.—14. Inhabitants.

1. *Discovery*.—The Hudson Bay (or Hudson Sea) is said to have been reached by Sebastian Cabot, in 1517. In 1523-4,

QUESTIONS—Give the extent and physical features of the Red River, Swan, and Saskatchewan Rivers sections. What is said of the Red River country and its climate? Mention the principal subjects of chapter xlvii.

Verazzani sailed up the coast as far as Davis Straits, which were reached by Davis, in 1585. Various other English navigators sailed northwards, in quest of a northwest passage to India; but it was not until 1610 that Henry Hudson reached the Straits and Bay now bearing his name.

2. *Other Voyages.*—Button, an English navigator, visited the Bay in 1612; Bylot and Baffin, in 1615; and Fox and James, in 1631. Baffin and James Bays were traced out and examined by these navigators, and received their names.

3. *The Connection with Canada* was maintained by canoe, along the Saguenay river, and thence overland to the Bay, by the Quebec Fur Company, which was established by Cardinal Richelieu, in 1627. Tadoussac, at the mouth of the river, was their chief trading-post in Canada.

4. *English Trade.*—The treaty of St. Germain, in 1632, confirmed the whole of the Hudson Bay territory to France; and De Grozellier and Radisson, two French Canadians, visited it. Having failed to induce their own governments to promote trade in it, they went to England. Prince Rupert entered warmly into their scheme, and despatched them to the Bay on a trading voyage.

5. *Charter to the Hudson Bay Company.*—They reached Nemisco, now called Rupert River, and their report being very favourable, Charles II was induced (though, by the St. Germain-en-Laye Treaty, he had relinquished his claim to the territory) to grant Prince Rupert and others a charter for traffic, in furs and peltry, in those extensive regions, then called Rupert Land. This was the origin of the famous Hudson Bay Company's charter, in 1670. This charter was, in 1690, confirmed by an act of the British Parliament, for seven years, but has never since been renewed.

6. *French and English Conflicts* in the territory were the consequences of this charter, as the French claimed that Hudson Bay was part of New France. In 1672, MM. Albanel

QUESTIONS.—When and by whom was Hudson Bay discovered? What other voyages were made to the Bay? What is said of the Saguenay—English trade? What led to the granting of the H. B. charter of 1700?

aits, which
er English
hwest pas-
ry Hudson
tor, visited
d Fox and
ced out and
ames.
l by canoe,
he Bay, by
y Cardinal
the river,
s, in 1632,
to France;
Canadians,
overnments
nce Rupert
ed them to
ey reached
eport being
y the St.
aim to the
charter for
gions, then
he famous
arter was,
liament, for
y were the
imed that
M. Albanel

and St. Simon, with the consent of the Indians of that region, planted the fleur-de-lis and the cross at several places, in token, for the third time, of the sovereignty of France over the territory. Having secured the services of De Grozellier, the French pilot, the new English Hudson Bay Company despatched its first expedition to Port Nelson, on the Bay, in 1673. De Grozellier, not having remained faithful to his engagement with the English, was dismissed, and returned to Europe. He was received with favour in France, and returned to Canada shortly after the French West India Company, which traded in Canada, &c., was dissolved. In 1676, another Franco-Canadian company was formed at Quebec, to promote trade at the northwest, and De Grozellier and Radisson were despatched by it to Hudson's Bay to open a traffic. In 1679, Louis Joliette was despatched by the Quebec Company to Hudson's Bay, "in the public interests." The intrusion of the English in these territories was keenly felt during this time. In 1682, Radisson and De Grozellier were again despatched to Port Nelson, to counteract the trading designs of the English. In 1684, Radisson a second time deserted his fellow colonists and allied himself to the English. He went to London in 1684 and offered his services to the English Hudson Bay Company. They were accepted; and he was placed in command of an expedition, consisting of five vessels, which was despatched in that year to capture the French trading-posts at the Bay. This he did without difficulty. The destruction of the French factories at Port Nelson by Radisson, in 1684, led to spirited reprisals on the part of the company at Quebec; and Chevalier de Troyes and D'Iberville were despatched with troops from Quebec, and, in 1686, succeeded in capturing the principal forts of the company. In 1688, the English sent an expedition to retake their captured forts, but M. d'Iberville defeated them and took their ships. In 1689, they again endeavoured to accomplish their object, but were again repulsed. D'Iberville

ered? What
Saguenay—
r of 1760?

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of the French and English conflicts in the Territory up to 1654. What is said of De Grozellier and Radisson? Give a sketch of the trading-contests of the French and English at Hudson Bay.

returned to France in 1691; but, in 1694, he was sent to the Bay with three ships of war, and completed the conquest of the English forts at that place. At the treaty of Ryswick, in 1697, and even up to 1713, the English company had only Fort Albany left.

7. *Contest virtually closed—Treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht.*—At length the contests between the rival colonies in the Hudson Bay territory virtually ceased. By the treaty of Ryswick, entered into by France and England in 1697, both parties agreed to restore whatever places at the Bay they were possessed of before the war. Commissioners were appointed to determine this question; but they appear never to have met. At the time of the treaty, however, Fort Albany, on the River Albany, at the east side of James Bay, was the only place in the territory in possession of the English traders, and it continued in their possession undisturbed until the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713. By this noted treaty, France transferred to England the whole of her rights to the Hudson Bay territory, and thus placed a bar on all the trading privileges of her Canadian subjects in that part of New France. The English company has since remained in possession of the territory.

8. *Northwest Company of Canada.*—In 1766, various traders, competitors of the company, engaged in the fur-trade. Their head-quarters were at Montreal; and they followed the old French routes into the interior. In 1784, these traders united, and formed the Northwest Company of Canada. This new company directed its trade chiefly to the northwest, *via* Lake Superior, towards the Pacific Ocean and Columbia River. They even sent trading-ships round Cape Horn.

9. *Northwest Company's Explorations.*—In 1793, Sir Alexander Mackenzie, a partner in the Northwest Company, made his famous journey from Canada, across the Rocky Mountains, to the Pacific Ocean (the first ever made north of

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the close of the contest, and of the treaties of Ryswick and Utrecht? Give a sketch of the Northwest Company of Canada. What explorations across the continent did the Co. undertake?

s sent to the
conquest of
Ryswick, in
y had only

and Utrecht.
onies in the
e treaty of
n 1697, both
ay they were
re appointed
ver to have
Albany, on
was the only
traders, and
the treaty of
ransferred to
ay territory,
leges of her
The English
territory.

ious traders,
e fur-trade.
followed the
hese traders
of Canada.
e northwest,
d Columbia
Horn.

3, Sir Alex-
pany, made
ocky Moun-
e north of

of the trea-
est Company
e undertake?

Mexico), and discovered Fraser River. He afterwards discovered and explored the Mackenzie River. In 1811, Mr. Thompson, the astronomer, discovered the northern or main branches of the Columbia River, and descended its stream to the Pacific Ocean.

10. *Lord Selkirk's Colony.*—In 1811, the Earl of Selkirk purchased a tract of country from the Hudson Bay Company, lying between the United States boundary and lakes Winnipeg and Winnipegosis, since called the Red River Settlement. In 1821, he brought settlers from Scotland for his new colony. (Swiss were afterwards introduced; and in 1823, French Canadians.) In 1841, he appointed Captain Miles McDonell (who was governor of the Company's district of Assiniboine,) superintendent, who issued a proclamation forbidding the appropriation of provisions except to the use of the colonists. This assumption of exclusive jurisdiction on the part of the Hudson Bay Company excited the bitterest feelings on the part of the North-Western Company, and gave rise to the fierce contest of—

11. *The Rival Companies* in the Indian territories; during the progress of which the colonists were twice expelled, and many lives lost, including that of Governor Semple. In 1816, Sir Gordon Drummond sent part of a regiment from Quebec to preserve order, and to restrain the violence of both companies. In 1821, the feud ceased, and the rival companies were amalgamated. When Lord Selkirk died, the company resumed the purchase, on condition of paying a certain quit-rent. Most of the original settlers left the colony. The number of residents now amounts to about 7,000. It is a mixed population.

12. *Territorial Divisions.*—The Hudson Bay Territory is divided into numerous districts, which are embraced in several large departments. There are four depôts, and 112 forts or stations, in each of which there is a force of from four to forty men. There are also numerous smaller posts and outposts.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the particulars of Lord Selkirk's efforts to found a colony. To what did they lead? How was the dispute between the rival companies settled? Give the divisions of the Company's territory.

13. *The Exports* are chiefly the furs and skins of various wild animals.

14. *The Inhabitants* of the territory include the white traders and half-breeds, besides numerous tribes of Indians and Esquimaux.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

THE ISLAND OF VANCOUVER.

(So called from Vancouver, a Dutch navigator, who discovered it in 1729.)
Size, one-fourth smaller than Nova Scotia, or equal to a square of 127 m.

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. *Noted For.*—2. *Extent.*—3. *Physical Features.*—4. *Climate.*—5. *Products.*

1. *Noted For.*—Vancouver Island is chiefly noted for its coal-mines, and for being the largest island on the Pacific coast.

2. *Extent.*—This island is 278 miles long, and 50 or 60 wide. It is separated from British Columbia by the Gulf of Georgia and Queen Charlotte's Sound; and from Washington Territory (in the United States) by the Strait of Juan de Fuca.

3. *Physical Features.*—The surface is marked by mountain-ranges and extensive plains. The Ninkish is the chief river. The harbours are excellent; the principal of which are Esquimault, Victoria, Nanaimo (or Noonooa) Inlet, Beecher Bay, and Barclay and Nootka Sounds. Haro Strait separates Vancouver Island from the San Juan Archipelago.

4. *The Climate* is considered to be healthy. There is little frost, and vegetation begins in February. The summer is hot, the autumn dry, and the winter stormy: fogs prevail, and the periodical rains fall heavily.

5. *Products.*—The agricultural capabilities of the island are very great. The principal products, in addition to those of the soil, are furs, obtained chiefly from the beaver, the raccoon, the land-otter, and the sea-otter. Fish of the most valuable kind abound on the coast. Gold has been discovered, and coal is found in large quantities.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the exports—and of the inhabitants? For what is Vancouver Island noted? Give its size, extent, and position. Describe its physical features. What is said of its climate and products?

CHAPTER XLIX.

BRITISH COLUMBIA.

(So called from Christopher Columbus.)

Size, with islands, the same as Lower Canada, or equal to a sq. of 450 m.

GEOGRAPHICAL INTRODUCTION.

1. Noted For.—2. Extent.—3. Physical Features.—4. Climate.—5. Exports.—6. Vancouver Island.

1. *Noted For.*—British Columbia is noted for its rich gold mines, and for its comparatively mild climate.

2. *Extent.*—This new colony is bounded on the north by Simpson River and the Finlay Branch of the Peace River, east by the main chain of the Rocky Mountains, south by the United States boundary-line (49° north latitude), and west by the Gulf of Georgia, Pacific Ocean. Without Queen Charlotte and other adjacent islands, it is about 450 miles long, and 250 wide.

3. *Physical Features.*—The scenery of the northern part is picturesque, being diversified with mountain, lake, and river. The southern part includes the rich gold-valley of the Fraser River, and is well adapted to agriculture and pasturage. In addition to the principal Rocky Mountain range along the eastern boundary, two other parallel ranges naturally divide the country into three sections; viz., (1) the Pacific slope, (2) the Fraser River basin, and (3) the valley of the Upper Columbia. The parallel ranges in British Columbia are the Blue and the Cascade Mountain. The principal peaks are Mounts Brown and Hooker; the former 16,000 feet, and the latter 15,690, above the sea-level. Between these two peaks there is a pass called the Athabaska Portage, the summit of which is elevated 7,300 feet above the sea. To the south is the Kootainie Pass, 6,000 feet above the sea-level.

QUESTIONS.—Mention the principal subjects of chapter xlix. For what is British Columbia noted? Give the size and extent of British Columbia. From what did it derive its name? Describe its chief physical features.

4. *Climate*.—Between the Cascade range and the Pacific coast the climate is equable; but towards the Eastern Rocky Mountains it is very variable. Winter lasts from November till March; but snow seldom remains long on the ground. The prevailing winds are from the north in summer, and from the south and the west in winter. The soil is fertile.

5. *Commerce and Finances*.—The annual value of gold and other products exported from British Columbia and Vancouver Island is about \$10,000,000; imports of British Columbia in 1863 were about \$3,000,000; of Vancouver Island, \$4,000,000. The revenue of British Columbia for the same year was about \$500,000; of Vancouver Island, \$150,000.

CHAPTER L.

HISTORY OF VANCOUVER ISLAND AND BRITISH COLUMBIA.

Principal Subjects of this Chapter.

Discovery of British Columbia and Vancouver Island.

1. Discovery of the Pacific Ocean.—2. Discovery of Vancouver Island.—
3. Discoveries across the Continent.—4. Boundary and Settlement.—
5. Colonial Government established.—6. Union and Confederation.—
7. Executive Government.—8. Education.—9. Governors of Vancouver Island and British Columbia.

1. *Discovery of the Pacific Ocean*.—Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean in 1513. Cortes explored the Pacific coast of America, from Mexico, in 1536, almost as far north as Cape Mendocino (California), in latitude 40°. Although Magelhaens discovered the strait which bears his name in 1520, it was not until 1615 (nearly a century afterwards) that Schouten, a native of Hoorn in the Netherlands, doubled the Cape which he named Hoorn, or Horn, and thus for the first time reached the Pacific Ocean by sailing directly round the most southern part of the American continent.

QUESTIONS.—What is said of the climate, commerce, and finances of British Columbia and Vancouver Island? Give a brief summary of the history of the discovery of the Pacific Ocean, and of Vancouver Island.

2. *Discovery of Vancouver Island.*—Sir Francis Drake is supposed to have gone as far north on the Pacific coast as the Juan de Fuca Strait in 1578; and Cavendish also made some discoveries in the North Pacific in 1587. In that year he captured a Spanish ship off the coast, but put the crew on shore. Juan de Fuca, a Greek sailor, and one of the crew, was subsequently despatched by the Viceroy of Mexico to make discoveries along the coast northwards. He is reported to have reached, in one of his expeditions, the strait which now bears his name. The Spaniards made various discoveries along the same coast in subsequent years; but it was not until 1778 that Captain Cook, by direction of the British government, explored the coast as far north as Nootka Sound. In that year some London merchants made a settlement at Nootka Sound for the purpose of establishing a depot for Chinese trade. In 1779, Capt. Mears, R.N., named, and, in part, explored the Strait of Juan de Fuca. In 1792, Capt. Vancouver, R.N., was despatched from England to the Pacific to meet Señor Quadra, a Spanish commissioner, and to settle with him matters of difference, as to territory, which had arisen on the coast between England and Spain. Vancouver was further directed to explore the adjacent coasts (with a view to determine the north-west passage), especially the Strait itself and Admiralty Inlet. He afterwards, following the course of an American captain, threaded his way through the islands of the Gulf of Georgia (named by him after George III), to Queen Charlotte's Sound. Out of compliment to the Spanish commissioner, Capt. Vancouver associated Quadra's name with his own in naming the island; but it now bears only the name of Vancouver,—that of Quadra having fallen into disuse.

3. *Discoveries across the Continent.*—In 1771, John Hearn, an employé of the Hudson Bay Company, was induced to explore "the far-off metal river" running northwards into the

QUESTIONS.—Give an account of the discoveries by Capts. Cook, Mears, and Vancouver. How did the island receive its name? Give also a sketch of the discoveries across the continent by Hearn, and by Sir A. Mackenzie.

Arctic Ocean, and thus discovered the Coppermine River and Great Slave Lake. Another distinguished explorer, Sir Alex. Mackenzie, discovered, in his first expedition into the interior, the large river, since known as the Mackenzie River, which also falls into the Arctic Ocean. In 1792, while Vancouver was exploring the coast, Mackenzie, following up the course of the Peace River, crossed the Rocky Mountains into British Columbia. Here he reached the Tatouche Tesse, which he supposed to be the Columbia River, but which was afterwards known as the Fraser River. From this river he crossed the country towards the Pacific Ocean, which he reached by way of the Salmon River. In 1806, Simon Fraser, an employé of the North-West Fur Company of Canada, explored the country from Fort Chippewayan (Lake Athabaska), and, crossing the Rocky Mountains, formed a trading-post at Fraser Lake, on a tributary of the river to which we have referred, and which was also named after him.

4. *Boundary and Settlement.*—In 1843 Vancouver Island was first occupied by the Hudson Bay Company, and Victoria, the capital, founded. This capital was selected by James Douglas, Esq., the governor, on behalf of the Hudson Bay Company. In 1844, the boundary-line between the United States and what is now known as British Columbia, was determined. In 1849, Vancouver Island was conditionally granted by the Queen to the Company, for the purpose of settlement. Subsequently a dispute arose between the British and American Governments as to the construction of the boundary-treaty, both parties claiming the island of San Juan, which is situated in the Haro Archipelago, as within their territory. In 1856 a joint commission was appointed to settle the dispute, but as yet (1865) it remains unsettled.

5. *Discovery of Gold.*—In 1859 gold was first publicly known to exist in the valley of the Fraser River, and thousands

QUESTIONS.—Give a sketch of Fraser's discoveries. Give also a detailed account of the boundary and settlement of British Columbia and Vancouver Island. What dispute arose? What of the discovery of gold?

ine River and
er, Sir Alex.
o the interior,
River, which
le Vancouver
up the course
s into British
se, which he
s afterwards
e crossed the
reached by
aser, an en-
da, explored
aska), and,
ost at Fraser
ave referred,

uover Island
nd Victoria,
d by James
udson Bay
the United
umbia, was
onditionally
purpose of
the British
ion of the
San Juan,
ithin their
ed to settle

ely known
thousands

so a detailed
ia and Van-
of gold?

immediately flocked thither. Mining regulations were issued by the Governor, and routes projected into the interior, where gold was chiefly found. The existence of gold in these regions was previously known to a few, and especially to the Indians. In 1862 it was discovered in Queen Charlotte's Island.

6. *Colonial Government established*—In the year 1859 the occupation of Vancouver Island was resumed by the Queen; and it, together with British Columbia (now so noted for its gold mines), was erected into two British Crown Colonies, with separate boundaries, but under one government. James Douglas, Esq., the resident Hudson Bay Company's agent, or local governor, was invested with the same authority by Her Majesty, with jurisdiction over both colonies. Laws were first made by the Governor and his Executive Council and promulgated by royal proclamation, after which they were submitted to the Queen and both Houses of Parliament. In 1863, separate Governors were appointed for each of the two colonies; and the name New Westminster was given to the capital of British Columbia by the Queen, at the request of the inhabitants. The site of New Westminster was selected by Colonel Moody, in preference to Fort Langley, which is on the American side of the Fraser River.

7. *Union and Confederation.*—It is proposed to unite the two colonies under one Governor and Legislature. Should the Eastern Provinces of British North America (Canada, &c.) be formed into a Confederation, and the North-West Territory (Red River, Saskatchewan, &c.) be opened up from Canada, it is possible that British Columbia and Vancouver Island will also join the Confederation. Such a union of all the colonies of British North America would greatly promote the construction of the great Pacific Railway, so long projected, through British territory. A route for this railway was explored by Captain Palliser in 1858-9. It extends from Fort Garry, at the con-

QUESTIONS.—How are these colonies governed? What is said concerning their Confederation with the Eastern Provinces of British North America? Give a sketch of the proposed route of the Pacific Railway.

fluence of the Red River and the Assiniboine, in the Red River settlement, to New Westminster, and follows, for a portion of the distance, the course of the Assiniboine and South Saskatchewan Rivers, crossing the Rocky Mountains at the Vermillion Pass. The distance from Portland, Maine, to Victoria, Vancouver Island, by this route, by way of Chicago, St. Paul's, Pembina, Saskatchewan, and the Rocky Mountains, is 3,200 miles.

8. *Executive Government*.—The Governor of each colony is at present aided in his administration by an Executive Council, a Legislative Council, and a House of Assembly. The island, as well as British Columbia, is divided into electoral districts for the purposes of representation, in a House of Assembly which meets at the seat of government in each colony.

9. *Education*.—Active efforts are being put forth to promote the establishment of a general system of education in the two Pacific Colonies, and the Legislatures have already taken some steps in that direction. In Vancouver Island a Committee of the House of Assembly urge the establishment of a system of free schools, open to children of all classes of the people.

10. *Governors of Vancouver Island and British Columbia :*

1. OF VANCOUVER ISLAND AND BRITISH COLUMBIA UNITED.

1859. James Douglas, Esq., C.B.

2. OF VANCOUVER ISLAND.

1863. Capt. A. Kennedy.

3. OF BRITISH COLUMBIA.

1863. Frederick Seymour, Esq.

THE END.

QUESTIONS.—How is the administration of the colonies conducted? What efforts are being made for the establishment of free schools? Name the respective Governors of the two colonies in the years 1859 and 1863.

the Red River
a portion of
with Saskatch-
e Vermillion
etoria, Van-
St. Paul's,
ins, is 3,200

a colony is at
ive Council,
The island,
oral districts
of Assembly
ony.
h to promote
n in the two
eady taken
and a Com-
shment of a
lasses of the

Columbia:

UNITED.

s conducted?
ools? Name
9 and 1863.

INDEX TO THIS HISTORY.

- I. BRIEF BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.
- II. BIOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES TO INDIVIDUALS.
- III. INDEX OF EVENTS, SUBJECTS, &c.
- IV. GEOGRAPHICAL REFERENCES TO PLACES.

I. Brief Biographical Sketches.

NOTE.—*r.* means reference to the name only, in the body of the History.

- Abererombie, Lord, 85; *ref. to* 86, 87.
Amherst, Lord, 87; *ref.* 145, 209.
Andros, Sir E., 65.
Arnold, Benedict, 112.
Arthur, Sir George, 157; *r.* 161.
Bagot, Sir Charles, 161.
Baltimore, Lord, 248.
Baldwin, Robert, C.B., 163.
Bedard, Hon. E., 153.
Bigot, Intendant, 79; *r.* 109.
Braddock, Gen., 81; *r.* 116, 145.
Bradstreet, Col., 85; *r.* 86, 97, 115.
Brant, Joseph, chief, 115.
Brock, Sir I., 127; *r.* 129, 142, 145, 170.
Burgoyne, Gen., 116; *r.* 115.
Cabot, Sebastian, 24; *r.* 222, 235, 245.
Cartier, J., 26; *r.* 27, 31, 35, 221, 246.
Castine, Baron de, 204; *r.* 214, 216.
Champlain, S., 36; *r.* 169, 198.
Chandler, Gen., 134.
Colborne, Sir J., 151; *r.* 154, 158, 170.
Coligni, 59.
Columbus, 18; *r.* 19-23.
Cornwallis, Lord, 117.
Cortereal, 25; *r.* 246.
Dalhousie, Lord, 149; *r.* 169, 213, 216.
De Beauharnois, 76; *r.* 169.
De Callières, 68; *r.* 71, 169.
De Courcelles, 53; *r.* 55, 169.
De Denonville, 65; *r.* 69, 169.
De Frontenac, 58, 73; *r.* 69-70, 169.
De la Galissionere, 78; *r.* 169, 207.
De la Jonquière, 78; *r.* 169.
De la Salle, 61.
De la Tour, Mde., 203, 223.
De Montmagny, 45; *r.* 169.
De Roberval, 30; *r.* 169.
De Salaberry, Col., 133; *r.* 135, 145.
De Tracy, 53; *r.* 169.
De Vaudreuil, 74; *r.* 76, 90, 92, 95, 140, 145, 169.
D'Iberville, 66; *r.* 71, 74, 204, 250, 263.
Dieskau, Gen., 82.
Dongan, Col. Sir T., 65.
Dorchester, Lord, (Sir G. Carleton,) 109; *r.* 113, 116-17, 125-26, 142, 169.
Drummond, Sir G., 131; *r.* 144-5, 148, 169, 265.
Du Quesne, 79; *r.* 169.
Durham, Lord, 157; *r.* 170, 212.
Elgin, Earl of, 162-3, 165.
Gilbert, Sir H., 247; *r.* 32, 195, 198.
Gosford, Lord, 154; *r.* 170.
Haldimand, Col., 88; *r.* 215-6, 169.
Harvey, Sir J., 134; *r.* 145, 213, 227-8, 240, 256.
Hennepin, Père, 62.
Hincks, Hon. F., C.B., 165.
Hudson, H., 41; *r.* 35.
Johnson, Sir W., 83; *r.* 88, 115, 142, 5.
Joliette, 60; *r.* 61.
Kemp, Sir J., 151; *r.* 169, 213.
Lafontaine, Sir L. H., 161.
Laval, Bishop, 51; *r.* 183.
Lescarbot, 199; *r.* 222.
Mackenzie, W. L., 154; *r.* 156.
MacNab, Sir A. N., 156; *r.* 165.
Maitland, Sir P., 148; *r.* 170, 213.
Marquette, Père, 60.
Merritt, Hon. Wm. H., 150.
Metcalfe, Lord, 162.
Monckton, Col., 83; *r.* 145, 213.
Montcalm, 84; *r.* 89, 91-2, 94, 142, 145.
Montgomery, Gen., 112.
Montmorency, Duke de, 41.
Mountain, Bishop, 181.
Pepperrell, Sir Wm., 77; *r.* 206-7.
Perrot, N., 56.
Phipps, Sir W., 70; *r.* 58, 75, 140, 201.
Pitt, Wm., 118.
Polo, Marco, 16; *r.* 19, 22.
Pontiac, 96; *r.* 47.
Prescott, Gen., 126; *r.* 169.
Prevost, Gen., 128; *r.* 129, 138, 148, 169, 213.
Proctor, Gen., 134.
Raleigh, Sir W., 246.
Sheaffe, Sir R. H., 132; *r.* 145, 170.
Sherbrooke, Sir J. C., 149; *r.* 169, 213.
Shirley, Sir Wm., 205-6.
Simcoe, Col. J. G., 125; *r.* 170, 181.
Sydenham, Lord, 159; *r.* 161, 170.
Talon, Intendant, 54, *r.* 56, 60.
Tecumseth, 135; *r.* 145.
Verrazzani, J.; *r.* 25, 245.
Vespucius, Americus, 23.
Washington, Gen., 80; *r.* 145.
Wolfe, Gen., 87; *r.* 85, 145.

II. Biographical References

(IN THE HISTORY TO THE NAMES OF INDIVIDUALS ONLY).

- Abanel, Père, 262.
 Alexander, Sir W., 201, 222.
 Alfred, King, 10.
 Alfred, Prince, 167.
 Allison, C. F., 232.
 Allouez, Père, 60.
 André, Major, 112.
 Anderson (fugitive slave), 172.
 Anne, Queen, 144, 205, 251.
 Argall, Sir S., 200, 201.
 Ashburton, Lord, 227.
 Bacon, Lord, 247.
 Baffin, Capt., 262.
 Bannerman, Sir A., 239, 240.
 Beauclerk, Lord Verre, 251.
 Beaujeu, 63, 81.
 Beauregard, Gen., 168.
 Bedell, Col., 146.
 Berry, Sir J., 250.
 Bethencourt, 17.
 Bishopp, Col., 146.
 Boerstler, Col., 134, 143.
 Bolingbroke, Lord, 171.
 Boscawen, Admiral, 88, 210.
 Bosquet, Col., 97.
 Bourden, Jean, 51.
 Bourlenaque, 88, 145.
 Braut, John, 143.
 Brébeuf, Père, 60.
 Brown, Gen., 146.
 Burke, Edmund, 118.
 Burnet, Gov., 76.
 Burton, Col., 91, 108.
 Butler, Col., 115.
 Button, Sir T., 262.
 Cabot, Sir John, 24, 35, 195, 213.
 Caesar, Julius, 9, 12.
 Campbell, Sir A., 227, 8.
 Campell, Sir D., 239.
 Campbell, Lord W., 213, 236, 240.
 Capet, Hugh, 13.
 Carleton, Thomas, 226.8.
 Carleton, Sir G. See "Dorchester."
 Carroll, Bishop, 111.
 Carroll, Charles, 111.
 Carter and Garland, 252.
 Cathcart, Lord, 163.4, 170.
 Chabot, Admiral, 26.
 Charlemagne, 13.
 Charles I., 35, 44, 57, 172, 201, 202, 222, 249.
 Charles II., 172, 224, 262.
 Charles V (Spain), 26.
 Chase, Samuel, 111.
 Chatham, Lord, 85, 118.
 Chaumont, Père, 60.
 Chauveau, Dr., 183.
 Chauvin, 36, 198.
 Chrysler, 137, 143, 145.
 Church, Col., 204, 224.
 Clarke, Gen., 124.
 Clinton, Sir H., 109, 117.
 Clovis, 13.
 Colbert, 52, 54, 55.
 Colville, Lord, 252.
 Coffin, Col., 128.
 Coffin, Sir I., 252.
 Cook, Capt., 252.
 Corlear, 65.
 Cormack, W. E., 255.
 Covington, Gen., 137.8.
 Craig, Sir J., 128, 169.
 Cramahé, H. T., 110, 169.
 Cromwell, Oliver, 203, 249.
 Crowne, Sir W., 204.
 Dablon, Père, 60.
 D'Ailleboust, 48, 50.
 Dale, Sir Thomas, 200.
 Daly, Sir D., 239.
 Daniel, Père, 48.
 D'Anville, Duke, 77, 207.
 D'Argenson, 51, 169.
 Danlac, 51.
 D'Avagour, 52, 169.
 Davidson, W., 225, 231.
 Davis, Capt., 262.
 Dawson, Dr., 218, 232.
 Dearborn, Gen., 133, 145.
 De Bienville, 66.
 De Blainville, C., 78.
 De Bourgainville, 95.
 De Bouteroue, 55.
 De Caen, 43.
 De Carignan, Prince, 54.
 De Chambly, 2, 39, 142.
 De Champigny, 67.
 De Charmsay, 200, 213.
 De Chattes, 36, 37, 198.
 De Condé, Prince, 40, 42.
 De Contreœur, 80.
 De Fénelon, Abbé, 107.
 De Lauzon, 46, 50, 169.
 De Léry, 197.
 De Levis, 93.4, 5, 145.
 De Longueuil, 76.
 De Montmorency, 42.
 De Monts, 37, 40, 52, 198, 214, 221.
 De Quen, Père, 60.
 De Ramzay, 93.4.
 De Razillai, 202, 213.
 De Rottenburg, 148, 170.
 De Sillery, Père, 45.
 De Soissons, 40.
 De Tonti, 62.

- De Troyes, 66, 263.
 De Varennes, 77.
 De la Barre, 64, 169.
 Delancy, Gov., 81.
 De la Roche, 31, 169, 198.
 De la Tour, Sir C., 201, 222.
 " Charles de la, 213, 222, 4.
 Denys, 114, 202, 3.
 Desbarras, Gov., 238, 240.
 Des Groselliers, 57, 262, 3.
 Des Meulles, 64, 67.
 Diaz, Bartholomew, 17.
 Dinwiddie, Gov., 79, 81.
 Dixon and Mason, 249.
 Doublet, 235.
 Douglass, Sir H., 227, 8.
 Drake, Sir F., 35, 256.
 Drew, Capt., 157.
 Druillettes, Père, 60.
 Duchesneau, 64, 73.
 Dunn, Hon. T., 127, 8, 169.
 Dupont, 52, 3.
 Edgar, King, 10.
 Edward the Confessor, 10.
 Edward I, 11, 172.
 Edward III, 172.
 Edmont, Lord, 236.
 Elizabeth of Lancaster, 11.
 Elizabeth, Queen, 12, 195, 246.
 Eric, 244.
 Fénelon, Abbé, 64.
 Fitzgibbon, Col., 134, 143, 145.
 Fitzroy, Sir C. A., 238, 240.
 Forbes, Gen., 87, 145.
 Forrester, Rev. Dr., 218.
 Fox, C. J., 118.
 Franklin, Benjamin, 111, 191.
 Francis I, 14, 26.
 Frobisher, Capt., 247.
 Gage, Gen., 108, 111.
 Gates, Gen., 116.
 Gambier, Admiral, 257.
 Generals (various), 145.
 Genghis Khan, 16, 20, 22.
 George I, 229.
 George II, 84, 97, 144.
 George III, 144, 172, 215, 236.
 Gibbs, Sir J., 154.
 Gore, Sir J., 147, 8, 212, 179.
 Gosnold, Capt., 199.
 Governors of Canada, 169.
 " Nova Scotia, 213.
 " New Brunswick, 228.
 " P. E. Island, 240.
 " Newfoundland, 256.
 " Vancouver Isl., 272.
 " British Col., 272.
 Gravé, Dupont, 36, 40, 42, 198.
 Graves, Capt., 252, 256.
 Gray, Hon. J. H., 232.
 Graydon, Adm., 251.
 Grenville, Lord, 118.
 Grey, Sir C., 154.
 Guy, John, 217.
 Halifax, Lord, 208.
 Hamilton, Gov., 116.
 Hampton, Gen., 135, 6, 8, 145.
 Hancock, John, 111.
 Harold II, 10.
 Harrison, Gen., 144, 5, 6.
 Havilland, Col., 95.
 Head, Sir F. B., 155, 6, 7.
 Head, Sir Edmund,
 Henry, Capt., 129.
 " I, 171.
 " II, 11.
 " III, 11, 171, 2.
 " IV, 11.
 " VII, 12, 21, 215.
 Henri IV, 36, 37, 39, 40, 198, 221.
 Hipparchus, 17.
 Hobson, Gov., 208, 213.
 Howe, Lord, 86.
 Hope, Col., 116.
 Howe, Gen., 117.
 Hull, Gen., 127, 136, 145, 6.
 Hunter, Hon. S., 148.
 Huntley, Sir H. V., 238.
 Indian Chiefs:
 Brant, Joseph, 115.
 " John, 143.
 Donnacoma, 26, 29.
 Guaananagari, 23.
 Halion, 223.
 Huron *agohanna*, 29.
 Jacobs, 145.
 Kondiaronk, 63.
 Minavavana, 97.
 Pontiac, 47, 96.
 Irving, Major, 409.
 Isabella, Queen, 19, 245.
 Jackson, "Stonewall," 168.
 James I, 144, 201, 247, 8.
 Jouges, Père, 48.
 Joan III, 26.
 John, King, 11, 13, 171, 2, 5.
 Kent, Duke of, 126, 212, 234, 237.
 Keppell, Admiral, 81.
 Kertk, Sir L., 44, 5, 140, 201, 222.
 La Borgne, 203, 224.
 La Corne, 208.
 La Jemie, Père, 183.
 La Mothe Cadillac, 47.
 Lapeltrie, Mde., 183.
 La Saussage, 39, 200.
 Lawrence, Gov., 208, 210, 213.
 Leake, Sir J., 251.
 Leavitt, Jonathan, 234.
 Lee, Gen. R. E., 168.
 Lemoine, Père, 52.
 Logan, Sir W., 185.
 London, Lord, 84, 86.
 Louis IX, 13, 16.
 " XIV, 52, 54, 59, 63, 68, 69, 144,
 251.
 " XV, 33, 84.

- Louis Phillippe, 13.
 Lount and Mathews, 157.
 MacDonnell, Col., 131.
 " Major, 131.
 " Miles, 265.
 Mackay, Col., 133.
 Mackenzie, Sir A., 35, 260, 261
 Madison, President, 129.
 Maisonneuve, 46, 141.
 Marek, Col., 204.
 Martel, Carlos, 13.
 Mascareen, Gov., 207, 213.
 Mazarin, Cardinal, 203.
 Merovens, 13.
 Mesnard, Père, 60.
 Mézy, &c., 46, 52, 53, 169.
 Milnes, Sir R. S., 127, 169.
 Molson, Hon. J., 187.
 Monk, Lord, 163, 170.
 Morin, Judge, 153.
 Morris, Gov., 81.
 Morrison, Col., 137, 145.
 Mothe, Capt., 39.
 Murray, Col., 135, 146.
 " Gen. 89, 94, 95, 108, 109, 145,
 148, 169.
 Napoleon Bonaparte, 127.
 Nicholson, Gen., 205, 213, 224.
 O'Donnell, Bishop, 253, 4.
 Osborne, Capt., 251.
 Osgood, Chief Justice, 126.
 Palliser, Sir H., 252, 256.
 Papineau, Hon. L. J., 151.
 Patterson, Gov., 236, 8, 240.
 Peter the Hermit, 11.
 Pharamond, 13.
 Philip Augustus, 13.
 Philip the Fair, 13.
 Pinzon (brothers), 20.
 Pike, Gen., 146.
 Plessis, Bishop, 129.
 Pontgravé. See Dupont Gravé.
 Poutrincourt, 37, 199, 221.
 Prideaux, Gen., 84, 87, 145.
 Proctor, Col., 133, 145.
 Ptolemy, 19.
 Queen Victoria, 167, 171, 1.
 Radisson, 57, 262, 3.
 Ready, Col. J., 238, 240.
 Riall, Gen., 133, 9, 144, 5.
 Richelieu, Cardinal, 39, 44, 262.
 Richmond, Duke of, 148, 170.
 Roberts, Capt., 129, 145, 6.
 Robinson, Sir F. P., 148, 170.
 Rollo, Lord, 235.
 Ross, Gen., 145, 6.
 Rossinol, 198, 227.
 Rouillé, 78.
 Rupert, Prince, 262.
 Ryerson, Rev. Dr., 182, 232.
 Sabine, L., 111, 119, 120.
 Salieres, Capt., 39.
 Schuyler, Gen., 71, 112.
 Secord, Mrs., 134, 143.
 Sedgwick, Col., 203.
 Selkirk, Lord, 26, 35, 238, 265.
 Skerrett, Gen., 253.
 Smith, Lieut., 137.
 Smyth, Sir J., 96,
 " Gen., 133, 227, 8.
 Somers, Lord, 171.
 Sorel, Capt., 39.
 Temple, Sir T., 204.
 Thorinn, 245.
 Tippoo Saib, 117.
 Tollier, Abbé, 46.
 Townshend, Gen., 89, 94.
 Turenne, 40.
 Underwood, Capt., 251.
 Urban, Pope, 11.
 Vancouver, 35, 266, 8.
 Van Rensselaer, Gen., 130, 145, 156.
 Ventadour, 44.
 Verendrye, 77, 177, 8.
 Villebon, Gov., 213, 224, 240.
 Vincent, Gen., 135, 145.
 Voltaire, 33.
 Von Schoultz, 153.
 Waldegrave, Gov., 254.
 Wales, Prince of, 134, 167, 213, 228,
 239, 242, 255.
 Walker, Sir H., 75, 140.
 Wallace, Sir James, 254, 256.
 Warren, Sir P., 84, 205, 6.
 Whitbourne, Capt., 248.
 Winchester, Gen., 146.
 Wilkinson, Gen., 135, 6, 8, 113.
 William I, 10, 11.
 " III, 69, 144, 172.
 " IV, 142, 211.
 Williams, Col., 82.
 Winslow, Col., 209.
 Winthrop, Gov., 202.
 Wycliffe, 11.
 Wynne, Capt., 248.
 Yeo, Commodore, 146.
 Young, Col., 238.

III. Index of Events, Subjects, &c.

(AS THEY OCCUR IN THE HISTORY.)

- Acadie, or Acadia, discovered 192.
 " History of, 197.
 Acadians exiled, 209.
 Admirals, Fishing, 249.
 Admiralty Courts, 248.
 Agricultural products, 187, 219, 233,
 242.
 Algonquins, 103.
 America, British, 2, 35.
 American attacks, 112, 253.

- American Commissioners, 111.
 " disaffection, 110, 211, 263.
 Andastes, 105.
 Arabs and Saracens, 16.
 Armistice in 1812, 130.
 Army bills voted, 128.
 Ashburton treaty, 227.
 Assembly, House of, 175, 214, 229,
 241, 257, 268.
 Assessment, first act of, 179.
 Assineboins, 106.
 Baltimore's colony, 218.
 Baronets of Nova Scotia, 44, 222.
 Battle-fields of Canada, 140.
 Braddock's defeat, 81.
 Breton and Brittany, 195.
 British American growth, 32.
 " rule in Canada, 108.
 " " " Acadia, 208.
 Britons, Ancient, 9.
 Burgoyne's defeat, 116.
 Cabot's discoveries, 12, 23, 215.
 Caesar's conquest, 9, 12.
 Calumet, 102.
 Campaigns of 1755-9, 83.
 Canaanites of Scripture, 15.
 " " 1812, 129.
 Canada in 1763, 109.
 " intrigues in, 111.
 " name of, 29.
 " History of, 33.
 Canal policy, Canada, 150, 189.
 Capetian dynasty, 13.
 Carovingian " 13.
 Caroline steamer, 157.
 Cartier's discoveries, 26, 221, 246.
 Charters, ancient, 172.
 Charter, Hudson Bay, 262.
 Champlain's discoveries, 36, 41.
 Civil law introduced, 126.
 Clergy Reserve agitation, 150, 173.
 Climate of British Columbia, 268.
 " Canada, 184.
 " Hudson Bay Ter., 261.
 " New Brunswick, 233.
 " Newfoundland, 258.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 Climate of Prince Edward Isl., 242.
 " Vancouver Island, 266.
 Columbus, discoveries of, 12, 18, 22.
 Colleges of Canada, 182, 3.
 " New Brunswick, 232.
 " Newfoundland, 258.
 " Nova Scotia, 217.
 " Prince Edward Isl., 242.
 Colonial Systems compared, 97.
 Common Law of England, 171.
 Commerce of British Columbia, 263.
 " Canada, 186.
 " Hudson Bay, 266.
 " New Brunswick, 232.
 " Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Prince Edw. Isl., 242.
 Commerce of Vancouver Isl., 268.
 Commercial enterprise, 15, 36.
 Confederacy, Iroquois, 106.
 Confederation of British North
 America, 33, 168, 212, 240.
 Congress, Insurgent, 111.
 Constitution, British, 171.
 " of Br. Columbia, 268.
 " Canada, 110, 117,
 170, 173.
 " New Brunswick,
 226, 229.
 " Newfoundland, 257.
 " Nova Scotia, 214.
 " Prince Ed. Isl., 236.
 " Vancouver I., 268.
 Conspiracy of Pontiac, 96.
 Contests, Party, 151, 153.
 Cortereal's discoveries, 25.
 Council, orders in, 127.
 Coureurs du bois, 73.
 Coutume de Paris, 53, 173.
 Criminal law, 173.
 Crisis of 1837, 155.
 Crusades, 11, 13, 16.
 Danes in England, 10.
 Decimal currency, 166, 233.
 Decrees of Napoleon I, 127.
 Deskan's defeat, 82.
 Disasters in Newfoundland, 253.
 Discovery, French, 14, 15.
 " of Br. N. Am., 35, 60.
 Dispersion of U. E. Loyalists, 119.
 Disputes, colonial, 65.
 Doric volunteers, 156.
 Education in Canada, 127, 165, 174,
 181-4.
 " New Brunswick, 231.
 " Newfoundland, 257.
 " Nova Scotia, 215.
 Education of Prince Edward I., 241.
 Enterprise, early, 177.
 Erie Indians, 105.
 Executive Government, 174.
 Exhibition of 1851, 165.
 " 1855 and 1861, 166.
 Expeditions against Canada, 112, 204.
 Explorations in Canada, 40, 41, 60.
 Exports of British Columbia, 268.
 " Canada, 186, 188, 189.
 " Hudson Bay, 266.
 " New Brunswick, 233.
 " Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Prince Edw. Isl., 243.
 " Vancouver Isl., 268.
 Facts of interest, 178, 179, 211.
 Family compact, 149, 152.
 Famine and fever, 163.
 Federal union, early, 80.
 Federal system, 31, 174.
 Fires in New Brunswick, 227.
 Fisheries of Canada, 188.
 " New Brunswick, 235.

2.

265.

0, 145, 156.

40.

7, 213, 228,

56.

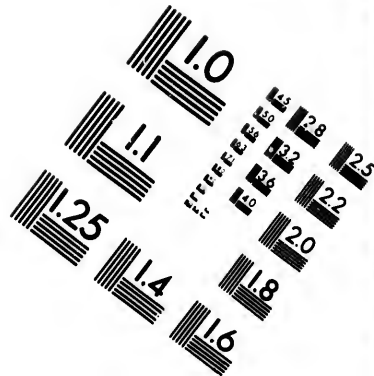
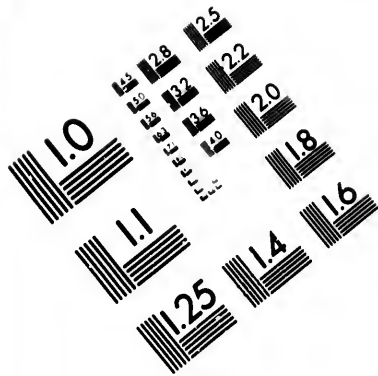
143.

219, 233,

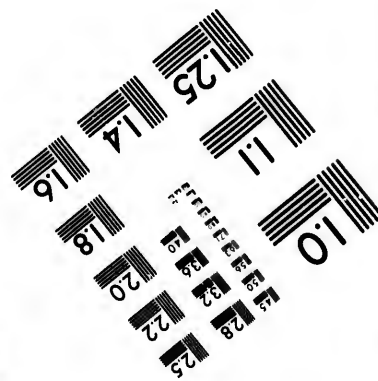
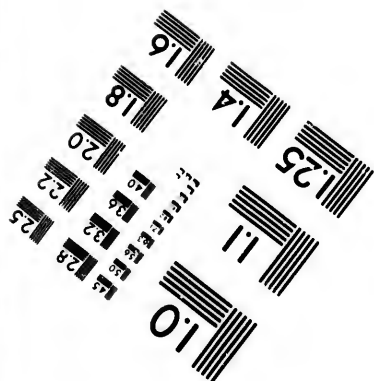
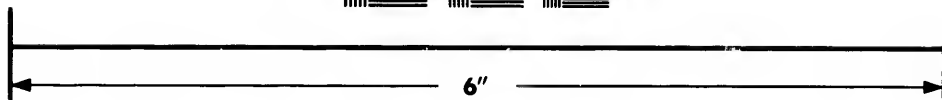
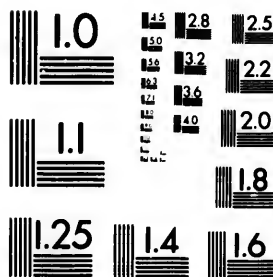
- Fisheries of Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Prince Edward Isl., 242.
 France, ancient, 12.
 Franks, " 13.
 French discoveries, 14, 177.
 Frontenac, administration of, 58.
 Frontier commission, 207.
 Fur trade, 65, 72.
 Geology of Canada, 185.
 Gilbert's expedition, 246.
 Glengarry cairn, 159.
 Government, British, 171.
 " forms of, 170.
 " of Br. Columbia, 268.
 " Canada, 174.
 " New Brunsw., 229.
 " Newfoundland, 257.
 " Nova Scotia, 208,
 210, 214.
 " Pr. Edw. Isl., 240.
 " Vancouver I., 268.
 Governor General, 108, 175.
 Governors of the Provinces, 147, 151,
 169, 213, 228, 240, 256.
 Grand Trunk Railway, 166, 190.
 Great Western " 165, 190.
 Habeas Corpus, 172.
 Heroism of Mine. La Tour, 203, 223.
 " Mrs. Secord, 131.
 Hieroglyphics, Indian, 100.
 History of British Columbia, 268.
 " Canada, 36.
 " England, 9.
 " European countries, 14.
 " France, 12.
 " Hudson Bay, 261.
 " New Brunswick, 220.
 " Newfoundland, 244.
 History of Nova Scotia, 197.
 " Pr. Edward Island, 235.
 " Vancouver Island, 268.
 Hudson Bay Charter, 262.
 Hundred Associates, 44, 46.
 Huron-Iroquois, 106.
 " Seminary, 183.
 Hurons destroyed, 48.
 " and Cartier, 29.
 Imports of Canada, 188, 9.
 " New Brunswick, 233.
 " Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Prince Edward Isl., 243.
 Improvements, public, 178, 189.
 Independence, American, 116.
 Indian Tribes, 99.
 Abenakis, 221.
 Adirondacks, 103.
 Algonquins, 103.
 Assineboins, 106.
 Andastes, 105.
 Cayugas, 106.
 Chippewas, 104.
 Chippewayans, 99.
 Indian Tribes (continued).
 Crees, 99, 101.
 Eries, 105.
 Ethevins, 221.
 Hurons, 104.
 Iroquois, 106.
 Loups, 107.
 Miamacs, 221, 235.
 Mingoes, 107.
 Malicites, 221.
 Missasaugas, 101.
 Mohawks, 106.
 Nippissings, 101.
 Ojibwas, 104.
 Onidas, 106.
 Onondagas, 106.
 Ottawas, 104.
 Petuns, 105.
 Red, 244.
 Senecas, 106.
 Souriquois, 197, 221.
 Tuscaroras, 106.
 Wyandots, 104.
 Indian war, first, 39.
 Intercolonial contests, 75.
 " railway, 169, 194.
 Institutions founded, 46.
 Internal dissensions, 63.
 Invasion of Canada, 112, 130, 158.
 Ireland, conquest of, 11.
 Iroquois confederacy, 106.
 " settled in Canada, 106, 115.
 " wars, 39, 43, 46, 50, 54, 67,
 69, 71.
 Jesuits estates, 127.
 Jury, trial by, 173.
 Law, common, 171.
 " consolidated, 166.
 Law courts:
 Canada, 176.
 New Brunswick, 230.
 Newfoundland, 257.
 Nova Scotia, 215.
 Prince Edward Island, 241.
 Legislative Council, 166, 173, 174,
 175, 214, 229, 241, 257.
 Liberal party, 152.
 Liberty, civil, 52, 53, 59, 109.
 " Sons of, 156.
 Liquor traffic, 64.
 Loyalists, United Empire, 118, 211.
 Loyalists in Lower Canada, 127.
 Magna Charta, 171.
 Maritime Provinces, 192, 195.
 Map of the British Provinces, 193.
 Massacre, year of the, 68.
 Manufactures of Canada, 189.
 " New Brunsw., 234.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Pr. Ed. Island, 243.
 Merovingian dynasty, 13.
 Miami Indians, 221, 235.
 Military and militia, 147.
 Mineral products, 185.

- Monument to Wolfe, 92, 93, 4.
 " Montcalm, 91.
 " Brock, 132.
 " at Ste. Foye, 141.
 Montreal founded, 45.
 " expeditions ag't, 71, 112.
 Municipal institutions in the Provinces, 174, 179, 180, 215, 230.
 Naval captures, 1812-4, 146.
 New Brunswick, History of, 220.
 " England Alliance, 49.
 " expedition, 204.
 Newspapers, old, 178, 9.
 Normans and Northmen, 10, 17, 244.
 North-West Company, 261.
 Nova Scotia, History of, 197.
 Ocean steamers, 190.
 Ojibway Indians, 49, 104.
 Ottawa " 104.
 Pallisser's Act, 252.
 Parliament House burned, 164.
 " buildings, Ottawa, 167.
 Parliamentary government, 124.
 " contest, 148.
 Pepperrell's expedition, 77.
 Petition of Right, 172.
 Phœnicians or Canaanites, 15.
 Picts and Scots, 9.
 Plantagenets, 10.
 Political divisions of B. N. A., 91.
 " discussions, 148, 151.
 Pontiac's conspiracy, 96.
 Portuguese colonies, 17.
 Post office, Canada, 191.
 " New Brunswick, 232.
 " Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 Post office, Prince Edward Isl., 243.
 Primogeniture, law of, 174.
 Printing, art of, 11.
 Quebec Act, 110, 112, 173.
 Quit rents composition, 237.
 Railways of Canada, 165, 189.
 " New Brunswick, 233.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 Rebellion, Canadian, of 1837, 156.
 " Losses Bill, 164.
 Reciprocity treaty, 165, 187, 213, 228.
 Rectories, fifty-seven, 154.
 Red Indians, 244.
 Reformation, 11.
 Religion of the Indians, 102.
 Representation Act, 173.
 Resolutions, Ninety-two, 153.
 Resources, latent, of Canada, 177.
 Responsible government in the Provinces, 160, 174, 212, 228.
 Revolutionists, American, 111, 144, 211, 253.
 Rights, Bill of, 172.
 Roberval's voyages, 30.
 Roman Catholic religion, 110, 129.
 " emancipation, 173.
 Romans in England, 9.
 Royal government, 51, 52.
 Sachem, Indian, 103.
 Saxons in England, 9.
 Schools, military, of Canada, 117.
 Seal of Canada, 173.
 Search, Right of, 127.
 Seat of government, 126, 167.
 Seigniorial tenure, 174, 178.
 Settlement of Upper Canada, 125.
 Shipping of Canada, 188.
 " New Brunswick, 233.
 " Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Prince Edward Isl., 242.
 Slave, fugitive, 172.
 Slavery abolished, 126, 173.
 Slave trade, origin of, 17.
 Southern States, war with, 168.
 Stamp Act, 111.
 Steamers, first Canadian, 187.
 Stormy times in Canada, 151.
 Survey of Prince Edward Isl., 236.
 Suspension Bridge, Niagara, 191.
 Tea riot in Boston, 111.
 Telegraphs in Canada, 191.
 " New Brunswick, 233.
 " Newfoundland, 259.
 " Nova Scotia, 219.
 " Pr. Edward Isl., 243.
 Totems, Indian, 101.
 Trade and commerce, 186, 188.
 Trading disputes in New France, 40, 43, 55, 65, 76, 262.
 Trappers, white, 73.
 Treasons, statute of, 172.
 Treaty of Aix la Chapelle, 71, 144.
 Treaty, Ashburton, Lord, 227.
 " Ghent, 141.
 " Paris, 97, 141, 173.
 " Reciprocity, 162, 187.
 " Ryswick, 73, 141, 204, 250, 261.
 " Utrecht, 144, 173.
 "Trent," seizure of the, 168.
 Tudors, the, 12.
 Union, colonial, 80.
 " of the provinces, 159, 160, 173.
 Universities, 182, 3, 232.
 Vegetable products, 185, 6.
 Venice, republic of, 15.
 Verazzani's discoveries, 25.
 Victoria Bridge, 166.
 Wales, conquest of, 11.
 Wales, Prince of, 1.
 Wampum, Indian, 101.
 War party, Indian, 101.
 War of 1812, 128, 144, 251.
 " King George's, 144, 250.
 " William's, 144, 250.
 " Seven Years, 79, 144, 269.
 Wars affecting Canada, 96, 144.
 " in France, 14.
 " " Scotland, 11.
 " of the Roses, 11.
 West India Company, 53.





**IMAGE EVALUATION
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic
Sciences
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

28
25
22
20
18

10
5

IV. Geographical Index

(OF PRINCIPAL PLACES MENTIONED IN THE HISTORY.)

- Abraham, Plains of, 91, 92.
 Acadie, or Acadia, 70, 75, 78, 192, 197,
 201, 214, 222.
 Africa, 17.
 Aix la Chapelle, 77, 141, 207, 235.
 Albany (Orange), 68, 77.
 Alexandria (in Virginia), 81.
 Amherstburgh, 129.
 Annapolis (Royal), 205, 207, 210, 212,
 222, 229.
 Anticosti Island, 28, 61.
 Arctic regions, 99, 260.
 Arkansas River, 61.
 Asia, 16, 17, 19, 20.
 Avalon, 245, 248.
 Azores Islands, 23.
 Bahama Islands, 21, 22.
 Baie des Chaleurs, 27, 221.
 Beauport, 89, 140, 145.
 Beaver Dams, 134, 143, 145.
 Boston, 50, 75, 77, 86, 111, 112.
 Boundaries of Brit. Columbia, 267.
 " Canada, 121, 122.
 " Hudson Bay, 259.
 " New Brunswick, 220.
 " Newfoundland, 243.
 " Nova Scotia, 196.
 " Pr. Edward Isl., 234.
 " Vancouver Isl., 266.
 Boundary rivers of U. C., 123.
 Breton, Cape, 14, 75, 77, 195, 198,
 211, 234.
 Britain, Ancient, 9.
 British N. America, extent of, 35.
 Buffalo, N. Y., 134, 146, 156.
 Burlington Heights, 139, 145.
 Canaan, Ancient, 15.
 Canada discovered, 27, 35.
 " name of, 29.
 " Lower, geology of, 121.
 " Upper " 125.
 Canada, Upper, settled, 125.
 " district, 125.
 Canary Isles, 17, 20.
 Catarqui, 56, 62, 67, 69, 71. (See
 Frontenac and Kingston.)
 Cedars rapids, 142.
 Cipango (Japan), 19, 22.
 Chambly, 36, 67, 112, 142, 146, 150,
 156, 190.
 Champlain Lake, 39, 76, 94, 115, 133,
 135, 139.
 Charlottetown, 213, 237, 240, 242.
 Chateauguay, 135, 136, 138, 143, 145.
 China, route to, 24, 61.
 Chippewa, 139, 144, 145.
 Chrysler's farm, 137, 143, 145.
 Cod, Cape, 199, 200.
 Connecticut, 70, 202.
 Crown Point, 82, 83, 86, 88, 112, 115.
 Detroit, 74, 78, 129, 130, 133, 145.
 Du Quesne, Fort, 80, 87, 145. (See
 Pittsburg.)
 Edward, Fort, 82, 84.
 England, 10, 12.
 Erie, Fort, 138, 139, 144, 145.
 " Lake, 60, 62, 105, 123, 134.
 Florida, 31, 38, 74.
 France, Ancient, 13, 14.
 Frederic, Fort St., 76, 83, 88.
 Fredericton, 226, 232.
 French River, 41, 76.
 Frontenac, 71, 76, 83, 85, 142, 145.
 Fundy Bay, 37, 78, 194, 196, 199, 208.
 Gabarus Bay, 206.
 Gaspé Peninsula, 27, 55, 207.
 Gaul, Ancient, 12.
 Genoa, 15, 18.
 Georgia, State of, 111, 209.
 Georgian Bay, 41.
 George Lake, 70, 75, 82, 85, 145.
 Ghent, Treaty of, 139, 144.
 Glengarry cairn, 159.
 Halifax, 86, 208, 210, 215, 217, 252.
 Hayti, discovery of, 23.
 Hochelaga, 29, 40, 106.
 Hudson Bay, 41, 51, 57, 66, 69, 71, 99,
 192, 259, 261.
 Hudson River, 67, 82, 85.
 Huron, Lake, 41, 49, 62.
 Illinois, 60, 62.
 Isle aux Noix, 88, 95, 112, 141.
 Kingston, 126, 137, 142, 161, 181. (See
 Catarqui and Frontenac.)
 Labrador, 51, 99, 260.
 Lachine, 31, 61, 68, 150.
 Lacolle, 133, 138, 143, 145.
 La Heve, 202, 203.
 Lakes of Canada, 123.
 Louisbourg, 75, 77, 86, 145, 195, 206
 209.
 Louisiana, 63, 75, 78, 97.
 Lundy's Lane, 139, 144, 145.
 Mackenzie River, 260, 265.
 Magdalen Islands, 235, 252.
 Maine, 192, 220, 221, 228, 233.
 Maryland, 79, 248, 249.
 Massachusetts, 77, 111, 202, 204, 245.
 Michigan Lake, 56, 61, 97.
 Michilimicacinac, 60, 67, 69, 97, 129
 130, 139, 145.
 Miramichi, 197, 212, 225, 227, 234.
 Mississippi, 60, 62, 63, 66, 74, 76.
 Mobile settled, 74.

- (ORY.)
 86, 88, 112, 115.
 10, 133, 145.
 87, 145. (See
 4, 145.
 123, 134.
 14.
 83, 88.
 35, 142, 145.
 196, 199, 208.
 5, 207.
 209.
 2, 85, 145.
 144.
 5, 217, 252.
 66, 69, 71, 99,
 5.
 2, 141.
 61, 181. (See
 enac.)
 5.
 145, 195, 206
 145.
 35.
 252.
 233.
 02, 204, 245.
 7.
 69, 97, 129
 227, 234.
 74, 76.
 Montreal settled, 46; 71, 95, 113, 111,
 156, 161.
 Navy Island, 156.
 Nelson River, 66, 71, 263.
 New Amsterdam, 55.
 New Brunswick, 27, 35, 192, 211, 220,
 229.
 New England, 25, 65, 75, 77, 111, 129,
 204, 209.
 Newfoundland, 24, 25, 27, 35, 36,
 243, 251.
 New France, 31, 38, 39, 79, 95.
 Newark (Niagara), 126, 134.
 New York, 55, 65, 68, 76, 86, 96, 106,
 209.
 Niagara Falls, 62.
 " Fort, &c., 78, 82, 88, 135,
 139, 142, 145.
 Nippissing Lake, 49, 76.
 Nova Scotia, 24, 35, 37, 83, 192, 204,
 211, 219, 245, 251.
 Ogdensburg, 78, 134, 145.
 Ohio River, &c., 78, 79, 81, 207, 209.
 Ontario Lake, 42, 62, 84, 123.
 Orleans Isle, 28, 89.
 " New, 74, 139, 145.
 Oswego, 65, 67, 71, 76, 84, 88, 106,
 138, 145.
 Ottawa River, 40, 49, 76, 106, 149.
 Palos, 20, 23.
 Paris, treaty of, 97, 144, 252.
 Pennsylvania, 79, 105, 115, 205, 249.
 Penobscot, 200, 203, 207, 221.
 Phœnicians, Ancient, 15.
 Physical features of—
 British Columbia, 267.
 Canada, 121, 122.
 Hudson Bay, 260, 261.
 New Brunswick, 220.
 Newfoundland, 244.
 Nova Scotia, 196.
 Prince Edward Island, 234.
 Vancouver Island, 266.
 Pittsburg, 87, 97.
 Port Royal, 37, 194, 200, 203, 205, 213.
 Portugal, 17, 23.
 Prairie du Chien, 139.
 Prescott windmill, 158.
 Prince Edward Island, 24, 35, 192,
 208, 234.
 Prince Rupert Land, 260.
 Quebec, 28, 36, 38, 45, 70, 90, 113,
 140, 145.
 Queenstown, 130, 142, 145.
 Quinté, Bay of, 42.
 Red River (of the North), 166, 192,
 238, 261, 265.
 Richelieu River, 39, 47, 54, 67, 141.
 Rivière du Loup, 166.
 Rivers of Canada, 122, 123.
 Rocky Mountains, 76, 100, 264.
 Runnymede, 171.
 Ryswick, 73, 144, 204, 250, 264.
 Sable, Cape, 196, 201, 222.
 " Island, 31, 198, 222.
 Sackett's Harbour, 136, 145.
 Saguenay River, 31, 60, 106.
 St. Croix, 37, 199, 221.
 St. Foye, 49, 141, 145.
 St. Germaine en Laye, 202, 262.
 St. John (New Brunswick), 227.
 St. John River (New Brunsw.), 226.
 St. Johns (Newfoundland), 254.
 St. Lawrence River, 28.
 St. Malo, 26, 28, 198, 200.
 St. Maurice, 108.
 Saratoga, surrender at, 116.
 Saskatchewan, 77, 261.
 Sault Ste. Marie, 56, 67.
 Schenectady, 69, 84, 85, 87.
 Simcoe Lake, 42.
 Southern States, 168, 249.
 Spain, 16, 19, 20, 27.
 Stoney Creek, 134, 143, 145.
 Superior Lake, 49, 51, 77, 264.
 Sydney (Cape Breton Isl.), 196, 211.
 Tadoussac, 36, 37, 40, 43, 67, 198, 262.
 Tartary, 16, 20.
 Thames River (U. C.), 123, 135, 144,
 145.
 Three Rivers, 45, 51, 55, 67, 76, 108.
 Ticonderoga, 82, 86, 87, 88, 94, 112,
 115, 145.
 Toronto, 78, 126, 133, 146, 182.
 Trent River, 42, 123.
 United States (Congress), 112, 129.
 Utrecht, treaty of, 75, 144, 235, 251,
 264.
 Vancouver Island, 35, 192, 266, 268.
 Venice, 15.
 Victoria (Vancouver Isl.), 266, 268.
 Villa Maria, 46.
 Virginia, 79, 81, 105, 117, 200, 209, 210.
 Welland Canal, 150, 190.
 West India Company, 53, 54, 59.
 " Indies, 21, 23, 27, 117.
 Yonge Street skirmish, 156.

APPROXIMATE PRONUNCIATION OF THE MORE DIFFICULT
FRENCH, INDIAN, AND OTHER NAMES IN THIS HISTORY.

Ab-en-a'-quis.	Hoehelaga, <i>ho-she-lah'-ga.</i>
A-ca-di-a.	Iroquois, <i>ee-ro-quay.</i>
Acadi ³ , <i>a-kad'-ee.</i>	Isle aux Noix, <i>eel-o-nwah'.</i>
Ad-i-ron'-dack.	Joliette, <i>zhoh'-ee-yet.</i>
Aix-la-Chapelle, <i>ahy'-la-sha-pe'l'.</i>	Jonquière, <i>zhonk'-e-yare.</i>
André, <i>ahv'-dray.</i>	La-bra-dor, <i>-dore'.</i>
Algonquin, <i>al-gonv'-kanv'.</i>	Lachine, <i>la-sheen'.</i>
Ar-kan'-sas, or <i>ar-kan-saw'.</i>	Lacolle, <i>la-kol'.</i>
As-sin-ne-boine, <i>bwoin'.</i>	Lafontaine, <i>la-fon'-teyn.</i>
Beauharnois, <i>bo-har'-nwah.</i>	Lauzon, <i>lau'-zonz.</i>
Beauport, <i>bo'-pohr.</i>	La-val'.
Bienville, <i>bee-ens-veel.</i>	Lescarbot, <i>leh-scar'-bo.</i>
Bosquet, <i>bos-keh'.</i>	Longueuil, <i>lohng-guy'-ee.</i>
Breton, <i>bré'-tonv'.</i>	Lemoine, <i>leh-mwoin'.</i>
Cabot, <i>cab'-o.</i>	Lévis, <i>lay'-ee.</i>
Caen, <i>kah'-en.</i>	Maisonneuve, <i>may'-sonv'-nev.</i>
Callières, <i>kal'-te-yare.</i>	Marquette, <i>mar-keh'.</i>
Cal'-u-met.	Mazarin, <i>maz'-ar-ahnv'.</i>
Carignan, <i>car'-een-yan.</i>	Mésy, <i>may'-zee.</i>
Cartier, <i>kar'-te-ay.</i>	Michigan, <i>mish'-e-gan.</i>
Cataract, <i>ka-ta-rak'-wee.</i>	Mich-il-i-mac'-i-nac, <i>mish-</i>
Chabot, <i>shah'-bo.</i>	Miramichi, <i>mír-a-mí-she'.</i>
Chambly, <i>sham'-blee.</i>	Montcalm, <i>mont'-kalm.</i>
Champigny, <i>sham'-pin-ye.</i>	Montmagny, <i>mont'-man-ye.</i>
ChAMPLAIN, <i>shamv'-plavn'.</i>	Montmorency, <i>mont-moh-rahnv'-see'.</i>
Charlemagne, <i>shar'-manv'.</i>	Monts, <i>mohv'.</i>
Charlevoix, <i>shar'-leh-vwa'.</i>	Morin, <i>mohr-ahnv'.</i>
Chateauguay, <i>sha-to-gee'.</i>	Nip'-pi-sing.
Chattes, <i>shat.</i>	Perrot, <i>per'-ro.</i>
Chauveau, <i>shaw'-roh</i> or <i>sho-ro'.</i>	Pon'-ti-ac.
Chauvin, <i>shaw'-vavn'</i> or <i>sho'-vavn'.</i>	Poutrineourt, <i>po'-trahnv'-koor.</i>
Colbert, <i>kol'-behr.</i>	Prairie, <i>pruyr'-ee.</i>
Coligné, <i>kol'-een-yay.</i>	Prideaux, <i>preed'-o.</i>
Condé, <i>kon'-day.</i>	Prevost, <i>preh-vo'.</i>
Contrecoeur, <i>kon'-tre-keur.</i>	Raleigh, <i>ral-ty.</i>
Cortereal, <i>kor-tay-ray'-al.</i>	Razillai, <i>ra-zee-yay'.</i>
Courcelles, <i>koor'-sel.</i>	Richelieu, <i>resh'-el-yue.</i>
Coureur du bois, <i>koo'-reur du bovd'.</i>	Rivière du Loup, <i>reev'-yare-du-loo'.</i>
Coutume de Paris, <i>koo'-chume de</i> <i>par'-ee.</i>	Roberval, <i>rob'-er-ralh.</i>
D'Ailleboust, <i>dah'-ye-boo.</i>	Ste. Croix, <i>sahnt-kroh'-wah.</i>
D'Argenson, <i>dar'-zhon-sonv'.</i>	Ste. Foye, <i>sahnt-fyah'.</i>
D'Avaugour, <i>dav-vo'-goor.</i>	St. Maurice, <i>sahnt-maurh'-ees'.</i>
Des Mètelles, <i>day-mew'-el.</i>	Sas-katch'-e-wan.
Dieskau, <i>dee-es'-ko.</i>	Sault Ste. Marie, <i>so'-sahnt-mar'-ee.</i>
Doublet, <i>doob'-tay.</i>	Sal'-a-berry.
Duchessau, <i>due'-shen-o.</i>	Schuyler, <i>shy-ler.</i>
Du Quesne, <i>due-kehv'.</i>	Tadoussac, <i>tad'-oos-sac.</i>
Elgin, <i>el-ghin.</i>	Talon, <i>ta-lonv'.</i>
Etch'-e-mins.	Tecumseth, <i>te-um'-sch.</i>
Fen-e-lon, or <i>fen'-e-tonv'.</i>	Ti-con-de-ro'-ga.
Gabarus, <i>gab'-a-roos.</i>	Tollier, <i>tol'-yuy.</i>
Gallissionière, <i>ga-lis'-e-on-yare.</i>	Tonti, <i>tolnt'-tee.</i>
Gaspé, <i>gas'-pay.</i>	Troyes, <i>tro'-wah.</i>
Gen'-o-a.	Turenne, <i>tu-renv'.</i>
Ghent, or <i>gons.</i>	Utrecht, <i>yov'-trekt.</i>
Gravé, Dupont, <i>due-pongv' gra-ray'.</i>	Vancouver, <i>vavn-koo'-ver.</i>
Grosellières, <i>gro'-sel-e-yare.</i>	Varennes, <i>vah-ren'.</i>
Hayti, <i>hay'-tee.</i>	Vaudreuil, <i>voh drah'-yee.</i>
Hen'-ne-pin.	Ventadour, <i>vahn'-tu-door.</i>
Hi-er-o-glyph-ics.	Ves-pu'-ci-us, <i>se-us.</i>
	Voltaire, <i>vol-tare'.</i>

DIFFICULT
HISTORY.

-ga.

vah'.

re.

u.

ee.

uv-ner.

ish-

te'.

n-gee.

oh-rahm'-see'.

uv-koor.

yare-du-too'.

vah.

hr-ees'.

ent-mar'-ee.

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

HAVING long felt the necessity existing for a SERIES OF EDUCATIONAL WORKS, prepared and expressly adapted for our COLONIAL SCHOOLS, the Publisher was induced to attempt the supply of this want. His efforts thus far have been crowned with success; his books having been most generally welcomed in the Schools, and most favorably noticed by the Press, of British North America.

LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY has met with entire success, having been already introduced into almost every School throughout British North America. The General Geography, however, being considered too far advanced for *young beginners*, a new and elementary work has been prepared, entitled, EASY LESSONS IN GENERAL GEOGRAPHY. This book is intended as introductory to the General Geography; and its almost universal introduction into the Schools of Canada, proves how fully it meets the object aimed at. The immense circulation to which both these books have attained, has enabled the Publisher to reduce the price of the General Geography to 70 cents, and the Easy Lessons to 45 cents.

He takes great pleasure in calling attention to the following list of SCHOOL BOOKS already issued by him; and to which he will add, from time to time, such new works as may be of use to the youth of the Provinces.

PRICE LIST.

1. **LOVELL'S GENERAL GEOGRAPHY**, with 51 Colored Maps, 113 beautiful Engravings, and a Table of Clocks of the World. By J. GEORGE HODGINS, LL.B., F.R.G.S.,... 70
 [This book is especially adapted for, and worthy of introduction into, every College, Academy, and School in the British Provinces. ☞ Parents should see that it is in their Children's hands.]
2. **Easy Lessons in General Geography**; with Maps and Illustrations; being introductory to Lovell's General Geography. By the same,..... 45
3. **A SCHOOL HISTORY OF CANADA, and of the other British Provinces**, with Illustrations. By the same, 50
4. **National Arithmetic**, in Theory and Practice, adapted to Decimal Currency. By J. H. SANGSTER, M.A., M.D.,..... 60
5. **Key to National Arithmetic**. By the same,..... 90
6. **Elementary Arithmetic**, in Decimal Currency. By the same,..... 25
7. **Key to Elementary Arithmetic**. By the same,..... 65
8. **Elementary Treatise on Algebra**. By the same,..... 90
9. **Key to Elementary Treatise on Algebra**. By the same,..... 1 50
10. **Natural Philosophy, Part I**, including Statics, Hydrostatics, &c., &c. By the same,..... 75
11. **Natural Philosophy, Part II**, being a Hand-book of Chemical Physics; or, the Physics of Heat, Light, and Electricity. By the same, 75
12. **Students' Note Book on Inorganic Chemistry**. By the same,..... 75
13. **First Lessons in Scientific Agriculture**. By J. W. DAWSON, LL.D., F.R.S.,..... 50
14. **General Principles of Language**; or, The Philosophy of Grammar. By THOMAS JAFFREY ROBERTSON, Esq., M.A., 50
15. **Student's Guide to English Grammar**; or, The Way to Speak and Write Grammatically. By the Rev. J. G. ONG, M.A.,... 25

16. I
 17. I
 18.
 19. A
 20. T
 21. I
 22. I
 23. C
 24. I
 25. C
 26. C
 27.
 28.
 Tea
 29.
 30.
 31.
 32.
 33.
 34.
 35.
 M
 th
 of
 W
 L

with 51
 le of Clocks
 R.G.S.,.... 70
 ntrouction
 British Pro-
 r Children's
 h Maps and
 neral Geog-
 45
 ad of the
 y the same, 50
 adapted to
 I.D.,..... 60
 90
 y. By the
 25
 e,..... 65
 me,..... 90
 a. By the
 1 50
 es, Hydro-
 75
 nd-book of
 and Elec-
 75
 stry. By
 75
 By J. W.
 50
 Philosophy
 sq., M.A., 50
 The Way
 Rev. J. G.
 25

16. **English Grammar made Easy.** By G. G. VASEY,.... 20
 17. **Lennie's English Grammar,** full bound,..... 25
 18. **Do. do. do.** half bound,..... 13
 19. **An easy mode of Teaching the Rudiments of Latin Grammar to beginners.** By THOMAS JAFFREY ROBERTSON, Esq., M.A.,..... 20
 20. **Treatise on French Pronunciation and Genders.** By J. B. ANGELVY LAFONT, Esq., French Master, Grammar and Central Schools, Hamilton, C. W., 50
 21. **Pinnock's Improved Edition of Goldsmith's History of England.** (*Second Canadian Edition.*) By W. C. TAYLOR, LL.D., T.C.D., 75
 22. **Elements of Elocution.** By J. BARBER, M.R.C.S.,... 50
 23. **Classic Reader.** By Rev. WM. HAMILTON, D.D.,..... 50
 24. **British American Reader.** By Rev. J. D. BORTHWICK, 35
 25. **Outlines of Chronology.** By MRS. GORDON, 30
 26. **Classical English Spelling Book.** By G. G. VASEY, ... 20
 27. **A Comprehensive System of Book-Keeping, by Single and Double Entry.** By THOMAS R. JOHNSON, Accountant,..... 25
 28. **The A-B-C Simplified,** and Reading made easy to the capacity of Little Children. By G. G. VASEY,..... 04

Text Books, printed from New Stereotype Plates and in good Bindings:

29. **First National Book of Lessons**..... 03
 30. **Second ditto ditto** 10
 31. **Third ditto ditto** 20
 32. **Fourth ditto ditto** 25
 33. **Fifth ditto ditto** 30
 34. **French without a Master,**..... 25
 35. **French Genders,** taught in Six Fables,..... 20

Mr. ADAM MILLER, TORONTO, and Mr. ROBERT MILER, MONTREAL, are the General Agents for the sale of these Books throughout CANADA.

Mr. ROBERT L. GIBSON is the General Agent for the Sale of these Books throughout NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK, PRINCE EDWARD ISLAND, and NEWFOUNDLAND.

LOVELL'S SERIES OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

The Publisher has much pleasure in tendering his best thanks to the public of Canada and of the other British North American Provinces, for the very liberal support which has been accorded to his series of School Books.

When a large amount of care and labor has been expended on an undertaking of a national character, it is very gratifying to find, from substantial evidence, that the public have appreciated the enterprise, and approved of the manner in which it has been carried out. This has been essentially the case in reference to Lovell's Series of School Books.

The very favorable manner in which the Books have been received and reviewed by the Press of Canada and of the Lower Provinces, together with the flattering opinions expressed by some of the leading gentlemen of the Provinces,—for which the Publisher is very grateful,—is perhaps the best guarantee of the utility of the Books which the public can receive.

There are very few Schools in British North America into which some of the Books have not been introduced, while in very many instances the whole Series has been adopted.

The following is an extract from an article on "Education in Canada," which appeared in the B. N. A. Almanac for 1864, at page 127 :

"It is worthy of remark that the text-books specially prepared and adapted for the Canadian schools are rapidly superseding those for which they were intended as substitutes.

“On the adoption of the decimal system of currency in Canada it was felt that the National Arithmetics should be adapted to it. This task was undertaken by Mr. Sangster, the mathematical master of the Normal School, who has compiled both a large and a small arithmetic, upon the plan of the National Arithmetic, greatly improved and illustrated by examples taken from Canadian statistics. These arithmetics, published by the enterprise of Mr. Lovell, are already used in 1,906 schools—being an increase of 782 schools during the year: while the use of the old National Arithmetic has decreased during the year to the extent of 734 schools.

“The same remark applies to Mr. Lovell’s Canadian Geography, compiled by Mr. Hodgins, and intended to supersede Morse’s Geography, which had heretofore been permitted in the schools in the absence of one better adapted for their use. The use of Morse’s Geography has been discontinued in 703 schools during the year, while Lovell’s General Geography has been introduced into 818 schools—being now used in 1,864 schools.”

The Publisher has therefore been encouraged to increase his facilities for the continued prosecution of the undertaking, by so enlarging and improving his Printing and Blank Book Establishment, that he is at present in a position to supply promptly any demand which may hereafter arise; and also to add to the Series, from time to time, such new works as may be conducive to the extension of general knowledge, and calculated to give a National tone to the feelings and aspirations of the youth of the Provinces,—an element which the Publisher considers essential to all Books intended for the instruction of youth, and which has been judiciously introduced throughout the Series.

JOHN LOVELL, *Publisher.*

MONTREAL, *March*, 1865.

BOOKS.

best thanks to
rth American
n accorded to

ended on an
ying to find,
preciated the
it has been
reference to

been received
ver Provinces,
some of the
Publisher is
utility of the

ca into which
in very many

Education in
e for 1864, at

y prepared and
those for which

